



# **SONIC 2026/2024/2022**

**BROADBAND MULTIBEAM ECHOSOUNDERS**

## **Operation Manual V6.3**

**Revision 003 (28Feb2019)**

**Part No. 96000001**

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Copyright © 2019, R2Sonic LLC. All rights reserved

### Ownership of copyright

The copyright in this manual and the material in this manual (including without limitation the text, artwork, photographs, images, or any other material in this manual) is owned by R2Sonic LLC. The copyright includes both the print and electronic version of this manual.

### Copyright license

R2Sonic LLC is solely responsible for the content of this manual. Neither this manual nor any part of this manual, may be copied, translated, distributed or modified in any manner without the express written approval of R2Sonic LLC.

### Permissions

You may request permission to use the copyright materials in this manual by writing to [r2support@r2sonic.com](mailto:r2support@r2sonic.com)

### Authorship

This manual (Sonic 2026/2024/2022 Operation Manual), and all of the content therein, written by:

**R2Sonic LLC**

**5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd, Suite 120**

**Austin, Texas 78735**

**USA**

**Telephone: +1 (512) 891.0000**

### Version Printing History

- June 2008 Version 1.1/1.2
- July 2008 Version 1.3
- Aug/Sep 2008 Version 1.4
- December 2008 Version 1.5
- June 2009 Version 1.6
- April 2010 Version 2.0
- August 2010 Version 3.0
- April 2011 Version 3.1
- January 2012 Version 4.0
- April 2012 Version 4.1
- February 2014 Version 5.0
- July 2015 Version 6.0 (First version with Sonic 2026)
- June 2016 Version 6.1 (Extended frequency capability and ROBO operation)
- November 2016 Version 6.2 (MultiSpectral Mode™ feature)
- April 2017 Version 6.3 (UHD, MultiMode with PipeTrac™ feature)

R2Sonic LLC reserves the right to amend or edit this manual at any time. R2Sonic LLC offers no implied warranty concerning the information in this manual. R2Sonic LLC shall not be held liable for any errors within the manual.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## IMPORTANT NOTICE

Pursuant to the United States Department of Commerce Bureau of Industry and Security Export rules and regulations, under Export Control Classification Number (ECCN) 6A991 and 6A001, a minor modification has been made in the range and frequencies available in the R2Sonic Multibeam Echosounder family only for those systems that are ***submerged to 100 metres depth or greater***. R2Sonic Multibeam Echosounders now come in either a Standard Spectrum (with the restriction) or a Full Spectrum (no restriction) version.

The Standard Spectrum system will have the restrictions above applied only when submerged to a depth greater than 100 metres. A Standard Spectrum system, when submerged to depths greater than 100 metres, will be restricted to operating frequencies of no less than 350 kHz and ranges no greater than 200 metres. There are no such restrictions for submerged depths of less than 100 metres or for a Full Spectrum system.

All systems with the Ultra High Density (UHD) feature are considered to be under the same export restrictions as stated for a Full Spectrum system.

The R2Sonic Multibeam Echosounders Full Spectrum version have no such modifications but are subject to possible export control restrictions (please see the local R2Sonic representative for a clarification of the rules and laws that apply to the country of interest).

*The rules and regulations, under which this notice applies, are subject to change at any time and without notice.*

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## Table of Contents

|          |                                                                  |           |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>                                        | <b>23</b> |
| 1.1      | <i>Outline of Equipment.....</i>                                 | 23        |
| 1.2      | <i>How to use this Manual.....</i>                               | 24        |
| 1.2.1    | Standard of Measurement .....                                    | 24        |
| <b>2</b> | <b>SONIC SPECIFICATIONS.....</b>                                 | <b>25</b> |
| 2.1      | <i>Sonic 2026 System Specification.....</i>                      | 25        |
| 2.2      | <i>Sonic 2024 System Specification.....</i>                      | 25        |
| 2.3      | <i>Sonic 2022 System Specification.....</i>                      | 26        |
| 2.4      | <i>Sonic 2026 Dimensions and Weights.....</i>                    | 26        |
| 2.5      | <i>Sonic 2024 Dimensions and Weights.....</i>                    | 26        |
| 2.6      | <i>Sonic 2022 Dimensions and Weights.....</i>                    | 27        |
| 2.7      | <i>Sonic 2026/2024/Sonic 2022 Electrical Interface .....</i>     | 27        |
| 2.8      | <i>Sonic MBES Ping Rates (SV = 1500.00m/sec) .....</i>           | 27        |
| 2.9      | <i>Acoustic Centre .....</i>                                     | 29        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>SONIC MBES SONAR HEAD INSTALLATION – Surface Vessel .....</b> | <b>33</b> |
| 3.1      | <i>Sonic MBES Receive Module Installation.....</i>               | 33        |
| 3.1.1    | Mounting the Sonic MBES Receive Module .....                     | 34        |
| 3.1.2    | Receive Module .....                                             | 34        |
| 3.1.3    | New Deck Lead connector.....                                     | 35        |
| 3.1.4    | New Cable Clamping Arrangement .....                             | 36        |
| 3.1.5    | Mounting the Sonic 2024/2022 Projector.....                      | 40        |
| 3.1.6    | Mounting the Sonic 2026 Projector .....                          | 41        |
| 3.1.7    | Correct Orientation of the Sonic MBES .....                      | 43        |
| 3.1.8    | Deck Test Prior to Deployment .....                              | 43        |
| 3.2      | <i>Sonar Head Installation Guidelines .....</i>                  | 45        |
| 3.2.1    | Introduction.....                                                | 45        |
| 3.2.2    | Over-the-Side mount.....                                         | 45        |
| 3.2.3    | Moon Pool Mount .....                                            | 45        |
| 3.2.4    | Hull Mount.....                                                  | 45        |
| 3.2.5    | ROV Mounting .....                                               | 46        |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|          |                                                                        |           |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>4</b> | <b>SONAR INTERFACE MODULE (SIM) INSTALLATION and INTERFACING .....</b> | <b>47</b> |
| 4.1      | <i>Sonar Interface Module (SIM) .....</i>                              | 47        |
| 4.1.1    | Physical installation.....                                             | 47        |
| 4.1.2    | Electrical and Interfacing .....                                       | 48        |
| 4.1.3    | Serial Communication .....                                             | 53        |
| 4.1.4    | Time and PPS input .....                                               | 53        |
| 4.1.5    | Motion Input .....                                                     | 54        |
| 4.1.6    | SVP input.....                                                         | 54        |
| <b>5</b> | <b>OPERATION OF THE SONIC MBES VIA SONIC CONTROL.....</b>              | <b>57</b> |
| 5.1      | <i>Installing Sonic Control Graphical User Interface .....</i>         | 57        |
| 5.2      | <i>Hot Keys .....</i>                                                  | 57        |
| 5.3      | <i>Settings Menu .....</i>                                             | 58        |
| 5.4      | <i>Network Setup.....</i>                                              | 58        |
| 5.4.1    | Initial Computer setup for Communication .....                         | 58        |
| 5.4.2    | Discover Function.....                                                 | 59        |
| 5.4.3    | Configuring Network Communication .....                                | 61        |
| 5.5      | <i>Sensor Setup (Serial and Ethernet Interfacing) .....</i>            | 63        |
| 5.5.1    | Ethernet Interfacing .....                                             | 63        |
| 5.5.2    | GPS .....                                                              | 64        |
| 5.5.3    | Motion.....                                                            | 64        |
| 5.5.4    | Heading .....                                                          | 64        |
| 5.5.5    | SVP .....                                                              | 64        |
| 5.5.6    | Trigger in / Trigger out .....                                         | 65        |
| 5.6      | <i>Sonar Settings (Hotkey: F2).....</i>                                | 66        |
| 5.6.1    | Frequency (kHz) 170 kHz – 450 kHz .....                                | 67        |
| 5.6.2    | Ping Rate Limit .....                                                  | 68        |
| 5.6.3    | Sector Coverage .....                                                  | 68        |
| 5.6.4    | Sector Rotate .....                                                    | 70        |
| 5.6.5    | Minimum Range Gate (m).....                                            | 70        |
| 5.6.6    | Bottom Sampling.....                                                   | 70        |
| 5.6.7    | Ultra High Density (UHD™) .....                                        | 72        |

|        |                                                                    |    |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 5.6.8  | Mission Mode .....                                                 | 74 |
| 5.6.9  | Imagery .....                                                      | 74 |
| 5.6.10 | Roll Stabilize and Pitch Stabilize .....                           | 78 |
| 5.6.11 | Dual Head Mode (Also see Appendix VII, Section 13.9) .....         | 79 |
| 5.6.12 | TruePix™, Snippets, Water Column Enable and Intensity Enable ..... | 81 |
| 5.6.13 | Water Column Data Collection .....                                 | 82 |
| 5.7    | <i>MultiMode</i> .....                                             | 83 |
| 5.7.1  | MultiSpectral Mode™ .....                                          | 83 |
| 5.7.2  | Pipeline Mode.....                                                 | 84 |
| 5.8    | <i>Ocean Setting</i> .....                                         | 87 |
| 5.8.1  | Absorption: 0 – 200 dB/km .....                                    | 87 |
| 5.8.2  | Spreading Loss: 0 – 60 dB .....                                    | 87 |
| 5.8.3  | Time Variable Gain .....                                           | 88 |
| 5.9    | <i>Installation Settings</i> .....                                 | 91 |
| 5.9.1  | Projector Orientation .....                                        | 91 |
| 5.9.2  | Projector Z Offset (m).....                                        | 91 |
| 5.9.3  | Head Tilt.....                                                     | 91 |
| 5.10   | <i>Status</i> .....                                                | 92 |
| 5.10.1 | System Status .....                                                | 92 |
| 5.10.2 | Saturation Monitor .....                                           | 93 |
| 5.10.3 | TruePix™ Monitor .....                                             | 94 |
| 5.11   | <i>Tools</i> .....                                                 | 95 |
| 5.11.1 | Engineering.....                                                   | 95 |
| 5.11.2 | Firmware Update.....                                               | 95 |
| 5.11.3 | Snapshot and Reset Sector Rotate .....                             | 98 |
| 5.12   | <i>Help</i> .....                                                  | 98 |
| 5.12.1 | Help Topics .....                                                  | 98 |
| 5.12.2 | Options .....                                                      | 98 |
| 5.12.3 | Remote Assistance .....                                            | 99 |
| 5.12.4 | About Sonic Control.....                                           | 99 |

|          |                                                                   |            |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 5.13     | Display settings .....                                            | 100        |
| 5.13.1   | US Survey Feet Unit (Display Only) .....                          | 100        |
| 5.14     | Imagery .....                                                     | 101        |
| 5.14.1   | TruePix™ and Water Column .....                                   | 101        |
| 5.14.2   | Video Capture .....                                               | 101        |
| 5.15     | ROBO Automatic Sonar Operation .....                              | 102        |
| 5.15.1   | Robo Settings .....                                               | 103        |
| 5.16     | Main Operation Parameters .....                                   | 104        |
| 5.16.1   | Range: 0 – 1200 metres .....                                      | 104        |
| 5.16.2   | RangeTrac™ – Sonic Control automatically sets correct range.....  | 106        |
| 5.16.3   | Power: 191 – 221 dB .....                                         | 106        |
| 5.16.4   | Pulse Width: 15µsec – 1115µsec (Sonic 2026 max is 2000µsec) ..... | 106        |
| 5.16.5   | Gain: 1 – 45 .....                                                | 107        |
| 5.16.6   | Depth Gates: GateTrac™ .....                                      | 107        |
| 5.17     | GUI Rec(ord) .....                                                | 110        |
| 5.18     | Ruler .....                                                       | 110        |
| 5.19     | Save Settings .....                                               | 111        |
| 5.19.1   | Default setting ini file .....                                    | 111        |
| 5.20     | Operating Sonic Control on a second computer.....                 | 112        |
| 5.20.1   | Two computer setup.....                                           | 112        |
| 5.20.2   | Changing back to one computer .....                               | 113        |
| <b>6</b> | <b>SONIC MBES THEORY OF OPERATION .....</b>                       | <b>114</b> |
| 6.1      | Sonic MBES Sonar Head Block Diagram.....                          | 114        |
| 6.2      | Sonic MBES Transmit (Normal Operation Mode).....                  | 115        |
| 6.3      | Sonic MBES Receive (Normal Operation Mode).....                   | 116        |
| 6.4      | Sonic 2024/2022 Sonar Interface Module (SIM) Block Diagram.....   | 117        |
| 6.4.1    | Sonar Interface Module (SIM) Block Diagram.....                   | 117        |
| <b>7</b> | <b>Appendix I: R2Sonic I2NS Components and Operation .....</b>    | <b>119</b> |
| 7.1      | Components .....                                                  | 119        |
| 7.2      | Connection diagram.....                                           | 120        |
| 7.3      | Installation .....                                                | 121        |

|          |                                                             |            |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 7.3.1    | The IMU and GPS antennas .....                              | 121        |
| 7.3.2    | INS BNC – TNC Connections .....                             | 121        |
| 7.3.3    | I2NS DB9 Connections .....                                  | 122        |
| 7.4      | <i>Setup in Sonic Control</i> .....                         | 123        |
| 7.4.1    | Network Setup .....                                         | 123        |
| 7.4.2    | Applanix Group 119 specific to R2Sonic SIMINS .....         | 124        |
| 7.4.3    | Sensor Setup .....                                          | 125        |
| 7.4.4    | INS Monitor (Alt+I) .....                                   | 125        |
| 7.5      | <i>Measuring IMU Offsets</i> .....                          | 127        |
| 7.6      | <i>I2NS Physical Specifications</i> .....                   | 129        |
| 7.7      | <i>I2NS Drawings</i> .....                                  | 130        |
| 7.7.1    | I2NS IMU .....                                              | 130        |
| 7.7.2    | I2NS Sonar Interface Module (SIM) .....                     | 131        |
| <b>8</b> | <b>APPENDIX II: Multibeam Survey Suite Components .....</b> | <b>133</b> |
| 8.1      | <i>Auxiliary Sensors and Components</i> .....               | 133        |
| 8.2      | <i>Differential Global Positioning System</i> .....         | 133        |
| 8.2.1    | Installation .....                                          | 133        |
| 8.2.2    | GPS Calibration .....                                       | 134        |
| 8.3      | <i>Gyrocompass</i> .....                                    | 135        |
| 8.3.1    | Gyrocompass Calibration Methods .....                       | 135        |
| 8.4      | <i>The Motion Sensor</i> .....                              | 140        |
| 8.5      | <i>Sound Velocity Probes</i> .....                          | 141        |
| 8.5.1    | CTD Probes .....                                            | 142        |
| 8.5.2    | Time of Flight Probe .....                                  | 143        |
| 8.5.3    | XBT Probes .....                                            | 143        |
| 8.6      | <i>The sound velocity cast</i> .....                        | 144        |
| 8.6.1    | Time of Day .....                                           | 144        |
| 8.6.2    | Fresh water influx .....                                    | 144        |
| 8.6.3    | Water Depth .....                                           | 144        |
| 8.6.4    | Distance .....                                              | 144        |
| 8.6.5    | Deploying and recovering the Sound Velocity Probe .....     | 144        |

|           |                                                       |            |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>9</b>  | <b>APPENDIX III: Multibeam Surveying.....</b>         | <b>147</b> |
| 9.1       | <i>Introduction.....</i>                              | <i>147</i> |
| 9.2       | <i>Survey Design.....</i>                             | <i>147</i> |
| 9.2.1     | Line Spacing.....                                     | 147        |
| 9.2.2     | Line Direction .....                                  | 147        |
| 9.2.3     | Line Run-in .....                                     | 148        |
| 9.3       | <i>Record Keeping .....</i>                           | <i>148</i> |
| 9.3.1     | Vessel Record .....                                   | 148        |
| 9.3.2     | Daily Survey Log .....                                | 149        |
| <b>10</b> | <b>APPENDIX IV: Offset Measurements.....</b>          | <b>153</b> |
| 10.1      | <i>Lever Arm Measurement – Offsets .....</i>          | <i>153</i> |
| 10.2      | <i>Vessel Reference System.....</i>                   | <i>153</i> |
| 10.3      | <i>Measuring Offsets.....</i>                         | <i>154</i> |
| 10.3.1    | Sonic MBES Acoustic Centre .....                      | 154        |
| 10.3.2    | Horizontal Measurement.....                           | 154        |
| 10.3.3    | Vertical Measurement .....                            | 155        |
| <b>11</b> | <b>APPENDIX V: The Patch Test .....</b>               | <b>157</b> |
| 11.1      | <i>Introduction.....</i>                              | <i>157</i> |
| 11.2      | <i>Orientation of the Sonic MBES Sonar Head .....</i> | <i>157</i> |
| 11.3      | <i>Patch Test Criteria.....</i>                       | <i>158</i> |
| 11.3.1    | Latency Test .....                                    | 158        |
| 11.3.2    | Roll Test.....                                        | 159        |
| 11.3.3    | Pitch Test.....                                       | 160        |
| 11.3.4    | Yaw Test .....                                        | 161        |
| 11.4      | <i>Solving for the Patch Test.....</i>                | <i>162</i> |
| 11.5      | <i>History.....</i>                                   | <i>162</i> |
| 11.6      | <i>Basic data collection criteria .....</i>           | <i>163</i> |
| 11.7      | <i>Patch Test data collection error areas.....</i>    | <i>163</i> |
| 11.7.1    | Positioning.....                                      | 163        |
| 11.7.2    | Feature chosen for test .....                         | 163        |
| 11.7.3    | Water depth .....                                     | 164        |

|           |                                                                       |            |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 11.7.4    | Use predefined survey lines .....                                     | 164        |
| 11.7.5    | Speed.....                                                            | 164        |
| 11.7.6    | Vessel line up .....                                                  | 164        |
| 11.7.7    | Pole variability.....                                                 | 164        |
| 11.8      | <i>Improving the Patch Test and Patch Test results .....</i>          | <i>165</i> |
| 11.8.1    | Need to collect sufficient data .....                                 | 165        |
| 11.8.2    | Individually solving values .....                                     | 166        |
| 11.9      | <i>Truthing the patch test .....</i>                                  | <i>166</i> |
| <b>12</b> | <b>APPENDIX VI: Basic Acoustic Theory .....</b>                       | <b>167</b> |
| 12.1      | <i>Introduction .....</i>                                             | <i>167</i> |
| 12.2      | <i>Sound Velocity .....</i>                                           | <i>167</i> |
| 12.2.1    | Salinity .....                                                        | 169        |
| 12.2.2    | Temperature.....                                                      | 169        |
| 12.2.3    | Refraction Errors.....                                                | 169        |
| 12.3      | <i>Transmission Losses.....</i>                                       | <i>170</i> |
| 12.3.1    | Spreading Loss .....                                                  | 170        |
| 12.3.2    | Absorption .....                                                      | 171        |
| 12.3.3    | Sound Absorption Graphs at Select Frequencies .....                   | 174        |
| 12.3.4    | Reverberation and Scattering.....                                     | 178        |
| <b>13</b> | <b>APPENDIX VII: Sonic MBES Mounting: Sub-Surface (ROV/AUV) .....</b> | <b>179</b> |
| 13.1      | <i>Installation Considerations.....</i>                               | <i>179</i> |
| 13.1.1    | Ethernet wiring considerations .....                                  | 180        |
| 13.2      | <i>Data Rates .....</i>                                               | <i>180</i> |
| 13.3      | <i>ROV Installation Examples.....</i>                                 | <i>181</i> |
| 13.4      | <i>Power Requirements.....</i>                                        | <i>183</i> |
| 13.4.1    | Common mode noise rejection .....                                     | 185        |
| 13.4.2    | SIM Power connections.....                                            | 186        |
| 13.5      | <i>SIM Installation – ROV.....</i>                                    | <i>187</i> |
| 13.6      | <i>SIM Installation – AUV.....</i>                                    | <i>188</i> |
| 13.7      | <i>SIM Board Physical Installation .....</i>                          | <i>189</i> |
| 13.8      | <i>SIM Stack LED Status Indicators .....</i>                          | <i>189</i> |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|           |                                                              |            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 13.8.1    | SIM Board Dimensional Information .....                      | 190        |
| 13.8.2    | SIM Board Images .....                                       | 191        |
| 13.9      | <i>Dual Sonar Head</i> .....                                 | 193        |
| 13.9.1    | Dual Head Installation.....                                  | 193        |
| 13.9.2    | Operation .....                                              | 193        |
| <b>14</b> | <b>APPENDIX VIII: R2Sonic Control Commands.....</b>          | <b>195</b> |
| 14.1      | <i>Introduction</i> .....                                    | 195        |
| 14.2      | <i>General Notes</i> .....                                   | 195        |
| 14.2.1    | Ethernet Port Numbers.....                                   | 195        |
| 14.2.2    | Type Definitions .....                                       | 195        |
| 14.2.3    | Command Packet Format .....                                  | 195        |
| 14.3      | <i>Head Commands, Binary Format</i> .....                    | 196        |
| 14.4      | <i>SIM Commands, Binary Format</i> .....                     | 199        |
| 14.5      | <i>GUI Commands, Binary Format</i> .....                     | 200        |
| 14.5.1    | GUI Command Line Switches .....                              | 201        |
| 14.6      | <i>Command Examples Sent to the Sonar Head and SIM</i> ..... | 202        |
| <b>15</b> | <b>APPENDIX IX: R2Sonic Uplink Data Formats.....</b>         | <b>205</b> |
| 15.1      | <i>Introduction</i> .....                                    | 205        |
| 15.2      | <i>General Notes</i> .....                                   | 205        |
| 15.3      | <i>Port Numbers</i> .....                                    | 205        |
| 15.4      | <i>Type Definitions</i> .....                                | 205        |
| 15.5      | <i>Ethernet Data Rates</i> .....                             | 206        |
| 15.6      | <i>Bathymetry Packet Format</i> .....                        | 207        |
| 15.7      | <i>Snippet Format</i> .....                                  | 210        |
| 15.8      | <i>Water Column (WC) Data Format</i> .....                   | 212        |
| 15.9      | <i>Acoustic Image (AI) Data Format</i> .....                 | 215        |
| 15.10     | <i>TruePix™ Data Format</i> .....                            | 217        |
| 15.11     | <i>Head Status Format</i> .....                              | 219        |
| 15.12     | <i>SIM Status Data Format</i> .....                          | 222        |
| 15.13     | <i>Device Status Format</i> .....                            | 224        |
| 15.14     | <i>Data Playback Using Bit-Twist</i> .....                   | 225        |

|           |                                   |            |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|------------|
| 15.14.1   | Introduction.....                 | 225        |
| 15.14.2   | Capturing Data.....               | 225        |
| 15.14.3   | Editing Data .....                | 226        |
| 15.14.4   | Data Playback .....               | 227        |
| <b>16</b> | <b>APPENDIX X: Drawings .....</b> | <b>229</b> |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## List of Figures

|                                                                                            |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 1: Sonic MBES Block Diagram .....                                                   | 23 |
| Figure 2: Sonic 2024 Acoustic Centre .....                                                 | 29 |
| Figure 3: Sonic 2024 Acoustic Centre, as Mounted.....                                      | 29 |
| Figure 4: Sonic 2022 Acoustic Centre .....                                                 | 30 |
| Figure 5: Sonic 2022 Acoustic Centre, as Mounted.....                                      | 30 |
| Figure 6: Sonic 2026 Acoustic Centre .....                                                 | 31 |
| Figure 7: Sonic 2026 Acoustic Centre, as mounted.....                                      | 31 |
| Figure 8: Sonic 2024 and Sonic 2022 on the mounting frame .....                            | 33 |
| Figure 9: Top side of Receive Module .....                                                 | 34 |
| Figure 10: Receive Module Face.....                                                        | 34 |
| Figure 11: Seated connectors (Sonic 2024 on the left and Sonic 2022 on the right).....     | 34 |
| Figure 12: Connector wiggle - back and forth NOT up and down .....                         | 34 |
| Figure 13: New cable penetrator with locking ring .....                                    | 35 |
| Figure 14: Deck lead to penetrator connection .....                                        | 35 |
| Figure 16: Upper bracket secured .....                                                     | 36 |
| Figure 15: Lower bracket positioned.....                                                   | 36 |
| Figure 17: Updated Projector housing .....                                                 | 36 |
| Figure 18: Upper bracket for Projector cable clamp .....                                   | 37 |
| Figure 19: Projector cable clamp lower bracket .....                                       | 37 |
| Figure 20: Projector cable clamp upper bracket .....                                       | 37 |
| Figure 21: Projector cable clamp in place .....                                            | 37 |
| Figure 22: Projector cable clamp bolt / mounting arrangement .....                         | 38 |
| Figure 23: Receive Module with cables connected.....                                       | 39 |
| Figure 24: Position the insulating bushing .....                                           | 39 |
| Figure 25: Sonic 2024 Projector .....                                                      | 40 |
| Figure 26: Projector Stand-off .....                                                       | 40 |
| Figure 27: Mounting the projector.....                                                     | 40 |
| Figure 28: View of the mounted Projector; NB. The connector is facing protective fin ..... | 41 |
| Figure 29: SV Probe mounted in block .....                                                 | 41 |
| Figure 30: Mounting the Sonic 2026 Projector .....                                         | 41 |
| Figure 31: Sonic 2026 in the mounting frame .....                                          | 42 |
| Figure 32: Correct Orientation of the Sonic MBES.....                                      | 43 |
| Figure 33: Sonar Interface Module (SIM) .....                                              | 47 |
| Figure 34: Removal of trim to expose securing holes .....                                  | 48 |
| Figure 35: SIM Interfacing Physical Connections .....                                      | 49 |
| Figure 36: SIM Interfacing Guide (from the label on top of the SIM) .....                  | 49 |
| Figure 37: SIM IEC mains connection and deck lead Amphenol MS connector.....               | 50 |
| Figure 38: Wet end connectors .....                                                        | 50 |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|                                                                                          |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 39: Projector cable configuration .....                                           | 51 |
| Figure 40: TTL input/output (PPS and Sync In/Out) schematic .....                        | 53 |
| Figure 41: Sonic Control Icon on desktop .....                                           | 57 |
| Figure 42: Sonic Control 2000 .....                                                      | 57 |
| Figure 43: Settings Menu .....                                                           | 58 |
| Figure 44: Windows Internet Adaptor Properties .....                                     | 59 |
| Figure 45: IP and Subnet mask setup .....                                                | 59 |
| Figure 46: Sonic Control Network setup .....                                             | 60 |
| Figure 47: Set INS IP      Figure 48: Set IP Time Expired.....                           | 61 |
| Figure 49: Command prompt-ipconfig/all .....                                             | 61 |
| Figure 50: Sensor serial communication settings .....                                    | 63 |
| Figure 51: Sensor Ethernet communications settings .....                                 | 64 |
| Figure 52: Trigger In/Out Options .....                                                  | 65 |
| Figure 53: Settings Menu .....                                                           | 66 |
| Figure 54: Sonar Operation Settings window .....                                         | 66 |
| Figure 55: Operating Frequency Selection.....                                            | 67 |
| Figure 56: 90 – 100 kHz Low frequency option for Sonic 2026 .....                        | 68 |
| Figure 57: Ping Rate Limit .....                                                         | 68 |
| Figure 58: Sector coverage .....                                                         | 69 |
| Figure 59: Asymmetric sector sizing .....                                                | 69 |
| Figure 60: Sector Rotate .....                                                           | 70 |
| Figure 61: Bottom Sampling Modes .....                                                   | 71 |
| Figure 62: Example of going from normal to Quad mode .....                               | 72 |
| Figure 63: Indication of Bottom Sampling Mode.....                                       | 72 |
| Figure 64: Highlighted indicator for equiangular operation when in equidistant mode..... | 72 |
| Figure 65: Normal Mission Mode selections .....                                          | 74 |
| Figure 66: Mission Mode with the FLS Option installed .....                              | 74 |
| Figure 67: Enable Acoustic Image in the wedge display .....                              | 75 |
| Figure 68: FLS Wide mode .....                                                           | 75 |
| Figure 69: Imagery palette selection in Display Options .....                            | 75 |
| Figure 70: Stealth mode single Ping button.....                                          | 76 |
| Figure 71: Settings menu FLS settings option .....                                       | 76 |
| Figure 72: Sonic 2020/2026 FLS Options .....                                             | 76 |
| Figure 73: Roll and Pitch Stabilize .....                                                | 78 |
| Figure 74: Dual Head Mode .....                                                          | 79 |
| Figure 75: Dual Head Mode active .....                                                   | 79 |
| Figure 76: Load Settings menu selection .....                                            | 80 |
| Figure 77: Loading an .ini file .....                                                    | 80 |
| Figure 78: Default dual head Network settings .....                                      | 80 |
| Figure 79: TruePix™ image of wreck debris and seagrass .....                             | 81 |
| Figure 80: Network Card Properties .....                                                 | 82 |

|                                                                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 81: Intel NIC Properties .....                                                               | 82  |
| Figure 82: MultiMode Window .....                                                                   | 83  |
| Figure 83: Settings   MultiMode .....                                                               | 83  |
| Figure 84: MultiMode Selections .....                                                               | 83  |
| Figure 85: MultiMode Preset Settings.....                                                           | 83  |
| Figure 86: Preset warning.....                                                                      | 84  |
| Figure 87: Capture settings prompt .....                                                            | 84  |
| Figure 88: Dual Head Multimode .....                                                                | 85  |
| Figure 89: Pipeline Mode (courtesy of Swathe Services) .....                                        | 85  |
| Figure 90: Pipeline Mode (image courtesy of DOF Subsea) .....                                       | 85  |
| Figure 91: Ocean Characteristics .....                                                              | 87  |
| Figure 92: TVG Curve Concept.....                                                                   | 89  |
| Figure 93: The angular acoustic wavefront will strike each receive element at a different time..... | 90  |
| Figure 94: Installation Settings .....                                                              | 91  |
| Figure 95: Status Options .....                                                                     | 92  |
| Figure 96: Status Message.....                                                                      | 92  |
| Figure 97: Status   Saturation Monitor .....                                                        | 93  |
| Figure 98: Saturation Monitor .....                                                                 | 93  |
| Figure 99: TruePix Monitor.....                                                                     | 94  |
| Figure 100: TruePix monitor palette .....                                                           | 94  |
| Figure 101: Select Tools; Firmware Update .....                                                     | 96  |
| Figure 102: The Browse button will open the current GUI's directory .....                           | 96  |
| Figure 103: Select correct update .bin file .....                                                   | 96  |
| Figure 104: A batch file will automatically load the upgrade file.....                              | 96  |
| Figure 105: The start of a firmware update. A series of dots represents the update progress.....    | 97  |
| Figure 106: Firmware update completed.....                                                          | 97  |
| Figure 107: Indication of attempts to update the firmware .....                                     | 97  |
| Figure 108: The Help Menu .....                                                                     | 98  |
| Figure 109: Installed Options .....                                                                 | 98  |
| Figure 110: Remote Assistance .....                                                                 | 99  |
| Figure 111: Remote Assistance window.....                                                           | 99  |
| Figure 112: About, provides the GUI version .....                                                   | 99  |
| Figure 113: Display Settings .....                                                                  | 100 |
| Figure 114: US Survey Feet display .....                                                            | 100 |
| Figure 115: Imagery Settings .....                                                                  | 101 |
| Figure 116: Enabling Robo Operation .....                                                           | 102 |
| Figure 117: Operational settings with Robo active .....                                             | 102 |
| Figure 118: Robo Settings.....                                                                      | 103 |
| Figure 119: Robo Settings Table.....                                                                | 103 |
| Figure 120: In Robo Settings, View link to the ini file.....                                        | 103 |
| Figure 121: Operating parameter buttons .....                                                       | 104 |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|                                                                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 122: Range setting represented in the wedge display.....                      | 105 |
| Figure 123: Graphical concept of the Wedge Display.....                              | 105 |
| Figure 124: RangeTrac enabled .....                                                  | 106 |
| Figure 125: Transmit Pulse.....                                                      | 107 |
| Figure 126: Enable Gates .....                                                       | 107 |
| Figure 127: Manual and GateTrac selections .....                                     | 108 |
| Figure 128: Manually adjust the gate slope.....                                      | 108 |
| Figure 129: Gate width tolerance toggle .....                                        | 108 |
| Figure 130: GateTrac enabled; Gate min and max control is disabled.....              | 108 |
| Figure 131: GateTrac: Depth + Slope enabled, manual gate controls are disabled. .... | 109 |
| Figure 132: GateTrac: Depth + Slope enabled and tracking a steep slope .....         | 109 |
| Figure 133: Graphical representation of depth gate .....                             | 110 |
| Figure 134: Ruler Function.....                                                      | 111 |
| Figure 135: Change in GUI IP .....                                                   | 113 |
| Figure 136: SONIC 2024 Sonar Head Block Diagram.....                                 | 114 |
| Figure 137: Transmit pattern; Sonic 2024 .....                                       | 115 |
| Figure 138: Receive pattern with Transmit pattern .....                              | 116 |
| Figure 139: Sonar Interface Module Block Diagram .....                               | 117 |
| Figure 140: R2Sonic I2NS Main Components (not including antennas and cables) .....   | 119 |
| Figure 141: GNSS Antennas .....                                                      | 119 |
| Figure 142: INS connections .....                                                    | 120 |
| Figure 143: INS SIM block diagram .....                                              | 120 |
| Figure 144: INS BNC & TNC Connections .....                                          | 121 |
| Figure 145: PPS Out - PPS In.....                                                    | 121 |
| Figure 146: SIMINS Serial Ports.....                                                 | 122 |
| Figure 147: POSView Serial port setup .....                                          | 122 |
| Figure 148: GNSS1 Port setup .....                                                   | 122 |
| Figure 149: Network Settings SIMINS .....                                            | 123 |
| Figure 150: Cannot Change IP, waiting on msg 32 .....                                | 123 |
| Figure 151: Set IP time expired, cannot change IP .....                              | 123 |
| Figure 152: Sensor setup for SIMINS .....                                            | 125 |
| Figure 153: INS Monitor .....                                                        | 125 |
| Figure 154: IMU Reference indicators .....                                           | 127 |
| Figure 155: POSView Lever Arm setup .....                                            | 128 |
| Figure 156: View of installation with the entered offsets .....                      | 128 |
| Figure 157: IMU Drawing .....                                                        | 130 |
| Figure 158: I2NS SIM Drawing .....                                                   | 131 |
| Figure 159: Gyrocompass Calibration method 1 .....                                   | 137 |
| Figure 160: Gyro Calibration Method 2 .....                                          | 138 |
| Figure 161: Gyro Calibration Method 2 example .....                                  | 139 |
| Figure 162: Idealised concept of Gyro Calibration Method 2.....                      | 139 |

|                                                                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 163: CTD Probe.....                                                                      | 142 |
| Figure 164: Time of Flight SV probe .....                                                       | 143 |
| Figure 165: Deploying a sound velocity probe via a winch or A-Frame .....                       | 146 |
| Figure 166: Rough log, kept during survey operations. ....                                      | 151 |
| Figure 167: Smooth log; information copied from a real-time survey log.....                     | 152 |
| Figure 168: Vessel Horizontal and Vertical reference system.....                                | 153 |
| Figure 169: Sonic 2026/2024/2022 Acoustic Centre.....                                           | 154 |
| Figure 170: Sonic MBES axes of rotation.....                                                    | 157 |
| Figure 171: Latency Data collection .....                                                       | 158 |
| Figure 172: Roll data collection .....                                                          | 159 |
| Figure 173: Roll data collections .....                                                         | 159 |
| Figure 174: Pitch data collections .....                                                        | 160 |
| Figure 175: Yaw data collection .....                                                           | 161 |
| Figure 176: In 1822 Daniel Colloden measuring velocity in Lake Geneva.....                      | 167 |
| Figure 177: Concept of refraction due to different sound velocities in the water column .....   | 168 |
| Figure 178: Sound velocity profile.....                                                         | 168 |
| Figure 179: Refraction Error indication .....                                                   | 169 |
| Figure 180: Concept of Spherical Spreading .....                                                | 170 |
| Figure 181: Concept of Cylindrical Spreading.....                                               | 171 |
| Figure 182: Single Head ROV Installation scheme A .....                                         | 181 |
| Figure 183: Single Head ROV Installation scheme B (Preferred).....                              | 181 |
| Figure 184: Dual Head ROV Installation scheme A.....                                            | 182 |
| Figure 185: Dual Head ROV Installation scheme B (Preferred).....                                | 182 |
| Figure 186: Sonic 2024 power supply current waveform. ....                                      | 184 |
| Figure 187: Inrush current to 2024 head during power-up, 20 ms window. ....                     | 184 |
| Figure 188: Inrush current to the 2024 head during power-up, 1-second window.....               | 185 |
| Figure 189: Power supply choke installation on 48VDC power .....                                | 185 |
| Figure 190: SIM Controller Board.....                                                           | 186 |
| Figure 191: J6 Connector on SIM Controller board.....                                           | 186 |
| Figure 192: ROV installation block diagram with the SIM top-side .....                          | 187 |
| Figure 193: ROV installation block diagram with the SIM Stack time from a top-side source. .... | 187 |
| Figure 194: ROV installation block diagram with the SIM Stack time from vehicle time.....       | 187 |
| Figure 195: GPS (ZDA or UTC formats) and PPS signals supplied by the vehicle time system.....   | 188 |
| Figure 196: SIM Board Stack.....                                                                | 188 |
| Figure 197: SIM Stack height .....                                                              | 188 |
| Figure 198: SIM Controller Board installation dimensions.....                                   | 190 |
| Figure 199: SIM Stack Outline .....                                                             | 190 |
| Figure 200: Assembled SIM Boards.....                                                           | 191 |
| Figure 201: SIM Boards height .....                                                             | 191 |
| Figure 202: Default .ini settings file.....                                                     | 193 |
| Figure 203: Dual head IP and UDP defaults.....                                                  | 193 |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 204: Dual-sonar head ping modes .....                             | 194 |
| Figure 205: Dual Head - Dual SIM external interfacing.....               | 194 |
| Figure 206: Wireshark Capture Options .....                              | 226 |
| Figure 207: Sonic 2024/2022 Projector .....                              | 230 |
| Figure 208: Cable clamp projector dimensions .....                       | 231 |
| Figure 209: Sonic 2026 Projector .....                                   | 232 |
| Figure 210: Sonic 2024/2026 Receive Module .....                         | 233 |
| Figure 211: Receiver outline with penetrator.....                        | 234 |
| Figure 212: Sonic 2022 Receive Module .....                              | 235 |
| Figure 213: Sonic 2022 Receiver / Projector horizontal offset .....      | 236 |
| Figure 214: Sonic 2024 Mounting Bracket Drawing .....                    | 237 |
| Figure 215: Sonic 2022 Mounting Bracket Drawing .....                    | 238 |
| Figure 216: Sonic 2026 Mounting Bracket Drawing .....                    | 239 |
| Figure 217: Sonic 2024/2022 Mounting Bracket Flange.....                 | 240 |
| Figure 218: SIM Box Drawing.....                                         | 241 |
| Figure 219: SIM Stack Outline .....                                      | 242 |
| Figure 220: R2Sonic Deck lead minimum connector passage dimensions ..... | 243 |
| Figure 221: Locking Ring type Deck Lead.....                             | 244 |
| Figure 222: I2NS IMU Dimensions .....                                    | 245 |
| Figure 223: I2NS IMU Cable .....                                         | 246 |
| Figure 224: I2NS SIM Dimensions .....                                    | 247 |
| Figure 225: Dual Head Mount Offsets .....                                | 248 |

## List of Tables

|                                                                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 1: Metric to Imperial conversion table .....                                   | 24  |
| Table 2 2026 System Specifications .....                                             | 25  |
| Table 3: 2024 System Specifications .....                                            | 25  |
| Table 4: 2020 System Specifications .....                                            | 26  |
| Table 5: 2026 Dimensions and Mass .....                                              | 26  |
| Table 6: 2024 Dimensions and Mass .....                                              | 26  |
| Table 7: 2022 Dimensions and Mass .....                                              | 27  |
| Table 8: Electrical Interface .....                                                  | 27  |
| Table 9: Ping Rate table .....                                                       | 27  |
| Table 10: Deck Lead Pin Assignment (Gigabit Ethernet and Power) .....                | 50  |
| Table 11: DB-9M RS-232 Standard Protocol .....                                       | 53  |
| Table 12: SIM DB-9M Serial pin assignment .....                                      | 53  |
| Table 13: Sonic 2020/2026 FLS Vertical Beamwidth .....                               | 77  |
| Table 14: I2NS Dimensions and Mass .....                                             | 129 |
| Table 15: Electrical Specifications .....                                            | 129 |
| Table 16: Gyro Calibration Method 2 computation .....                                | 139 |
| Table 17: Absorption Values for Seawater and Freshwater at 400 kHz and 200 kHz ..... | 172 |
| Table 18: Operating Frequency - water temperature – absorption (@50m) .....          | 177 |
| Table 19: Systems Power Requirements .....                                           | 183 |
| Table 20: SIM Gigabit switch speed indicators .....                                  | 189 |

## List of Graphs

|                                                                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Graph 1: Depth errors due to incorrect roll alignment .....                            | 159 |
| Graph 2: Position errors as a result of pitch misalignment .....                       | 160 |
| Graph 3: Along track position error caused by 0.5° error in yaw patch test .....       | 161 |
| Graph 4: Along-track position error caused by 1.0° error in yaw patch test error ..... | 162 |
| Graph 5: Seawater Absorption (Salinity 35ppt) .....                                    | 173 |
| Graph 6: Freshwater Absorption .....                                                   | 173 |
| Graph 7: 200 kHz Sound Absorption .....                                                | 174 |
| Graph 8: 300 kHz Sound Absorption .....                                                | 174 |
| Graph 9: 400 kHz Sound Absorption .....                                                | 175 |
| Graph 10: 700 kHz Sound Absorption .....                                               | 175 |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

# 1 INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 Outline of Equipment

The R2Sonic Sonic Multibeam Echosounders (MBES) are based on fifth generation Sonar Architecture that networks all of the modules and embeds the processor and controller in the sonar head's Receive Module to make for a very simple installation. The Sonic Control Graphical User Interface (GUI) is a simple program that can be installed on any Windows-based computer and allows the surveyor to control the operating parameters of the Sonic MBES. Sonic Control communicates with the Sonar Interface Module (SIM) via Ethernet. The SIM supplies power to the sonar head, synchronises multiple heads, time tags sensor data, relays commands to the sonar head, and routes the raw multibeam data to the customer's Data Collection Computer (DCC).

The Sonic MBES work on a user selectable frequency range of 170 kHz to 450 kHz (Type 1006 projector; older Type 1004 projectors: 200 kHz to 400 kHz), so it is adaptable to a wide range of survey depths and conditions. The user can adjust the operating frequency, via the Sonic Control GUI, *on the fly*, without having to shut down the sonar system or change hardware or halt recording data. The Sonic MBES have a user selectable sector angle, from 10° to 160°, using all 256 beams; the desired sector angle can be selected on *the fly* without a halt to data recording. The selected swath angle can also be rotated port or starboard, while recording, to direct the highly concentrated beams towards the desired target. Both the opening angle and swath rotation can be controlled via the mouse cursor.

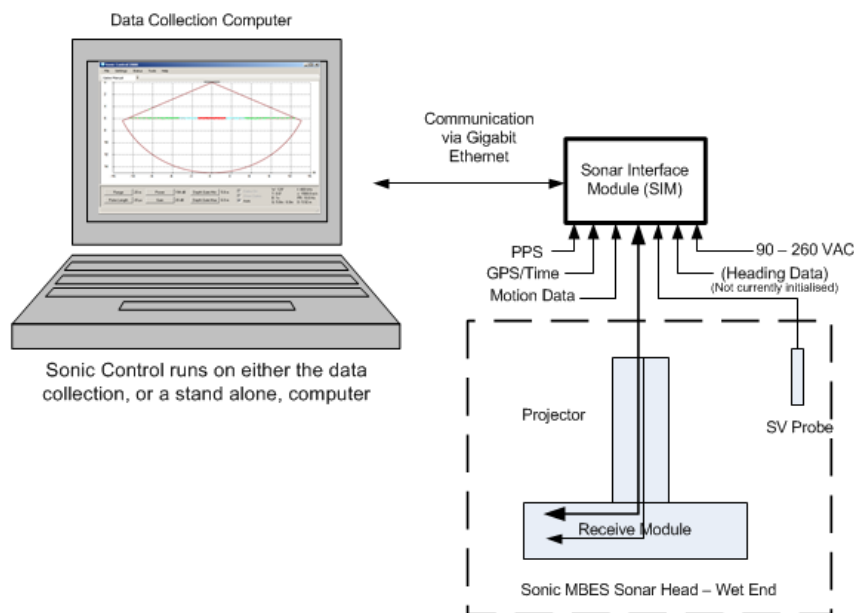


Figure 1: Sonic MBES Block Diagram

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 1.2 How to use this Manual

This manual is designed to cover all aspects of the installation and operation of the Sonic MBES. It is, therefore, recommended that the user read through the entire Operation Manual before commencing the installation or use of the equipment.

### 1.2.1 Standard of Measurement

The Metric system of measurement is utilised throughout this manual; this includes temperature in degrees Celsius.

| METRIC                    | IMPERIAL    |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| 10mm (0.010m)             | 0.39 inches |
| 100mm (0.100m)            | 3.9 inches  |
| 1000mm (1.0 metre)        | 39.4 inches |
| 100 grams (0.100kg)       | 3.5 ounces  |
| 1000 grams (1.0 kilogram) | 2.2 pounds  |
| 10° C                     | 50°F        |

Table 1: Metric to Imperial conversion table

## 2 SONIC SPECIFICATIONS

### 2.1 Sonic 2026 System Specification

| System Feature                      | Specification                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                           | 170kHz to 450kHz (90kHz - 100kHz optional)                                    |
| Beamwidth – Across Track (at nadir) | 0.5° @ 400kHz / 1.0° @ 200kHz / 2.0° @ 100kHz                                 |
| Beamwidth – Along Track (at nadir)  | 0.5° @ 400kHz / 1.0° @ 200kHz / 2.0° @ 100kHz                                 |
| Number of Beams                     | 256                                                                           |
| Swath Sector                        | 10° to 160° (user selectable)                                                 |
| Maximum Slant Range                 | 1200 metres                                                                   |
| Pulse Length                        | 170 kHz – 450 kHz: 15µSec – 2000µSec<br>90 kHz – 100 kHz: 275µsec - 2000µsec) |
| Pulse Type                          | Shaped Continuous Wave (CW)                                                   |
| Depth Rating                        | 100 metres (4000 metres optional)                                             |
| Operating Temperature               | -10° C to 40° C                                                               |
| Storage Temperature                 | -30° C to 55° C                                                               |

Table 2 2026 System Specifications

### 2.2 Sonic 2024 System Specification

| System Feature                      | Specification                               |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Frequency (Type 1006 Projector)     | 170kHz to 450kHz (700kHz optional)          |
| Frequency (Type 1004 Projector)     | 200kHz to 400kHz                            |
| Beamwidth – Across Track (at nadir) | 0.5° @ 400kHz / 1.0° @ 200kHz               |
| Beamwidth – Along Track (at nadir)  | 0.9° @ 450kHz / 2.0° @ 200kHz               |
| <b>UHR Beamwidth (at nadir)</b>     | <b>0.3° Across Track x 0.6° Along Track</b> |
| Number of Beams                     | 256                                         |
| Swath Sector                        | 10° to 160° (user selectable)               |
| <b>UHR Swath Sector</b>             | <b>10° to 70° (user selectable)</b>         |
| Maximum Slant Range                 | 1200 metres                                 |
| Pulse Length                        | 15µSec – 1115µSec                           |
| Pulse Type                          | Shaped Continuous Wave (CW)                 |
| Depth Rating                        | 100 metres (4000 metres optional)           |
| Operating Temperature               | -10° C to 40° C                             |
| Storage Temperature                 | -30° C to 55° C                             |

Table 3: 2024 System Specifications

## 2.3 Sonic 2022 System Specification

| System Feature                      | Specification                               |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Frequency (Type 1006 Projector)     | 170kHz to 450kHz (700kHz optional)          |
| Frequency (Type 1004 Projector)     | 200kHz to 400kHz                            |
| Beamwidth – Across Track (at nadir) | 1.0° @ 400kHz / 2.0° @ 200kHz               |
| Beamwidth – Along Track (at nadir)  | 0.9° @ 450kHz / 2.0° @ 200kHz               |
| <b>UHR Beamwidth (at nadir)</b>     | <b>0.6° Across Track x 0.6° Along Track</b> |
| Number of Beams                     | 256                                         |
| Swath Sector                        | 10° to 160° (user selectable)               |
| <b>UHR Swath Sector</b>             | <b>10° to 70° (user selectable)</b>         |
| Maximum Slant Range                 | 1200 metres                                 |
| Pulse Length                        | 15µSec – 1115µSec                           |
| Pulse Type                          | Shaped Continuous Wave (CW)                 |
| Depth Rating                        | 100 metres (4000 metres optional)           |
| Operating Temperature               | -10° C to 40° C                             |
| Storage Temperature                 | -30° C to 55° C                             |

Table 4: 2020 System Specifications

## 2.4 Sonic 2026 Dimensions and Weights

| Component                                            | Dimensions (L x W x D) / Dry Weight        |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Receiver Module                                      | 480mm x 109mm x 190mm / 12.9kg             |
| Projector                                            | 480mm x 109mm x 196mm / 13.4kg             |
| Sonar Interface Module (SIM)                         | 280mm x 170mm x 60mm / 2.4kg               |
| I2NS Sonar Interface Module (SIM)                    | 280mm x 170mm x 126.4mm / 4.2kg            |
| <b>Projector mass in air / Rcvr and Proj. in Air</b> | <b>13.4kg (29.4lbs) / 26.3kg (57.2lbs)</b> |
| <b>Receive module and Projector mass in water</b>    | <b>10.6kg (22.4lbs) Fresh</b>              |

Table 5: 2026 Dimensions and Mass

## 2.5 Sonic 2024 Dimensions and Weights

| Component                                         | Dimensions (L x W x D) / Dry Weight |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Receiver Module                                   | 480mm x 109mm x 190mm / 12.9kg      |
| Projector                                         | 273mm x 108mm x 86mm / 3.3kg        |
| Sonar Interface Module (SIM)                      | 280mm x 170mm x 60mm / 2.4kg        |
| I2NS Sonar Interface Module (SIM)                 | 280mm x 170mm x 126.4mm / 4.2kg     |
| <b>Receive module and Projector mass in water</b> | <b>5.9kg (Fresh)</b>                |

Table 6: 2024 Dimensions and Mass

## 2.6 Sonic 2022 Dimensions and Weights

| Component                                  | Dimensions (L x W x D) / Dry Weight |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Receiver Module                            | 276mm x 109mm x 190mm / 7.7kg       |
| Projector                                  | 273mm x 108mm x 86mm / 3.3kg        |
| Sonar Interface Module (SIM)               | 280mm x 170mm x 60mm / 2.4kg        |
| I2NS Sonar Interface Module (SIM)          | 280mm x 170mm x 126.4mm / 4.2kg     |
| Receive module and Projector mass in water | 4.0kg (Fresh)                       |

Table 7: 2022 Dimensions and Mass

## 2.7 Sonic 2026/2024/Sonic 2022 Electrical Interface

| Item                                         | Specification                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mains Power                                  | 90 – 260 VAC; 45 – 65 Hz                                                         |
| Power Consumption (SIM and Sonar Head)       | 125 Watt (2026); 75 Watt (2024); 54 Watt (2022)                                  |
| Power Consumption (Sonar Head Only)          | 100W avg.; 150W peak (2026); 50W avg. 90W Peak (2024); 35W avg.; 70W Peak (2022) |
| Integrated Inertial Navigation System (I2NS) | 38.4W (SIM and IMU with Antennas)                                                |
| Uplink/Downlink                              | 10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet                                                       |
| Data Interface                               | 10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet                                                       |
| Sync IN/OUT                                  | TTL                                                                              |
| GPS Timing                                   | 1PPS and RS232 NMEA or Ethernet time message                                     |
| Auxiliary Sensors                            | RS232 / Ethernet                                                                 |
| Deck Cable Length                            | 15 metre (optional: 25m or 50 metres)                                            |

Table 8: Electrical Interface

## 2.8 Sonic MBES Ping Rates (SV = 1500.00m/sec)

| RANGE | PING RATE |
|-------|-----------|
| 2 - 7 | 60.0      |
| 10    | 55.4      |
| 15    | 39.4      |
| 20    | 30.6      |
| 25    | 25.0      |
| 30    | 21.1      |
| 35    | 18.3      |
| 40    | 16.1      |
| 50    | 13.0      |
| 70    | 9.4       |
| 100   | 6.7       |
| 150   | 4.5       |
| 200   | 3.4       |
| 250   | 2.7       |
| 300   | 2.3       |
| 400   | 1.7       |
| 450   | 1.5       |
| 500   | 1.4       |
| 700   | 1.0       |
| 1000  | 0.7       |
| 1200  | 0.6       |

Table 9: Ping Rate table

### WARNING

THE RECEIVE MODULE IS FILLED WITH OIL THAT WILL FREEZE TO A SOLID AT -10°C. STORAGE BELOW THIS TEMPERATURE (TO -30°C) IS POSSIBLE IF THE HEAD IS SLOWLY THAWED OUT PRIOR TO OPERATION.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 2.9 Acoustic Centre

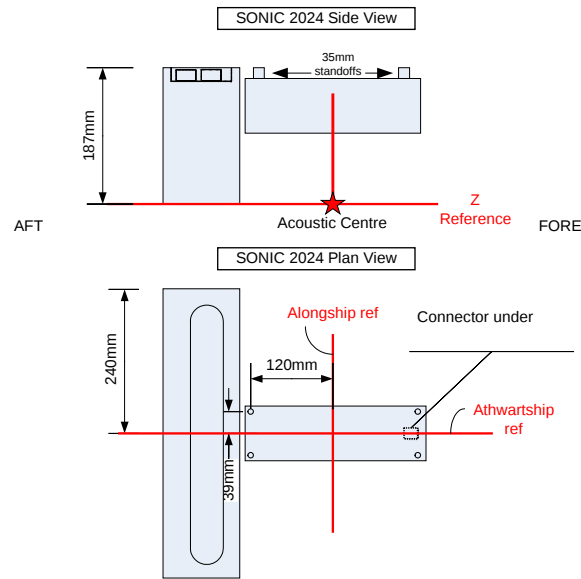


Figure 2: Sonic 2024 Acoustic Centre

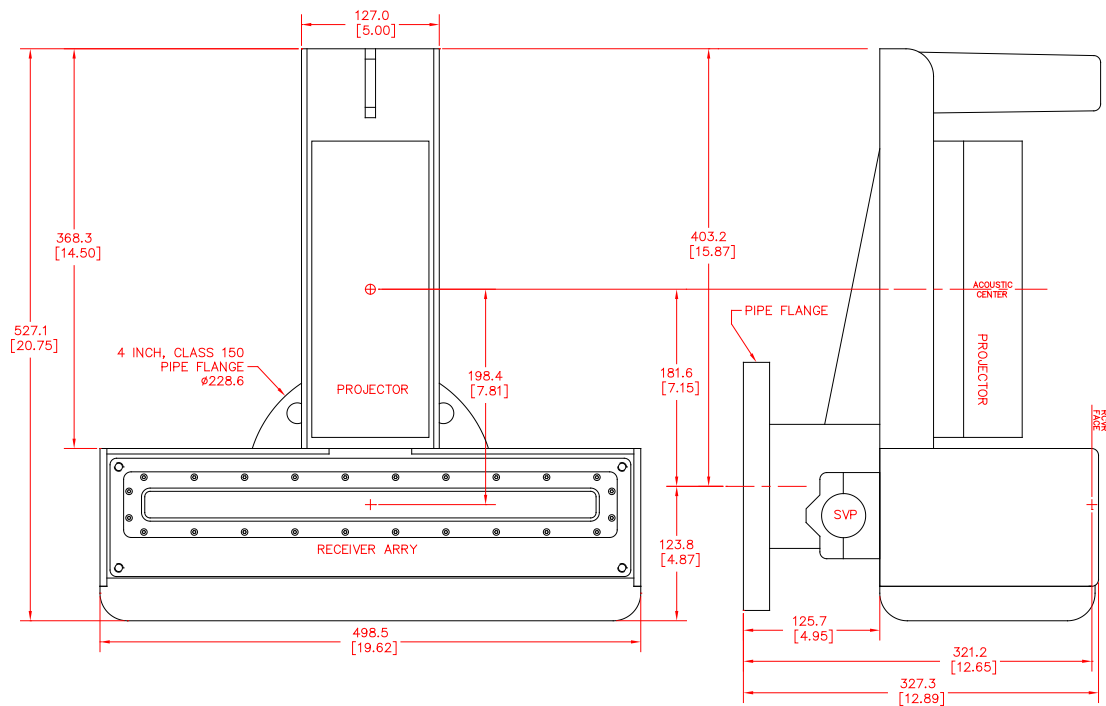


Figure 3: Sonic 2024 Acoustic Centre, as Mounted

**Centre of Flange to Alongship offset = 0.182m (0.597ft)**

**Top of Flange to Z reference = 0.318m (1.043ft)**

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

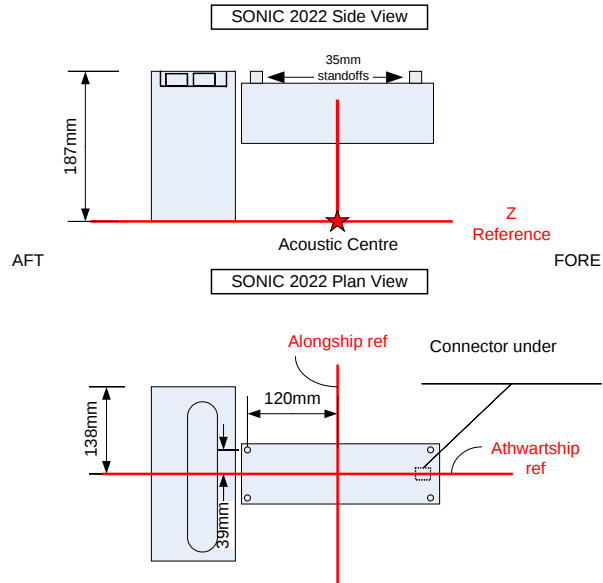


Figure 4: Sonic 2022 Acoustic Centre

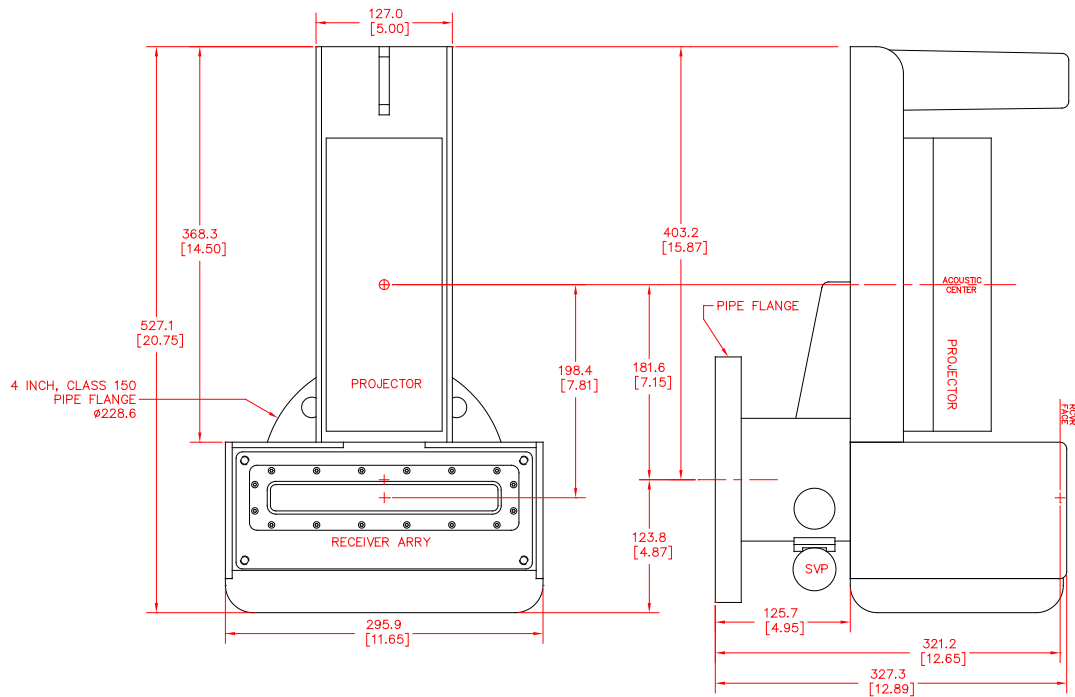


Figure 5: Sonic 2022 Acoustic Centre, as Mounted

Centre of Flange to Alongship offset = 0.182m (0.597ft)

Top of Flange to Z reference = 0.318m (1.043ft)

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

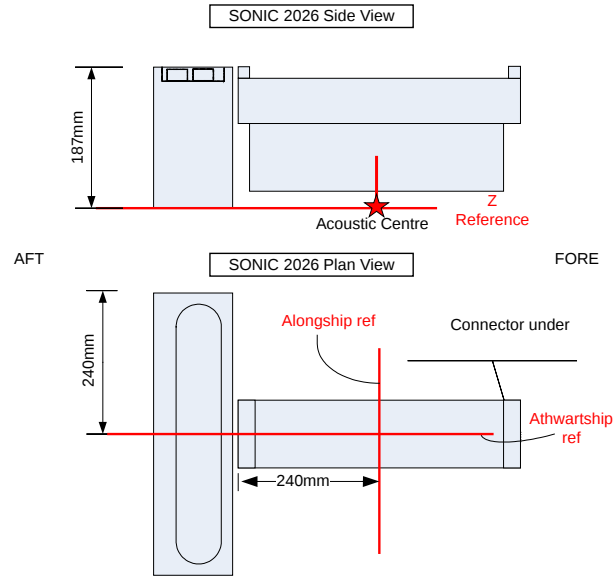


Figure 6: Sonic 2026 Acoustic Centre

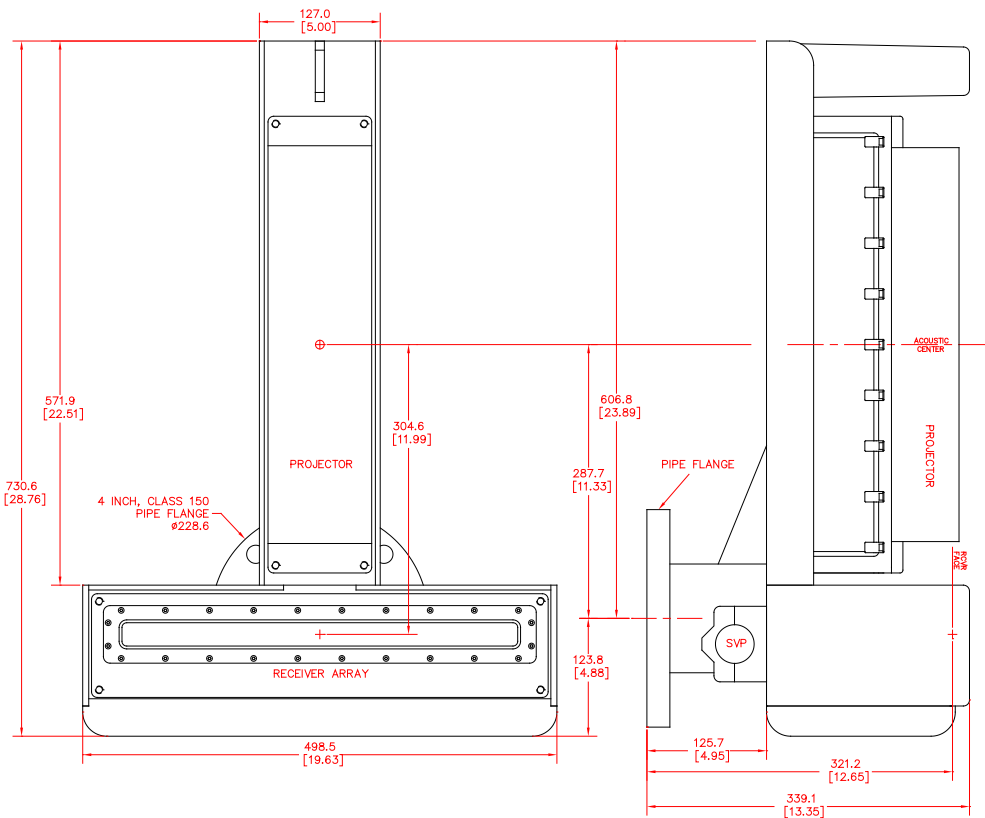


Figure 7: Sonic 2026 Acoustic Centre, as mounted

**Centre of Flange to Alongship offset = 0.288m (0.944ft)**

**Top of Flange to Z reference = 0.318m (1.043ft)**

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 3 SONIC MBES SONAR HEAD INSTALLATION – Surface Vessel

The Sonic MBES can be installed on an over-the-side pole, through a moon pool, or as a permanent hull mount. The lightweight, small size, and low power consumption make the Sonic MBES ideal for underwater vehicle (ROV and AUV) installations.

#### **WARNING**

**DECK LEAD MINIMUM BEND RADIUS =  
150MM**

#### 3.1 Sonic MBES Receive Module Installation

The Sonic MBES sonar head is mounted on the standard R2Sonic mounting frame as shown below.

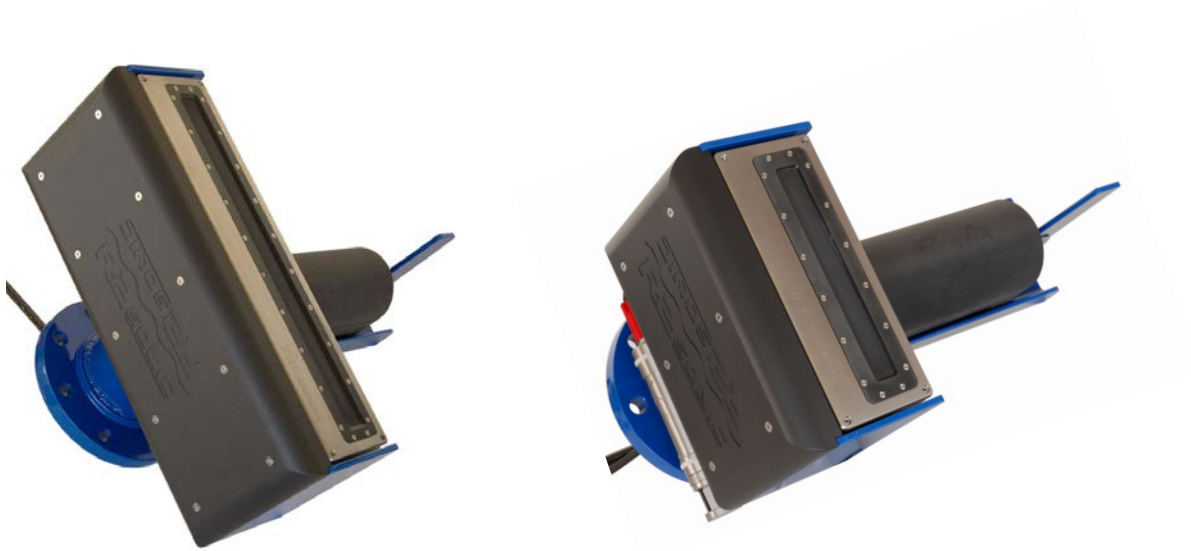


Figure 8: Sonic 2024 and Sonic 2022 on the mounting frame

If the Sonic 2024/2022 sonar head is not pre-mounted, the following guidelines must be followed for proper operation of the system.

- The Receive Module is orientated with the narrow part of the face towards the projector (see above).
- The projector is orientated with the connector towards the end with the protective fin.
- The Projector must be mounted with the correct 35mm standoffs in place.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 3.1.1 Mounting the Sonic MBES Receive Module



Sonic 2024/2026



Sonic 2022

Figure 9: Top side of Receive Module



Sonic 2024/2026



Sonic 2022

Figure 10: Receive Module Face

### 3.1.2 Receive Module

The Receive Module has two connectors; the female connector is for the Projector cable, the male connector is for the deck lead that goes to the SIM. There is a securing 'ear' on top of the Receive Module to secure the cables with a cable tie or other similar securing methods. Seat the 0.439m projector cable first. A light spray of silicone lubricant (3M Silicone Lubricant, **3M ID:** 62-4678-4930-3) will aid in seating the connectors. **Silicone grease is never to be used.** The deck lead passes through the hydrophone pole and then through the flange opening. Seat the deck lead after seating the projector cable. ENSURE that all connections are tight with no visible gaps.

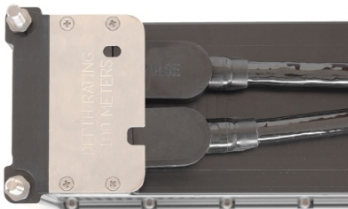


Figure 11: Seated connectors (Sonic 2024 on the left and Sonic 2022 on the right)

When inserting or removing the connector, use a left to right or back and forth movement and never an up and down movement.

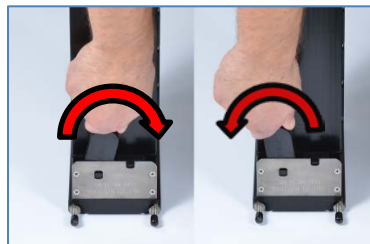


Figure 12: Connector wiggle - back and forth NOT up and down

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 3.1.3 New Deck Lead connector

Commencing August 2016, the receiver deck lead connection is being changed from the push-on type to a locking ring design on a short lead (penetrator). Customers can request the push-on connector, if desired, to meet with specialised installations. The receiver end of the cable is not removable as in previous versions; it is permanently attached to the receiver.



Figure 13: New cable penetrator with locking ring

The new penetrator cable is run either up, through the flange, or through the access in the neck of the mount. The decklead will connect to the penetrator.

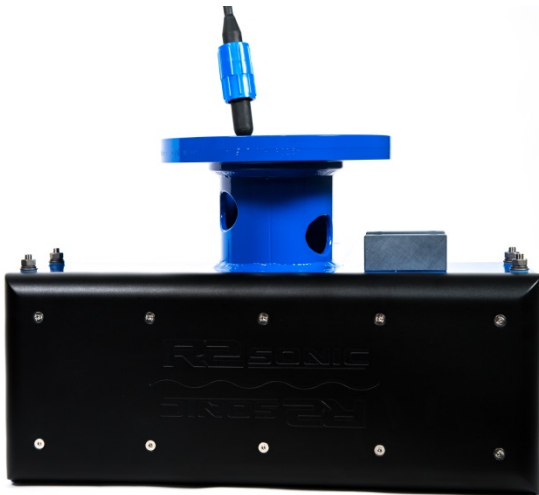


Figure 14: Deck lead to penetrator connection

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 3.1.4 New Cable Clamping Arrangement

New decklead and projector cable clamping arrangements were introduced in 2017. The cable clamps are designed to further enhance the robustness of the installed sonar head

#### 3.1.4.1 Receiver cable clamp

There are two configurations for the decklead connection to the receiver. The standard, which is comprised of a single cable with a push-on connector and the penetrator style, where there is a pigtail cable from a moulded connection on the sonar housing. The receiver cable clamp is the same for both of the configurations. There is a lower and upper bracket that comprises the clamp. The lower bracket is positioned under the cables and aligned with the threaded holes along the top edge of the receiver. The upper bracket is then positioned over the cables to mate to the lower bracket; the brackets are secured with 6 M4 pan head Phillips screws. The M4 x 30mm screws secure the edge of the bracket to the housing; the M4 x 16mm is used to secure the upper bracket to the lower bracket and do not attach to the receiver housing.

In that there are different cable thicknesses, there are three available clamps depending on the cable thickness.



Figure 15: Lower bracket positioned

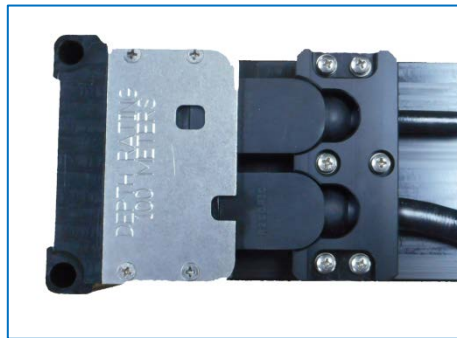


Figure 16: Upper bracket secured

#### 3.1.4.2 Projector cable clamp

The clamp, for the projector cable, is also in two parts. The projector cable clamp replaces one of the projector's standard standoffs. The projector cable clamp requires an updated projector housing, but can be retrofitted to previous projectors at the customer's request.



Figure 17: Updated Projector housing

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

A small, lower, bracket is placed under the cable and then a larger block is placed over the top and secured to the housing. The upper bracket replaces the stand-off that would normally be positioned at this end of the projector. The mounting bracket bolts that secure the projector to the mounting bracket pass through the two smaller holes on the edge of the large upper bracket.

Mounting bracket securing bolts pass through the two holes on the edge of the upper block.



Figure 18: Upper bracket for Projector cable clamp

The lower bracket fits within the upper bracket and is placed under the cable, but not bolted to the projector housing.



Figure 19: Projector cable clamp lower bracket



Figure 20: Projector cable clamp upper bracket



Figure 21: Projector cable clamp in place

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

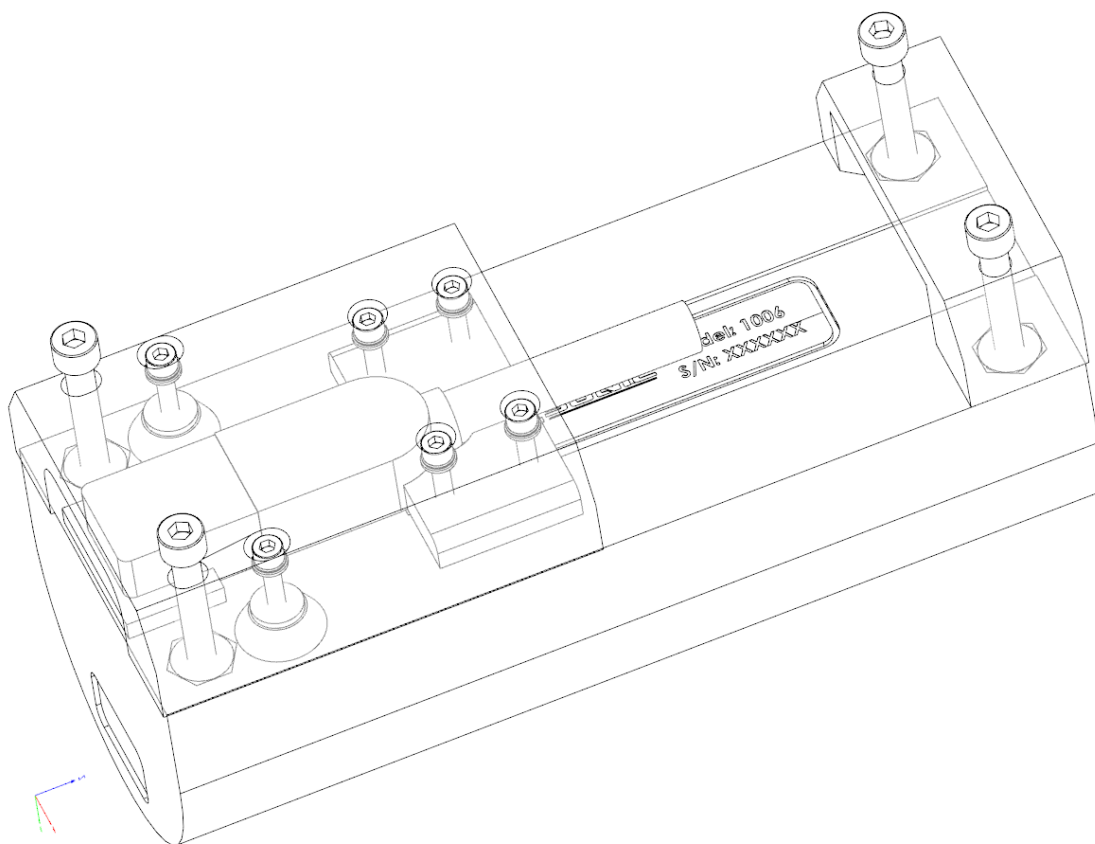


Figure 22: Projector cable clamp bolt / mounting arrangement

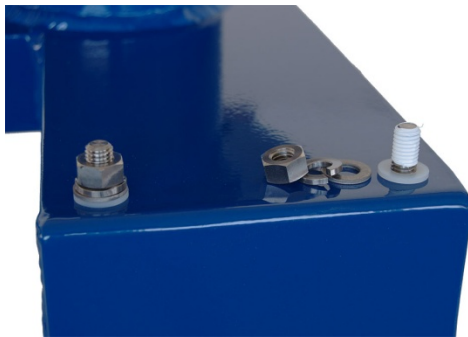
|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001



SV Probe block is secured, via screws, through the underside of the mounting frame

Prior to mounting the Receive Module, the block that holds the sound velocity probe must be secured through the underside of the mounting bracket. Next, mount the Receive Module in the mounting frame. This can be most easily done by putting the receive module face on a piece of cardboard or other material and then lowering the mounting frame down with the threaded bolts passing through the mounting frame. The threads, of the securing bolts, after passing through the frame, **must be wrapped with 2 wraps of Teflon™ tape**. This is to prevent galling where the nut will freeze on the bolt. **Do not tighten beyond 17Newton metre** (150 pound-inch or 12.5 pound-foot).



**Figure 24: Position the insulating bushing**

(Wrap threads with Teflon™ tape, then secure with a flat washer, locking washer and then the nut.)

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 3.1.5 Mounting the Sonic 2024/2022 Projector

The projector is secured to the frame with two, 35mm standoffs. The stand-offs allow room for the Projector to Receive Module cable to be run. A 6mm drive hex screw secures the projector through the stand-off. **The Projector's connector faces towards the protection fin.** Connect the 0.439m interconnect cable's female end to the Projector's male bulkhead connector. When the connectors are mated, there should be no visible gap between them. A very light spray of silicone lubricant will aid seating the connector.

Figure 25: Sonic 2024 Projector



Figure 26: Projector Stand-off



Sonic 2024

Figure 27: Mounting the projector



Sonic 2022

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



Figure 28: View of the mounted Projector; NB. The connector is facing protective fin

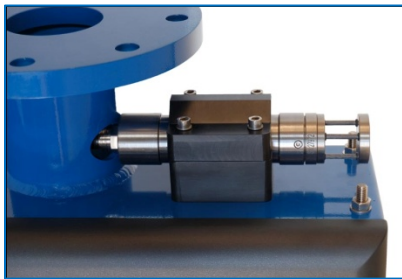


Figure 29: SV Probe mounted in the block

### 3.1.6 Mounting the Sonic 2026 Projector

The 2026 Projector is mounted within the same style housing as the receiver and is thus mounted in the same way that the receiver is mounted using the same isolation collars, washers and nuts.



Figure 30: Mounting the Sonic 2026 Projector

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

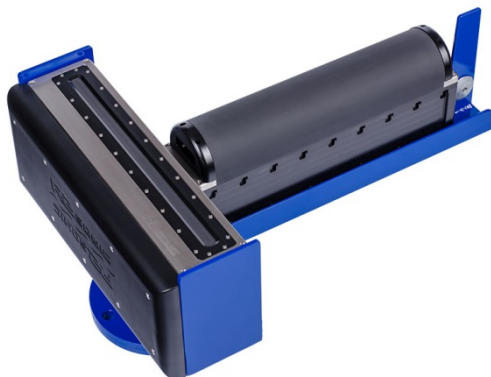


Figure 31: Sonic 2026 in the mounting frame

## WARNING – Pre-Deployment Test Mode

The Sonic family of multibeam echosounders is designed to be operated whilst deployed in water (fresh or sea) and should not be operated in air except for brief periods for the deck test detailed within this manual. The sonars use water as a means to dissipate heat. Operating the sonar, in air, can do damage to the sonar; to prevent damage, R2Sonic now has a pre-deployment test mode.

To avoid damage to the sonar, the sonar will sense when it is being operated in air and will reduce power. The sonar will determine, from the sound velocity input, whether it is immersed in water or operating in air.

The sonar allows full Tx Power if either of the following conditions is true:

1. The operator selects manual sound velocity.
2. The SVP reported 1300 to 1600 m/sec somewhere within the past 30 seconds

Otherwise it limits the requested Tx Power to 206.666 dB. During power limiting, the sonar puts 206.666 into the H0\_TxPower field of the various data headers. The GUI will recognize this and flag the power setting with a red indicator light to alert the user.

|             |       |       |        |          |        |            |       |          |            |
|-------------|-------|-------|--------|----------|--------|------------|-------|----------|------------|
| Range       | 35 m  | Power | 206 dB | Gate Min | 19.6 m | Brightness | 24 dB | W: 98°   | f: 0 kHz   |
| Pulse Width | 30 µs | Gain  | 13     | Gate Max | 32.2 m | Gate Slope | 0°    | T: 31.0° | c: 0.0 m/s |
|             |       |       |        |          |        |            |       | BSM: uhd | PR: 0.0 Hz |
|             |       |       |        |          |        |            |       |          | D: 0.00 m  |

### 3.1.7 Correct Orientation of the Sonic MBES

The Sonic MBES is designed to be installed with the projector facing forward, or towards the bow. However, if the installation requires the projector to face aft, in Sonic Control, the user can select the orientation to projector aft and this will re-orientate the data output to reflect the projector orientation.

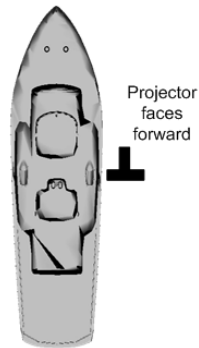


Figure 32: Correct Orientation of the Sonic MBES

### 3.1.8 Deck Test Before Deployment

It is highly recommended that the operation of the sonar be verified before putting the sonar or vessel into the water. The deck test will test both the receiver and the transmitter. The sonar can be operated, in the air, for brief periods for testing. Under no circumstances should the sonar head be powered up in the air other than for brief testing to last no more than five minutes. The sonar uses water to dissipate heat and, if left powered up in the air, will eventually suffer catastrophic failure.

#### 3.1.8.1 Communications test

The first test is to ensure that computer, running Sonic Control, can communicate with both the sonar head and the SIM.

- Make sure that Sonic Control is installed in the root directory on the computer and not under ProgramFiles nor on the desktop
- Make sure all firewalls are off
- Make sure all virus checkers are disabled
- Verify the IP4 configuration for the network card being used for the sonar
- Make sure that the files, in the Sonic Control directory, are not Read-only, or otherwise protected by the operating system

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### **3.1.8.2 Receiver rub test**

This tests the receiver and the receive elements

- Turn transmit power off by positioning the cursor over the Power button, then Shift + left mouse button; this will set transmit power to 0
- Reduce the range
- Turn Acoustic Imagery on (under Settings | Displays)
- Increase Gain to 30
- Have someone rub the receiver face, slowly, with their hand, along the face of the receiver. Noise will be seen, in the display, that will correspond to the rubbing
- If noise is not seen, try adjusting range or gain
- If noise is not seen, check the connector, on the receiver

### **3.1.8.3 Transmitter test**

This tests that the transmitter is transmitting

- Have someone position their ear close to the projector
- Set ping rate (Settings | Sonar settings) to 2 Hz
- Set pulse width to 100µsecs
- Slowly bring up Power
- A distinct 'click' should be heard at the 2 Hz ping rate
- If no clicking is heard, increase pulse width and power
- If no clicking is heard, check the projector cable connection
- If no clicking is heard, open the Status window and check TX voltage (V); voltage should increase / decrease with increase / decrease in Power

### **3.1.8.4 Problems with Deck Test**

If there are any issues, with the Deck Test, please contact R2Sonic Support immediately. R2Sonic Support can be contacted via email: [R2Support@R2Sonic.com](mailto:R2Support@R2Sonic.com); telephone/SMS: +1.805.259.8142; Skype: chaswbrennan

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 3.2 Sonar Head Installation Guidelines

### 3.2.1 Introduction

The proper installation of the Sonic MBES sonar head is critical to the quality of data that will be realised from the system. No matter the type of installation (hull mount, moon pool, or over-the-side pole); the head must be in an area of laminar flow over the array. Any vibration or movement of the sonar head, independent of vessel motion, will result in reduced swath coverage and noise in the data. To this end, the head must be installed on as sturdy a mounting arrangement as possible; fore and aft guys are NOT recommended as a means to obtain this stability.

The initial investigation of where to mount the sonar head should take into account any engines, pumps, or other mechanical equipment that may not be operating at the time, but may be a cause of vibration or noise when operating under normal survey conditions.

The structural stability of any decks, bulkheads, or superstructure, which will be employed when mounting the sonar head, must be taken into account and strengthened if necessary.

### 3.2.2 Over-the-Side mount

The over-the-side mount is normally employed for shallow water survey vessels and/or temporary survey requirements. The over-the-side mount consists of a frame structure that is attached to the vessel's hull or superstructure. A pole will be attached to the frame, normally through the use of swivel flanges, flanges, or other means by which the head can be swung up when not in use and deployed when needed. A similar mounting arrangement is the bow – mount, which is a specialised form of an over-the-side mount.

To ensure the stability of the pole, it should have a securing arrangement as close to the water line as possible. As stated above, the use of guy wires is strongly discouraged.

When the pole is in the 'up' position it should be secured so that there is no or little movement that would be a strain on the flanges or mount. The head should be washed with fresh water as soon as possible and inspected for any damage or marine growth. If the head is to remain in the 'up' position; a covering should be put over the head that will protect it from the sun.

### 3.2.3 Moon Pool Mount

Deploying the sonar head through a moon pool is usually a more stable mounting arrangement than an over-the-side pole. A moon pool is an area, within a vessel, that is open to the water. The sonar head is normally mounted in such a way that it can be deployed and recovered through the moon pool. The pole or structure that the sonar head is mounted on is normally shorter and sturdier than an over-the-side mount; this can allow for higher survey speeds.

### 3.2.4 Hull Mount

The hull mount is the sturdiest of all possible ways to mount a sonar head. With a hull mount, the sonar head is physically attached to the vessel's hull. With this way of securing the sonar head, there is no possibility of movement, outside that of the movement of the vessel.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

There are disadvantages to the hull mount: the head cannot be inspected easily for marine growth or damage; the vessel may be restricted in the depth of waters that can be surveyed, due to the head being permanently attached to the hull.

A normal hull mount will also involve the fabrication of a fairing, on the hull, to ensure correct flow patterns over the sonar head.

### **3.2.5 ROV Mounting**

The Sonic 2024/2022 is ideal for undersea operations due to its compact size and low power consumption. With all processing being done in the Receive Module, all that is required is to provide Ethernet over single mode fibre optic communication, between the SIM and the Receive Module. The 48VDC is supplied via the ROV's power distribution.

Please refer to [Appendix VII](#) for full details on ROV and AUV installation, interfacing and operation.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 4 SONAR INTERFACE MODULE (SIM) INSTALLATION and INTERFACING

### 4.1 Sonar Interface Module (SIM)<sup>1</sup>



Figure 33: Sonar Interface Module (SIM)

The Sonar Interface Module is the communication centre for the Sonic MBES. The SIM receives commands from Sonic Control 2000 and passes the commands to the sonar head. The SIM also receives the PPS and timing information, which is transferred to the sonar head to accurately time stamp all bathymetry data in the sonar head. The data, from the sonar head, passes through the SIM's Gigabit switch and onto the data collection computer. Sound velocity, from the probe located near the sonar head, and motion data are also interfaced to the SIM to be passed onto the sonar head. The SIM is interchangeable; it is not tied to a unique sonar head.

#### 4.1.1 Physical installation

The 15 metre cable, from the Sonic MBES Receive Module, connects directly to the SIM via an Amphenol™ style connector. Therefore, the SIM must be located within 15 metres of the sonar head (a 50 metre cable is an option). The SIM is not water or splash proof, so it must be installed in a dry, temperature- controlled environment.

The SIM is small and light enough to be unobtrusive, but care needs to be taken that it is secured in such a manner so that it will not fall or move while the vessel is at sea. The SIM can be secured to a surface (horizontal or vertical) through the pass-through holes that are under the corner trim pieces. The holes accept #8-32 pan head, M4 pan head or M5 socket head cap screws. The trim piece can be removed by hand to expose the securing holes.

<sup>1</sup> For the I2NS SIM, please refer to [Appendix I](#)

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



**Figure 34: Removal of trim to expose securing holes**

#### 4.1.2 Electrical and Interfacing

The SIM has four DB-9 male connectors on the front. The label, on the top, clearly shows all connections. Beginning on the left front, the connections are: GPS, Motion, Heading, and Sound Velocity. At the present time the GPS time message (for time stamping), sound velocity, and motion (for roll stabilisation) inputs are enabled. Next to each DB-9 are two vertical LEDs; the top LED responds to the input data: Green – receiving data that is being decoded; Red – no connection; Orange – receiving data that cannot be decoded (wrong baud rate or format setting in the Sonic Control Sensor Settings menu). There is also a LED next to the on/off rocker switch, which is the head connection indicator: Green – head on, Red – head power off or not connected, Orange – problems with communications or if the sonar head current draw is below expected limits.

On the second row up are three BNC connections as well as three Ethernet connections. The BNC, which is above the GPS DB-9, receives the one Pulse Per Second (PPS is for clock synchronisation) from the GPS receiver. The PPS, along with the GPS time information is used to time stamp and synchronise all data.

The two BNC connections, to the right of the Ethernet connectors, are used to receive and send synchronisation triggers to and from other systems.

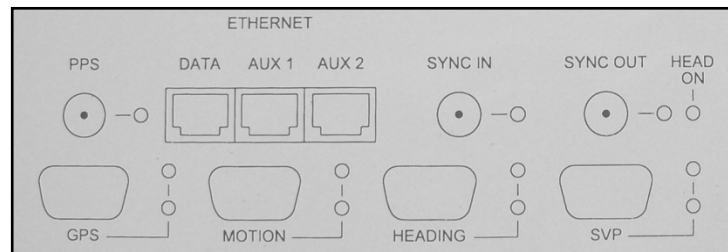
Mains voltage (90 – 260VAC) is input via the IEC connector. Above the connector is a rocker switch which turns on the system.

The SIM outputs the data (from the sonar head), via Ethernet, on any of the three RJ45 connections. The front panel RJ45 jacks are routed to the SIM's internal Gigabit Ethernet switch. The Gigabit switch is self-sensing; Ethernet cross-over cables are not required.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



**Figure 35: SIM Interfacing Physical Connections**



**Figure 36: SIM Interfacing Guide (from the label on top of the SIM)**

NB. Again, at present, the SIM only takes in the PPS, NMEA Time message, sound velocity (at the sonar head) and motion data, but not heading information.



Figure 38: Wet end connectors

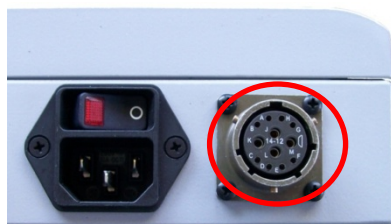


Figure 37: SIM IEC mains connection and deck lead Amphenol MS connector

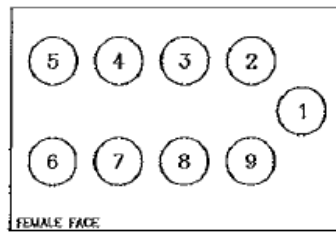
| Function     | Wet End Pin Number | Amphenol Pin Number | Pressure Rated Cable (14mm/0.55") Wire Colour | Non-Pressure Rated Cable (10.2mm/0.40") Wire Colour |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| BI_DC+       | 4                  | A                   | Blue                                          | Blue                                                |
| BI_DC-       | 5                  | B                   | Black paired with Blue                        | Blue/White                                          |
| BI_DB-       | 7                  | C                   | Green                                         | Green                                               |
| BI_DB+       | 8                  | D                   | Black paired with Green                       | Green/White                                         |
| BI_DD-       | 11                 | E                   | Brown                                         | Brown                                               |
| BI_DD+       | 12                 | F                   | Black paired with Brown                       | Brown/White                                         |
| BI_DA-       | 9                  | G                   | Orange                                        | Orange                                              |
| BI_DA+       | 10                 | H                   | Black paired with Orange                      | Orange/White                                        |
| Data Shield  | 6                  | n/c                 | Drain Wire                                    | N/A                                                 |
| Power +      | 1                  | J,M                 | Orange, Yellow (#18AWG)                       | Orange (#18AWG)                                     |
| Power Return | 2                  | K,L                 | Black, Blue (#18 AWG)                         | Black (#18AWG)                                      |

Table 10: Deck Lead Pin Assignment (Gigabit Ethernet and Power)

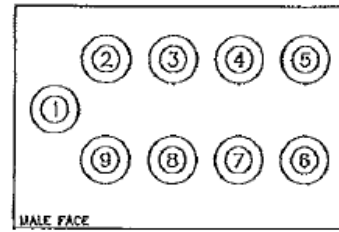
NB. The wet end pin assignment is the same for both types of connections.

### R2Sonic Sonar Underwater Connector Configurations

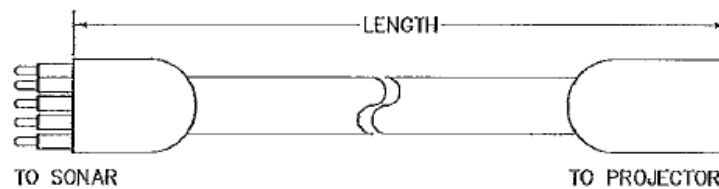
#### 1. R2Sonic Projector Cable:



Female (socket) Impulse connector face.



Male (pin) Impulse connector face.



Projector cable assembly.

#### Pinout

| Function     | Pin Number | R2Sonic 10013A Wire Color                                                 |
|--------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data+        | 2          | Blu                                                                       |
| Data-        | 9          | Blk (paired with Blu)                                                     |
| Data Shield  | 1          | Drain wire                                                                |
| Power+       | 3          | Grn, Org, Brn                                                             |
| Power Return | 8          | Blk (paired with Grn),<br>Blk (paired with Org),<br>Blk (paired with Brn) |
| Tx1+ (bathy) | 4          | 3x Org (3x#22 AWG)                                                        |
| Tx1- (bathy) | 7          | 3x Blk (3x#22 AWG)                                                        |
| Tx2+ (img)   | 5          | 3x Yel (3x#22 AWG)                                                        |
| Tx2- (img)   | 6          | 3x Wh/Blu (3x#22 AWG)                                                     |

Connectors: One each Impulse LPIL-9-MP and LPIL-9-FS

Lengths:  
0.438m P/N 16000001

Figure 39: Projector cable configuration

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 4.1.3 Serial Communication

All serial interfacing is standard RS-232 protocol.

| Pin | Data     |
|-----|----------|
| 2   | Receive  |
| 3   | Transmit |
| 5   | Ground   |

Table 11: DB-9M RS-232 Standard Protocol

| Pin | Data      | Function                |
|-----|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1   | Receive2  | Secondary Serial Port   |
| 2   | Receive   | Primary Serial Input    |
| 3   | Transmit  | Primary Serial Output   |
| 4   | +12VDC    | +12VDC Power            |
| 5   | Ground    | Data and Power Common   |
| 6   | N/C       | Not Connected           |
| 7   | +12VDC    | +12VDC Power            |
| 8   | N/C       | Not Connected           |
| 9   | Transmit2 | Secondary Serial Output |

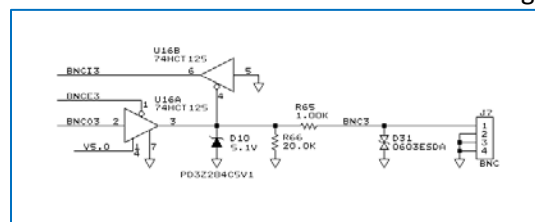
Table 12: SIM DB-9M Serial pin assignment

### 4.1.4 Time and PPS input

#### 4.1.4.1 Connecting PPS and Time to the SIM

To provide the most accurate multibeam data possible, the Sonic MBES requires the GPS Pulse Per Second (PPS) and NMEA ZDA time message or an ASCII UTC message, which is associated with the pulse, to accurately time stamp the Sonic MBES data. The data collection software may take in the same PPS and time message to synchronise the computer clock and the auxiliary sensor data.

The PPS is a TTL (transistor-transistor logic) pulse. The SIM box PPS input threshold is  $\approx +1.35V$  with about 0.14V of hysteresis. The PPS input rejects pulses narrower than about a microsecond to reject high-frequency cable reflections and ringing, but not all types of noise. The input pulse timing needs to be stable, within about 100ppm, or the SIM box will reject the pulses, and the LED will flash red instead of green. The pulse is transmitted to the SIM, and the data collection computer via a coaxial cable (such as RG-58); the cable is terminated with BNC connectors so that it is easy to use a 'T' adaptor to parallel the PPS to different locations. Connect one end of the coaxial cable to the GPS receiver's PPS output (via a 'T' adaptor, if required) and the other end to the SIM BNC labelled PPS. When a pulse is received, the LED next to the BNC connector will flash green at 1 Hz.



D31 provides ESD (electrostatic discharge) protection; it trips at about  $\pm 35V$

Figure 40: TTL input/output (PPS and Sync In/Out) schematic

The standard time message is an NMEA sentence identified as \$GPZDA and is expected to arrive after the PPS. The time message will also, usually, go to the data collection computer, so the ZDA message must either be split or output on two of the GPS receiver's RS-232 ports. The \$GPZDA and UTC message can be input to the SIM either via serial or Ethernet.

#### **4.1.4.2 Trimble UTC: UTC yy.mm.dd hh:mm:ss ab<CR><LF>"**

Trimble GPS receivers provide the PPS time synchronisation message with an ASCII UTC string and not the ZDA string. The SIM expects the UTC to arrive 0.5 seconds before the PPS. When interfacing a Trimble GPS, use the UTC message and not the ZDA for timing information. If both the ZDA and UTC are input, the UTC will take priority; the SIM will automatically ignore ZDA while receiving UTC. The UTC status code ('ab') is ignored.

Setting up the time synchronisation is done through the Sonic Control software detailed in [Section 5.4](#).

In that each of the SIM serial ports provides 12VDC on selected pins, it is not recommended to use a fully wired serial interface cable as this may cause some GPS receivers to stop sending data. Use a cable with only pins 2, 3 and 5 wired, if possible.

### **4.1.5 Motion Input**

The roll component, of the motion data, is used for roll stabilisation. Supported formats and connection are:

- TSS1                      Serial or Ethernet
- IXSea TAH               Serial or Ethernet (\$PHOCT)
- MiniPOS3                Serial or Ethernet

When using serial communication, it is recommended to set the motion sensor to output the highest baud rate and highest update rate possible, preferably 100 Hz or higher.

Connect the motion data to the DB-9 labelled Motion, on the SIM, or via Ethernet input to one of the RJ45 AUX receptacles. Setting up the serial port or Ethernet parameters is done through Sonic Control, which is covered in [Section 5.4](#).

### **4.1.6 SVP input**

#### **4.1.6.1 Connecting the sound velocity probe**

The sound velocity probe is used to provide the sound velocity at the sonar head, which is used for the receive beam steering. It is not used for refraction correction; that must be accomplished in the data collection software employing a full water depth sound velocity cast. The SVP data can be interfaced either by serial or Ethernet.

#### **4.1.6.2 Valeport miniSVS**

The miniSVS comes with a 15 metre cable. The cable carries both the DC power (8 – 29V DC) to the probe and the data from the probe to the SIM. The miniSVS is set for a baud rate of 9600 and will

start outputting sound velocity (Format: <sp> xxxx.xxx m/sec) as soon as power is applied and it is in the water. The miniSVS cable is terminated with a female DB-9 RS-232 connector; this is attached to the male DB-9 RS-232 connector, on the SIM, marked SVP. The probe is powered through the SIM's serial port 12VDC supply. The sound velocity can be input either via serial (with power provided) or on the Ethernet (external power required).

Setting up the SVP input is done through the Sonic Control software detailed in Section 5.4.

#### **4.1.6.3 Other supported sound velocity formats**

The SIM can also accept sound velocity in the below-listed formats. Velocity (V) is parsed out of the messages, and all other values are ignored.

|                                                                        |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| SeaBird: "TTT.TTTT,CC.CCCCC,SSSS.SSSS, VVVV.VVV (CR/LF)"               | (39 chars) |
| SeaBird + P: "TTT.TTTT,CC.CCCCC,PPPPP.PPP,SSSS.SSSS, VVVV.VVV (CR/LF)" | (49 chars) |
| SVP-C: "VVVVVDDDDTTTBBCCCC (CR/LF)"                                    | (21 chars) |
| SmartSV: " VVVV.VV (CR/LF)"                                            | (11 chars) |

The last format ("VVVV.VV) is also accepted with a flexible width.

There is no setup to accept these other formats, merely set the baud rate and the SIM will automatically parse the sound velocity.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5 OPERATION OF THE SONIC MBES VIA SONIC CONTROL

All Sonic MBES are controlled by the same Sonic Control software. The Sonic Control GUI does not require a dedicated computer and is usually installed on the user's data collection computer.

### 5.1 Installing Sonic Control Graphical User Interface

Sonic Control is supplied on a CD or as an attached file. There is no installation program, merely decompress the program to a folder in a root directory of the computer. Send the R2Sonic.exe to the desktop as a short cut (right click on R2Sonic.exe and choose Send to -> Desktop (create shortcut)). The computer must have the Windows .NET Framework installed. This can be downloaded, for free, from the Microsoft web site (dotnetfix35.exe). **NB. Do not install Sonic Control under Windows' Program Files or put all of the files, in a folder, on the Desktop.**



Figure 41: Sonic Control Icon on desktop

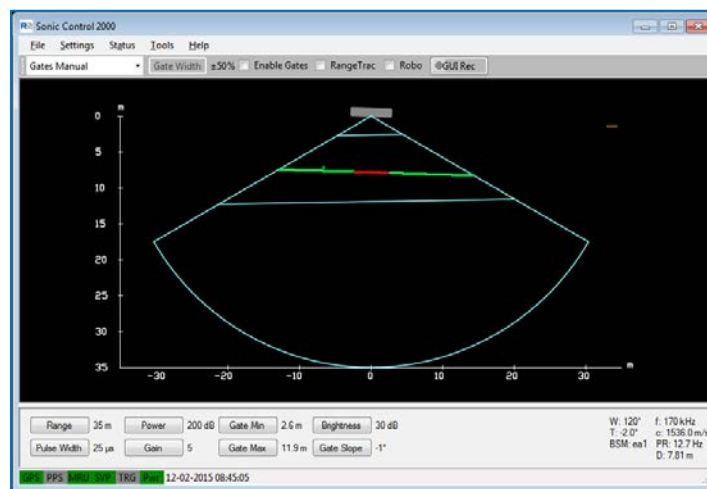


Figure 42: Sonic Control 2000

### 5.2 Hot Keys

- F2 – Brings up the Sonar Settings
- F3 – Brings up the Sonic 2026 FLS settings
- Alt+Z – Returns sector to 0 rotation
- Alt+X – Takes a snapshot of the GUI
- Alt+I – Display INS Monitor

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.3 Settings Menu

The Settings Menu provides access to the sonar setup and configuration. Each selection will be detailed. The order of the menu selections is not the order of setup. The initial sonar setup involves establishing communications between the sonar head, Sonic Control and the SIM.

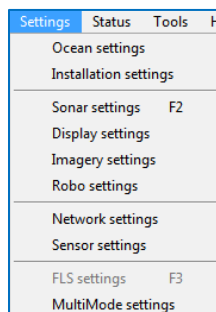


Figure 43: Settings Menu

## 5.4 Network Setup

All communication, between the Sonic MBES and the SIM and data collection computer, is via Ethernet. The first step in setting up the sonar system is to establish the correct Ethernet parameters, which include the IP (Internet Protocol), Subnet Mask and UDP (User Datagram Protocol) base port under Settings | Network settings.

### 5.4.1 Initial Computer setup for Communication

Before starting Sonic Control 2000 for the first time, the computer's network parameters must be set correctly to establish the first communication.

Open the computer's network connections. Identify the NIC (Network Interface Card) that is being used for the Sonic system and select Properties (usually by using the right mouse button context menu, highlight the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and select properties. Select '**Use the following IP address**' and enter:

**IP address: 10.0.1.102**

**Subnet mask: 255.0.0.0**

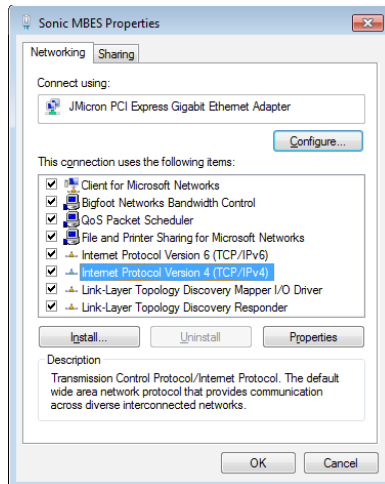


Figure 44: Windows Internet Adaptor Properties

Select Internet Protocol and then select Properties to enter the correct IP and Subnet mask.

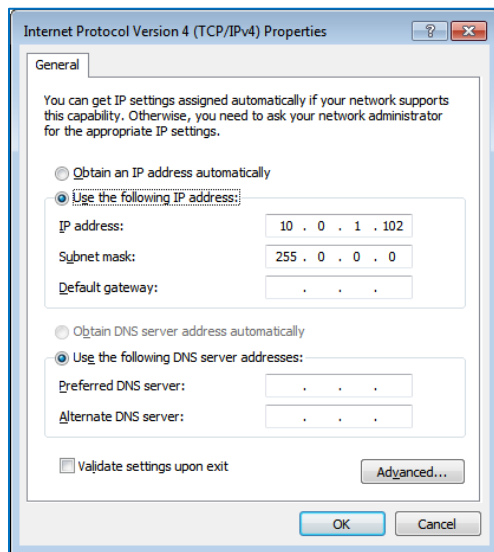


Figure 45: IP and Subnet mask setup

It is very important that the exact settings, as shown in adjacent image, are entered. This will allow initial communications to be established with the Sonic system; once communication is established, the IP address can be user configured.

## WARNING

**ALL COMPUTER  
FIREWALLS MUST BE  
DISABLED TO INSURE  
COMMUNICATION.**

### 5.4.2 Discover Function

The sonar head and the SIM have initial IP and UDP ports to establish communication (see below). **Communication will not be established until the serial number of sonar head and the SIM are entered in the settings for Sonar 1, in the Sonic Control 2000 Network settings.**

Use the Discover function to request the serial number information from all attached R2Sonic equipment. The Discover function will automatically transfer the serial numbers to the correct field.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

#### 5.4.2.1 Default Network Configuration

|               |            |                              |                         |
|---------------|------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Head IP:      | 10.0.0.86  | BasePort:                    | 65500                   |
| SIM:          | 10.0.0.99  | BasePort:                    | 65500                   |
| GUI:          | 10.0.1.102 | BasePort:                    | 65500                   |
| Bathy:        | 10.0.1.102 | BasePort:                    | 4000 (actual port 4000) |
| Snippets:     | 10.0.1.102 | BasePort:                    | 4000 (actual port 4006) |
| TruePix™:     | 10.0.1.102 | BasePort:                    | 4000 (actual port 4001) |
| Water Column: | 10.0.1.102 | BasePort:                    | 4000 (actual port 4005) |
| INS:          | 10.0.0.44  | No BasePort – Does not apply |                         |

Communication Settings

Network **Sensor**

Subnet Mask: 255.0.0.0 Gateway: 0.0.0.0

Sonar 1

|                  | IP         | BasePort | Serial Number |
|------------------|------------|----------|---------------|
| Head             | 10.0.0.86  | 65500    | 101012-2026L  |
| SIM              | 10.0.0.99  | 65500    | 100255        |
| GUI              | 10.0.1.102 | 65500    |               |
| Bathy            | 10.0.1.102 | 4000     |               |
| TruePix/Snippets | 10.0.1.102 | 4000     |               |
| Water Column     | 10.0.1.102 | 4000     |               |

Sonar 2

|                  | IP      | BasePort | Serial Number |
|------------------|---------|----------|---------------|
| Head             | 0.0.0.0 | 0        |               |
| SIM              | 0.0.0.0 | 0        |               |
| GUI              | 0.0.0.0 | 0        |               |
| Bathy            | 0.0.0.0 | 0        |               |
| TruePix/Snippets | 0.0.0.0 | 0        |               |
| Water Column     | 0.0.0.0 | 0        |               |

INS

IP: 10.0.0.44 Set IP wait

Current INS Settings

IP: 0.0.0.0 Subnet Mask: 0.0.0.0

Discover

| Description | Model # | Part #   | Serial #     |
|-------------|---------|----------|--------------|
| HEAD        | 2024    | 15000001 | 101012-2026L |
| SIM-INS     | 1008    | 15000010 | 100255       |

OK Cancel Apply

Figure 46: Sonic Control Network setup

Until the correct serial numbers are entered, there will be no communication. Once the correct serial numbers are entered, click **Apply** and dots will be visible in the wedge display signifying communication is established. Using Discover will guarantee that the serial numbers will be entered correctly and verify Ethernet communication between devices.

#### 5.4.2.2 INS Addressing

When using the I2NS system, the INS default IP is 10.0.0.44. Initially, the INS will not be ready to receive an IP address. The 'Set IP' becomes active when the INS is ready to accept an IP (after one to two minutes). When the time period, to set the IP address is over the button changes to 'Set IP Expired'.

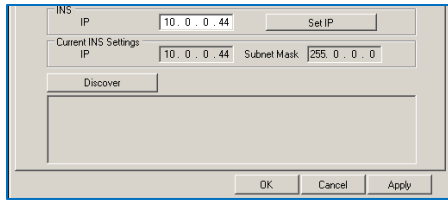


Figure 47: Set INS IP

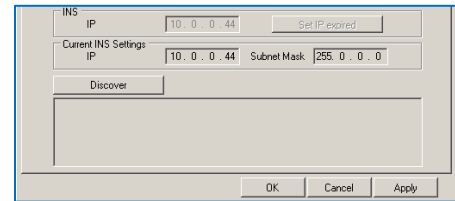


Figure 48: Set IP Time Expired

#### 5.4.2.1 Network Broadcast to more than one computer

It is possible to send the bathymetry, TruePix and Water Column data to more than one computer via a broadcast. The Subnet Mask will dictate the correct IP address to be used to broadcast. Using the default Subnet Mask of 255.0.0.0, the Bathy, TruePix and Water Column IP would be 10.255.255.255. If the user sets a Subnet Mask of 255.255.0.0, the output IP would be 10.0.255.255.

#### 5.4.3 Configuring Network Communication

- The network settings allow freedom in selecting IP numbers for various pieces of equipment.
- The most important settings to get right are the Subnet Mask (upper left corner of the Network settings dialogue) and the GUI IP number. If these numbers are wrong, the Sonic Control program will not be able to configure the sonar head and SIM. The GUI IP number and subnet mask, entered in the Network Settings dialogue, is the IP address and subnet mask assigned to the computer that is running the Sonic Control program.
- To verify computer network setup run **ipconfig/all** from the command line or command prompt.

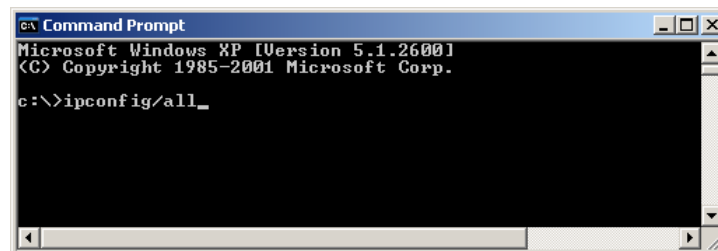


Figure 49: Command prompt-ipconfig/all

- The Sonic Control program is required to send networking configuration to the sonar head and SIM whenever the sonar head and/or SIM are powered up.
- If the GUI IP number and subnet mask are set correctly, the Discover button will list the R2Sonic devices attached to the network. If the GUI IP number and/or subnet mask is set wrong, Discover will not work and the sonar head and SIM will not configure.

- Settings for Sonar 1:

Head IP: Any unique IP number within the network subnet.

Head BasePort: Any number between 49152 and 65535. Preferred is 65500.

SIM IP: Any unique IP number within the network subnet.

SIM BasePort: Any number between 49152 and 65535. Preferred is 65500.

GUI IP: Same IP number of the computer running the Sonic Control software.

GUI BasePort: Any number between 49152 and 65535. Preferred is 65500.

Bathy IP: IP number of the computer running bathymetry data collection software.

Bathy BasePort: Base port number that the bathymetry data collection software requires.

TruePix™/Snippets IP: IP number of the computer running snippets data collection software.

TruePix™/Snippets BasePort: Base port number for Snippets, Snippets will be output on a port, which is the base port plus 6. With a base port of 4000, Snippets will be on port 4006; TruePix™ will be on port 4001

Water Column IP: IP address of the computer to receive water column data

Water Column BasePort: Base port number for Water Column data; Water Column data will be output on the base port plus 5. The default base port is 4000; Water Column data will be on UDP 4005.

- Settings for Sonar 2:

All entries must be zero. Serial numbers are left blank.

- Once networking is set up, Sonic Control will automatically connect upon power-up; there is no need to go back into the Network Settings

## 5.5 Sensor Setup (Serial and Ethernet Interfacing)

The Sonar system receives various data on the SIM serial ports or via the Ethernet. Select **Settings | Sensor** setting to setup the communications parameters.

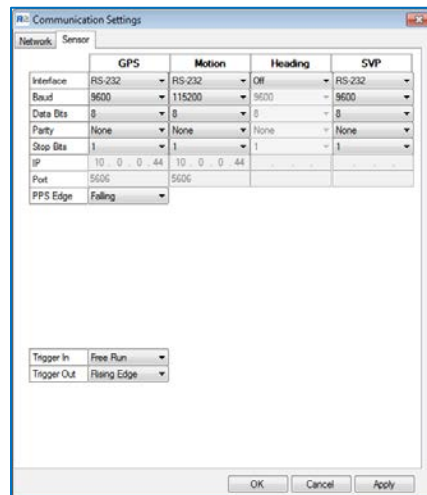


Figure 50: Sensor serial communication settings

### 5.5.1 Ethernet Interfacing

The system will accept the GPS time message, Motion and SVP over Ethernet as well as the normal serial connection. When setting up the Ethernet interfacing, the IP and Subnet Mask settings, for the auxiliary sensor, must agree with the sonar's Ethernet configuration. The data must also utilise UDP. The same UDP port can be used for all inputs, but separate UDP ports are suggested. Enter the sending sensor's IP.

In the dropdown for Interface, select Ethernet. When selected, the IP and Port fields will become active. Set an IP that agrees with the rules of the subnet mask (default subnet is 255.0.0.0) and the UDP port. The LED's, on the SIM, will turn green when data is received the same as with serial data.

Using the default sonar Ethernet configuration, with a Subnet mask of 255.0.0.0 and the sonar's IP set to 10.xxx.xxx.xxx, the auxiliary sensor's network configuration has to be set up with the same Subnet mask (255.0.0.0) and use similar IP addressing (10.xxx.xxx.xxx). The illustration, below, shows the IP address based on the default sonar network configuration.

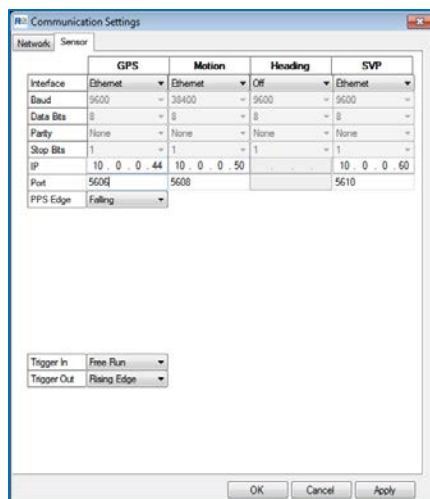


Figure 51: Sensor Ethernet communications settings

### 5.5.2 GPS

The GPS input is for the ZDA time message (\$GPZDA) or Trimble UTC message; other NMEA messages may be in the same string; it is not necessary to isolate the ZDA or UTC. In the GPS receiver's operation manual, there will be an entry that will detail which edge of the PPS pulse is used for synchronisation; this will be either synch on the rising edge or synch on the falling edge. Selecting the correct polarity is vital for correct timing.

The firmware supports the ZDA integer part (HHMMSS) and accepts PPS pulses if they pass a basic stability test: the last two pulses must be within 200ppm. If the PPS is unstable or absent, the SIM's internal trained clock runs with a high degree of accuracy.

The decoded time, from the bathymetry packet, is visible in the main display on the lower left along with the cursor position information. If the displayed time and date is 01/01/1970, it indicates that timing is not set up correctly.

### 5.5.3 Motion

The motion data is used for roll stabilisation. There are three accepted formats: TSS1, iXSea \$PHOCT or CDL's MiniPOS3. All formats are accepted on serial or Ethernet.

For serial input, the motion data should be at the highest possible baud rate, with the motion sensor configured for the highest output possible; at a minimum 100Hz update.

### 5.5.4 Heading

Not currently enabled.

### 5.5.5 SVP

This is used to set the communication for the sound velocity probe mounted on the sonar head.

### 5.5.6 Trigger in / Trigger out

Used to receive or send synchronisation TTL pulses. Output goes high when transmitter pings, goes low after the receiver has collected data.



Figure 52: Trigger In/Out Options

#### 5.5.6.1 Trigger In

- The SIM Synch In input requires a TTL signal (0 to +5V)
- The minimum high-level trigger point is +2.4V
- The trigger pulse width must be longer than 1µsec
- The sonar will ping 10.025msecs (±10µsecs) after receiving the trigger

#### 5.5.6.2 Trigger Out

- The output is 0 to +5V
- If Trigger Out is set to Rising Edge, the output pulse is high during the receive period. If the Trigger Out is set to Falling Edge, the output pulse is low during the receive period.

In the lower portion, of the GUI, the colour indicator will indicate when the Trigger In is active by turning from grey to green **TRG Pwr**. When the Trigger In mode is set to Manual, the colour indicator will change to yellow **TRG Pwr**. Manual mode allows the sonar to ping every time an external Ethernet command (PNGØ, 1) is sent to the sonar head or the GUI or, if in FLS mode, the Ping button is used.

## 5.6 Sonar Settings (Hotkey: F2)

The Sonic MBES have many features that provide the user with the versatility to tailor the system to any survey project; many of these features can be controlled either through the Operation Settings or with the mouse cursor.

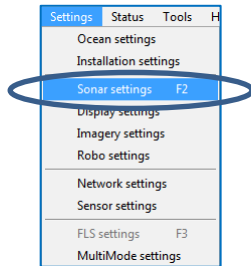


Figure 53: Settings Menu

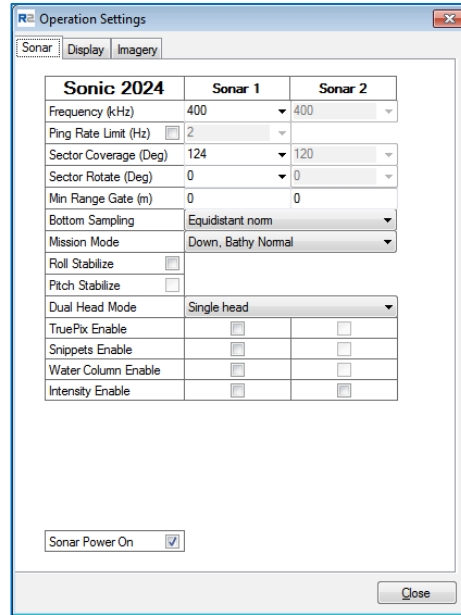


Figure 54: Sonar Operation Settings window

### 5.6.1 Frequency (kHz) 170 kHz – 450 kHz

The Sonic MBES operates on a user selectable frequency, from 170 kHz to 450 kHz (standard with Type 1006 projectors; the Type 1004 projector is limited to 200 kHz to 400 kHz), in 10 kHz steps. The operating frequency can be changed on the fly; there is no need to stop recording data, go offline, or load any firmware. The operating frequency is selected via the drop-down menu next to Frequency (kHz) or can be typed in (within the 170 kHz to 450 kHz restrictions).

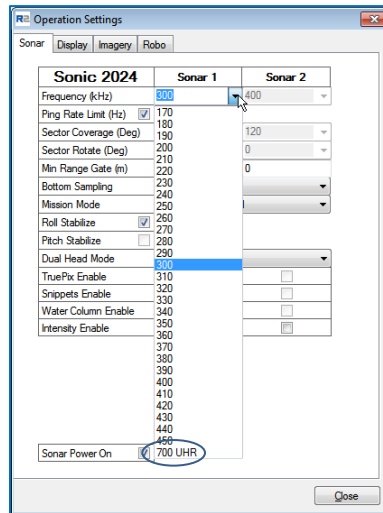


Figure 55: Operating Frequency Selection

#### 5.6.1.1 700 kHz UHR (Sonic 2024/2022)

The optional UHR upgrade enables the sonar to operate at 700 kHz for Ultra High Resolution. If this option is installed, there will be the added 700 kHz frequency, after 450, in the available frequency list (as seen above). If the upgrade is not installed there will be no listing of this frequency.

The UHR upgrade requires a Type 1006 projector, which covers the normal 170 – 450 kHz frequency range, but can also provide the necessary power to operate at 700 kHz. The projector is specially labelled with a blue indicator on the end of the projector.

When 700 kHz is selected, the swath sector will automatically be reduced to 70°. The UHR upgrade is intended for short range operation. In the UHR mode of operation, the across track beamwidth is 0.3° (0.6° for the Sonic 2022) and the along track beamwidth is 0.6°: true Ultra High Resolution sonar.

#### 5.6.1.2 UHR Operation Suggestions

When operating at the high 700 kHz frequency, it will be necessary to increase Power and Absorption significantly (Absorption set to 200dB/km). Along with this will be a possible increase in Pulse Length, Gain and Spreading Loss. As frequency increases so do the effect of attenuation and this is why, when in UHR mode, the sonar operating settings need to be increased to increase the total power going into the water and the higher gain needed to receive the attenuated signal. As stated the UHR mode is for short range operation.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 5.6.1.3 Sonic 2026 Low Frequency Option

The Sonic 2026 has a low frequency option, which enables the Sonic 2026 to operate at 90 – 100 kHz for deeper area surveys. The Sonic 2026 uses a completely new projector that is larger than the standard Sonic 2024/2022 projector. This projector has other features that are detailed in the appropriate sections. If the 2026 Extended Range option is installed, the Frequency drop-down will include the operational frequencies of 90 kHz and 100 kHz.

| Sonic 2026            | Sonar 1 |
|-----------------------|---------|
| Frequency (kHz)       | 400     |
| Ping Rate Limit (Hz)  | 90      |
| Sector Coverage (Deg) | 170     |

Figure 56: 90 – 100 kHz Low frequency option for Sonic 2026

### 5.6.2 Ping Rate Limit

The Sonic MBES can transmit at a rate up to 60 Hz (60 pings per second), this is called the Ping Rate. At times, it may be desirable to reduce the ping rate to reduce the data collection software file size or for other reasons. Highlight the box next to Ping Rate Limit and the ping rate limit drop down box will be activated; select a predefined ping rate or enter a manual rate.

Figure 57: Ping Rate Limit

### 5.6.3 Sector Coverage

The Sonic MBES allows the user to select the swath sector from 10° to 160°. All 256 beams are used, no matter what the selected sector coverage that is chosen. The smaller the sector, the higher the sounding density is within that sector. Changing the Sector Coverage can be done on the fly, with no need to stop recording data or to go offline.

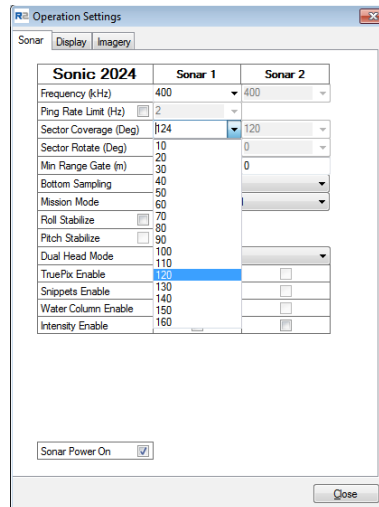


Figure 58: Sector coverage

The Sector Coverage can also be controlled via the mouse cursor, inside the wedge display.

#### 5.6.3.1 Symmetric sector sizing

Position the cursor on either of the straight sides of the wedge; the cursor will change to a double arrow, and the sector can be reduced or increased. When using the cursor to change the sector coverage, the change only takes place when the mouse button is released. The sector will be symmetrically set about nadir. The sector angle will be numerically visible in the lower left-hand corner of the wedge display while the mouse button is depressed.

#### 5.6.3.2 Asymmetric sector sizing

The Shift button can be used to move only one side of the wedge in and out. Position the cursor on either the right or left leg of the wedge. Hold down the keyboard Shift button and left mouse button (LMB) to only move that leg of the wedge. Asymmetrical sector sizing can only be done with the Shift and LMB; there is no menu selection for this type of sector sizing.

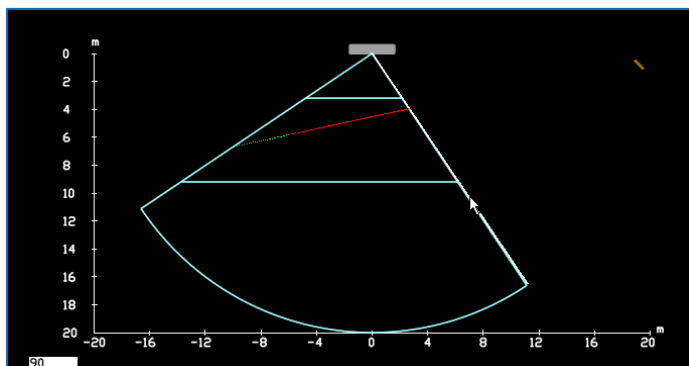


Figure 59: Asymmetric sector sizing

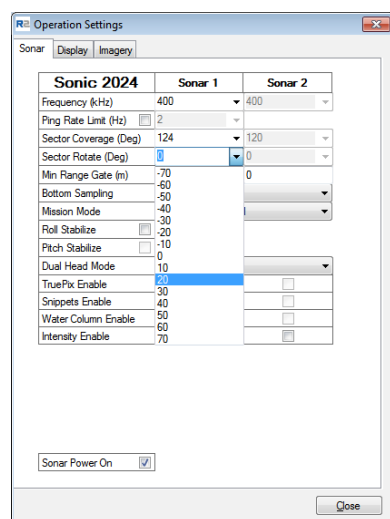
|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

#### 5.6.4 Sector Rotate

The Sonic MBES has the capability to direct the selected sector to either port or starboard, allowing the user to map vertical features, or areas of interest, with a high concentration of soundings resulting from the compressed sector.

First, change the sector coverage to the desired opening angle; this will concentrate the 256 beams within the sector, and then increase the Range setting.

Second, rotate the swath towards the feature to be mapped with high definition. This is done on the fly, with no need to stop data recording or to go offline. When rotating, make sure to keep the bottom detections within the confines of the range.



The sector can also be rotated using the mouse cursor, in the wedge display. Position the cursor on the curved bottom of the wedge; the cursor will change to a horizontal double arrow, the wedge can now be rotated to port or starboard. The angle of rotation is numerically visible in the lower left hand corner of the wedge display during rotation. A clockwise rotation is positive, an anti-clockwise rotation is negative.

The change only takes place when the mouse button is released. To return to a 0 rotation, use the Hotkey: Alt+Z.

Figure 60: Sector Rotate

#### 5.6.5 Minimum Range Gate (m)

This provides a means to block out noise or interference close to the sonar head. Enter the range, in metres, from the sonar head to establish the gate; anything within that range will be blocked. This gate is an arc, from the sonar head, with the entered distance. As a safety precaution: **This gate should not be used when working in very shallow water.**

#### 5.6.6 Bottom Sampling

There are two main options: Equiangular or Equidistant. The equiangular and equidistant modes are further enhanced by the Dual/Quad mode, described below. In the equidistant mode, all beams are equally distributed, within the sector. There are limits to what the equidistant can do, based on the opening angle and bottom topography; it is best on the flat seafloor and with an opening angle (Sector Coverage) **equal to, or less than, 130°**. When in the equidistant mode the conditions, such as excessive vessel roll, may cause the system to change from equidistant mode to equiangular mode; this is normal operation. The GUI will indicate that the system that is supposed to be in equidistant mode is now operating in equiangular mode by changing the BSM indicator to yellow.

A more technical way to look at this is the change over from equidistant to equiangular occurs when the outer beam grazing angle is 80° or greater. This is based on the below equation:

$$(\text{Swath Width} / 2) + \text{Head tilt} + \text{Sector rotate} = \text{grazing angle of outermost beam}$$

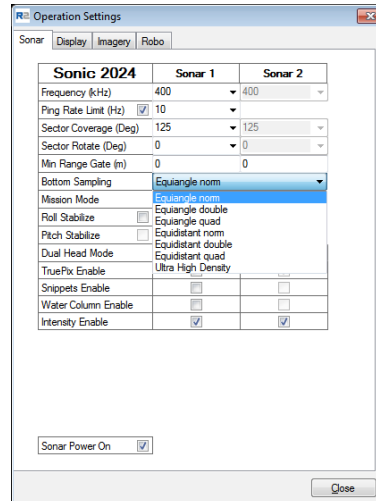


Figure 61: Bottom Sampling Modes

#### 5.6.6.1 Dual/Quad Mode

The Dual/Quad bottom sampling modes can be used with both equiangular and equidistant sampling. The modes work by spatially distributing the across-track bottom sampling, ping by ping. The beam is slightly repositioned, in the across-track direction, with each ping. This mode was developed for ROV/AUV survey operations.

The Dual/Quad mode will work at all speeds; **however, it is at slower speeds, that the Dual or Quad modes will be more evident.**

$$\text{Beam Repositioning Angle} = [\text{SectorCoverage} / (256-1)] / n$$

Where:

- n = 1 for Normal Mode
- n = 2 for Double (or Dual) Mode
- n = 4 for Quad Mode

The Dual/Quad mode requires 16-May-2013 head firmware and 17-Oct-2013 GUI or more recent. All firmware from Head\$16-may-2013-03-58-29 will have this feature available. All GUIs, from 17Oct2013 and newer, will support the Dual/Quad mode.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

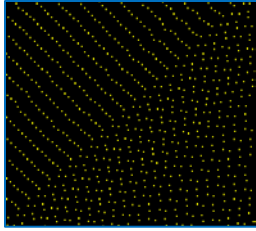


Figure 62: Example of going from normal to Quad mode

### 5.6.6.2 Current Mode Display

The current Bottom Sampling Mode is shown in the main GUI window, in the lower right, information area. If operating in equidistant mode and conditions, such as heavy roll, force the system into the equiangular mode, the BSM indicator will be highlighted in yellow to indicate that equidistant mode is temporarily suspended and the system is operating in equiangular mode. When conditions change, the operation will go back to equidistant mode automatically.

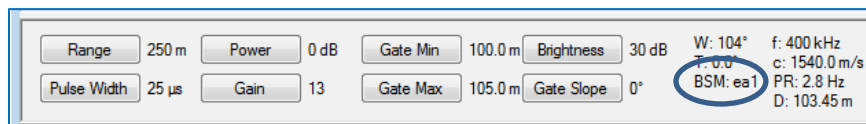


Figure 63: Indication of Bottom Sampling Mode

The BSM designations:

- ea1 = Equiangular normal
- ea2 = Equiangular dual
- ea4 = Equiangular quad
- ed1 = Equidistant normal
- ed2 = Equidistant dual
- ed4 = Equidistant quad

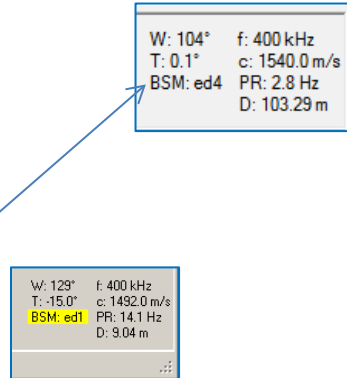
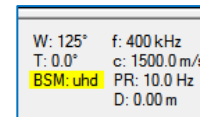


Figure 64: Highlighted indicator for equiangular operation when in equidistant mode

### 5.6.7 Ultra High Density (UHD™)

Introduced in 2017, the Ultra High Density mode is an entirely new technology developed by R2Sonic to provide the highest possible density of soundings in one ping: up to **1024 soundings per ping**. As opposed to producing pseudo beams by interpolating data to create the appearance of double the beams; R2Sonic searches across each beam footprint for additional soundings, using the extra-fine angular resolution that results from R2Sonic's advanced signal processing to precisely locate each point. This provides much higher density and detail based on the acoustical properties of the bottom return acoustic signal = up to 1024 real bottom soundings.



|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

When operating in UHD mode, the data collection software storage files can become large with the additional soundings, and it is recommended to use the data collection software file splitting routines.

UHD uses equidistant spacing by default.

The user should be careful when using the UHD to do vertical mapping; some vertical surfaces may not be represented as well as in normal mode.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.6.8 Mission Mode

The versatility, built into the Sonic 2026/2024/2022 systems, is further enhanced with the ability to adapt the system to the nature of the survey task: normal survey, surveying a vertical feature or the optional Forward Looking Sonar mode.

If the FLS option is not installed, the Mission Mode will only contain the Bathymetry functions.

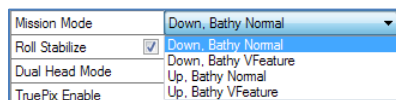


Figure 65: Normal Mission Mode selections

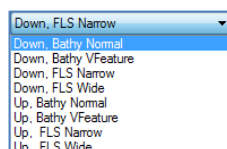


Figure 66: Mission Mode with the FLS Option installed

- **Down, Bathymetry Norm:** Normal bathymetry survey
- **Down, Bathymetry VFeature:** With the ability to map vertical surfaces, without physically rotating the sonar head, this Mission Mode provides improved detection methods tailored to mapping vertical features. This specialised mode greatly reduces the corner 'ringing' seen in older technology systems. When using Bathymetry VFeature, please use Equiangular bottom sampling and not Equidistant.
- **Down, FLS Narrow/Wide (Type 1004 Projector):** One Forward Looking Sonar mode. No bathymetry output; this setting is for imagery only.
- **Up, Bathymetry Norm; Up, Bathymetry VFeature:** is the same as the above, but orientates the wedge so it is pointing up (used primarily hull inspection type survey).
- **Up, FLS Narrow/Wide (Type 1004 Projector):** Most common setting when using the optional FLS feature
- **NB. Sonic 2026/2020 FLS mode has separate controls covered below**

The Mission Mode can be changed on the fly, with no need to stop recording data.

## 5.6.9 Imagery

### 5.6.9.1 Acoustic Image (Display only)

The wedge can display acoustic intensity. This will aid in setting the correct combination of operating parameters (such as power, pulse width and gain). Enabling the Acoustic Intensity will increase the network load.

Enable the wedge Acoustic Intensity under the Display options. The Brightness control, in the main window, is used to set the intensity in the display. A good brightness setting, to start with, is 30dB. Most users also prefer the 1 pixel bathymetry dot option (on the Display tab), when viewing the Acoustic Image, in the display.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

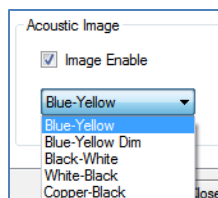


Figure 67: Enable Acoustic Image in the wedge display

### 5.6.9.2 Forward Looking Sonar (Sonic 2024/2022-Requires Type 1004 projector)

Forward looking mode can be in one of two configurations. FLS Wide uses the 20° projector within the Type 1004 projector. FLS Narrow uses the 1° standard projector. The wide mode, using the 20° projector, will have a lower source level, but is very good for near field use. The narrow mode allows for full source level to be used (221dB) but is more critical in aiming towards the target due to the 1° transmit pattern.

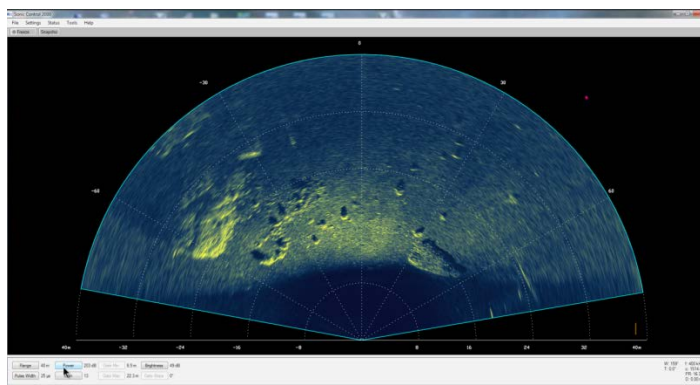


Figure 68: FLS Wide mode

#### 5.6.9.2.1 FLS Mode adjustments

In FLS mode, the Brightness button adjusts the image 'gain' up to 80dB. The colour palette is selected in the Display options, under Acoustic Image.

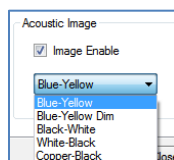


Figure 69: Imagery palette selection in Display Options

The FLS grid visibility is set in the Display | Grid settings. When in FLS mode, the range rings are turned on and off, by the Horizontal Grid Line selection. The angle markers (from nadir) are controlled by the Vertical Grid Line selection.

#### 5.6.9.2.2 Stealth Mode

The FLS can be operated in a stealth mode, where the only time the system transmits is when the user manually triggers the sonar using the Ping button. In Sensor Settings, the 'Trigger In' option has

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

to be put to Manual (the TRG indicator colour will change to Yellow); simultaneously, the Ping button will appear in the GUI. The only time an image will be updated, is when the user selects the Ping button.



Figure 70: Stealth mode single Ping button

### 5.6.9.3 Forward Looking Sonar (2026/2020)

The Sonic 2026 and Sonic 2020 both have steerable projectors (required for pitch stabilization), which also provides the sonars with greater flexibility when used in FLS mode. In FLS mode, the vertical beamwidth can be changed and the transmit beam can also be vertically steered. The degree of steering ability and width of the vertical beam is frequency dependent.

Because of these advanced features, with the Sonic 2026 and Sonic 2020 FLS mode, there is an additional FLS option in the Settings menu that allows the user to set the Vertical Beamwidth and the degree of Vertical Steering.

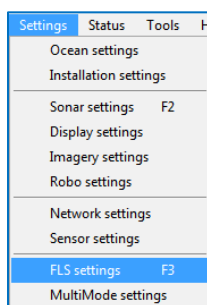


Figure 71: Settings menu FLS settings option

When FLS settings (or F3) is selected and one of the FLS options, in Mission Mode, is selected another window will be visible to select the beamwidth and steering angle.

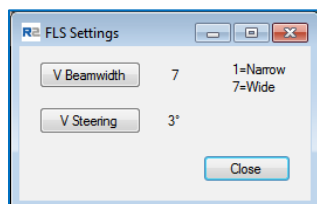


Figure 72: Sonic 2020/2026 FLS Options

The lower the frequency, the wider the vertical beamwidth and the greater the degree of vertical steering allowed. V Beamwidth and V Steering are used to alter the beamwidth and steering angle by using the left mouse button to decrease the value and the right mouse button to increase the value, up to the limits set by the operating frequency.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### Approximate Vertical Beamwidth in Degrees

|                                                                                                     |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
|                                                                                                     | <b>Setting</b> | <b>100 kHz</b> | <b>170 kHz</b> | <b>200 kHz</b> | <b>250 kHz</b> | <b>300 kHz</b> | <b>350 kHz</b> | <b>400 kHz</b> | <b>450 kHz</b> |
| Narrow<br><br>Wide | <b>1</b>       | 8.7            | 10             | 8.7            | 6.9            | 5.8            | 5              | 4.3            | 3.7            |
|                                                                                                     | <b>2</b>       | 12             | 13             | 11             | 8.7            | 7.2            | 6.2            | 5.4            | 4.7            |
|                                                                                                     | <b>3</b>       | 17             | 15             | 12             | 10             | 8.3            | 7.1            | 6.2            | 5.4            |
|                                                                                                     | <b>4</b>       | 22             | 17             | 15             | 12             | 9.7            | 8.3            | 7.3            | 6.8            |
|                                                                                                     | <b>5</b>       | 25             | 21             | 18             | 14             | 12             | 10             | 8.7            | 7.7            |
|                                                                                                     | <b>6</b>       | 29             | 26             | 22             | 18             | 15             | 13             | 11             | 9.5            |
|                                                                                                     | <b>7</b>       | 35             | 35             | 30             | 24             | 20             | 17             | 15             | 14             |
|                                                                                                     | <b>Default</b> | 29             | 26             | 22             | 18             | 15             | 13             | 11             | 9.5            |

Table 13: Sonic 2020/2026 FLS Vertical Beamwidth

As an example of the vertical steering: 400 kHz, the steering is  $\pm 10^\circ$ . At 200 kHz, the steering is  $\pm 20^\circ$ .

### 5.6.10 Roll Stabilize and Pitch Stabilize

When a motion sensor is interfaced to the SIM, the data can be stabilised for the roll motion of the vessel. With the advanced roll stabilisation, in the Sonic 2026/2024/2022, there is no need to stop recording or go offline to change between roll stabilised and non-stabilised mode, nor is there a need to go into the data collection software and identify the data as roll stabilised. The R2Sonic roll stabilisation has been developed based on recommended methods from various data collection software companies.

Roll stabilisation only works within the 160° maximum sector, any swath rotation or large sector size (opening angle) that attempts to go beyond the 160° limit will cause the system to stop roll stabilisation.

As stated in the SIM interfacing, it is recommended that the motion data be at the highest update rate possible.

Pitch Stabilize is only available in the Sonic 2026 (and Sonic 2020). Enabling Pitch Stabilize will steer the transmit pulse in such a way as to counteract the pitching of the vessel. This feature can be enabled at any time, but it is intended for deeper water survey applications. The operating frequency determines the range within which pitch stabilisation will be able to work.

The maximum steering angles for the 2020/2026, with pitch stabilization enabled, is given by the following equation:

$$\text{maxsteer} = (10 \text{ degrees}) * 400000 / \text{frequency in Hertz}$$

At 400kHz, the system can compensate for  $\pm 10^\circ$  of pitch. At 200kHz, it can compensate for  $\pm 20^\circ$  of pitch. At 700kHz, this will decrease to about  $\pm 5.7^\circ$  of pitch.

| Sonic 2024            | Sonar 1                               | Sonar 2                  |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Frequency (kHz)       | 200                                   | 400                      |
| Ping Rate Limit (Hz)  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 |                          |
| Sector Coverage (Deg) | 124                                   | 120                      |
| Sector Rotate (Deg)   | 0                                     | 0                        |
| Min Range Gate (m)    | 0                                     | 0                        |
| Bottom Sampling       | Equiangle quad                        |                          |
| Mission Mode          | Down, Bathy Normal                    |                          |
| Roll Stabilize        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |                          |
| Pitch Stabilize       | <input type="checkbox"/>              |                          |
| Dual Head Mode        | Single head                           |                          |
| TruePix Enable        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Snippets Enable       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Water Column Enable   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Intensity Enable      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Figure 73: Roll and Pitch Stabilize

### 5.6.11 Dual Head Mode (Also see [Appendix VII, Section 13.9](#))

The selections are Single Head, Simultaneous Ping or Alternating Ping. When the dual head mode is selected, a second wedge display will be available in Sonic Control 2000.

**When using dual heads, the sonar heads have to have exactly the same firmware installed.** Use the Status display to verify that both heads have the same firmware; if not, update the oldest firmware sonar head to match the most current firmware sonar head.

| Sonic 2024            | Sonar 1                               | Sonar 2                  |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Frequency (kHz)       | 400                                   | 400                      |
| Ping Rate Limit (Hz)  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 |                          |
| Sector Coverage (Deg) | 124                                   | 120                      |
| Sector Rotate (Deg)   | 0                                     | 0                        |
| Min Range Gate (m)    | 0                                     | 0                        |
| Bottom Sampling       | Equiangle quad                        |                          |
| Mission Mode          | Down, Bathy Normal                    |                          |
| Roll Stabilize        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |                          |
| Pitch Stabilize       | <input type="checkbox"/>              |                          |
| Dual Head Mode        | Single head                           |                          |
| TruePix Enable        | Single head                           |                          |
| Snippets Enable       | Simultaneous ping                     |                          |
| Water Column Enable   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Intensity Enable      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Figure 74: Dual Head Mode

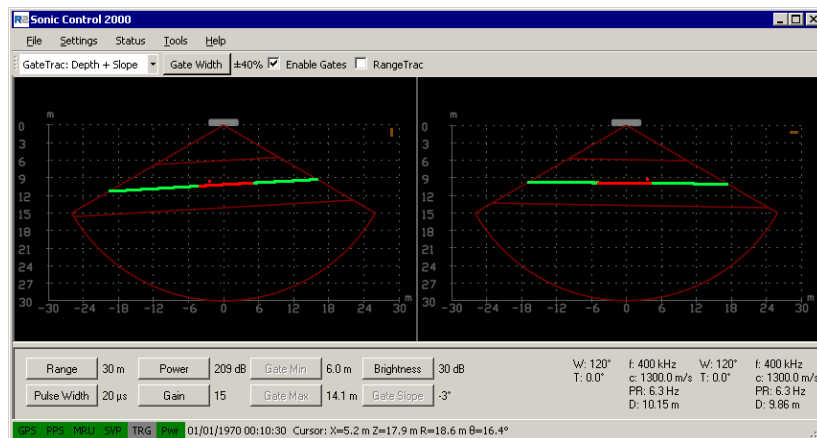


Figure 75: Dual Head Mode active

In dual head mode, certain controls: Range, Power, Pulse Length, and Gain set both sonar heads.

NB. For a dual head system, the Discover function will only list the systems. Discover does not auto-fill the serial numbers for a dual head system. Correct serial numbers must be entered manually for both systems.

#### 5.6.11.1 Dual Head default settings

There is a specific 'settings' file that can be loaded that will set all of the defaults for a dual head configuration. Under the File menu selection, select Load Settings.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

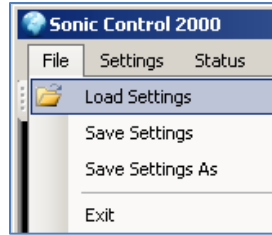


Figure 76: Load Settings menu selection

The available settings files will be shown. There are three Factory Default initialisation files; two for single head: standard systems and I2NS systems and two for dual head: dual head – dual SIM or dual head – single SIM.

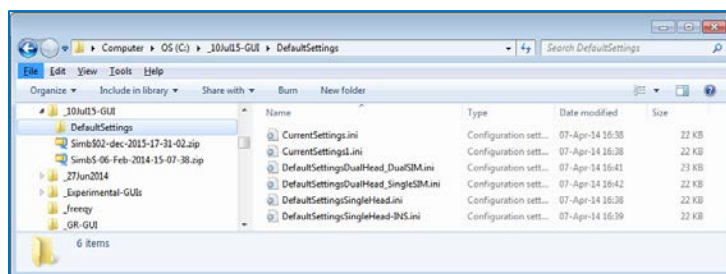
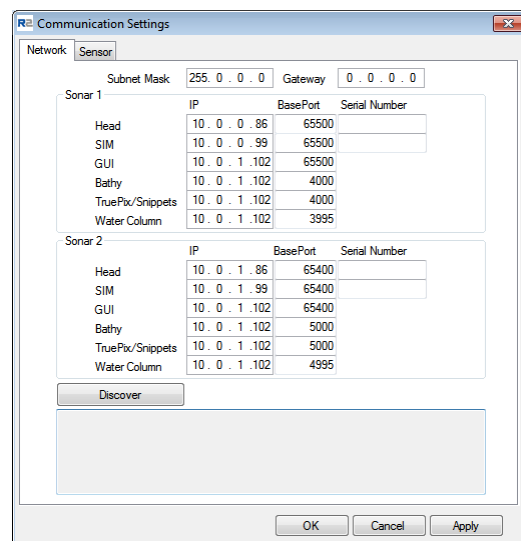


Figure 77: Loading an .ini file

When the file is loaded, Sonic Control will be configured for dual head mode; this includes the default network settings. If using only one SIM, the second SIM IP and BasePort must be set to zero.



| Sonar 2          | IP         | BasePort | Serial Number |
|------------------|------------|----------|---------------|
| Head             | 10.0.1.86  | 65400    |               |
| SIM              | 0.0.0.0    | 0        |               |
| GUI              | 10.0.1.102 | 65400    |               |
| Bathy            | 10.0.1.102 | 5000     |               |
| TruePix/Snippets | 10.0.1.102 | 5000     |               |
| Water Column     | 10.0.1.102 | 5000     |               |

When only one SIM is used for a dual head system, the Sonar 2 SIM IP and BasePort need to be set to 0. The Serial Number must be left blank. This is the DefaultSettingsDualHead\_SingleSIM.ini

Figure 78: Default dual head Network settings

### 5.6.12 TruePix™, Snippets, Water Column Enable and Intensity Enable

If the options TruePix™, Snippets or Water Column are installed (installed options are shown in Help | Options), those features can be turned on and off by ticking the box next to appropriate option enable. Intensity Enable will output the bottom detection intensity value in the bathymetry packet; this is a standard feature.

#### 5.6.12.1 TruePix™ Explained

TruePix™ is a new backscatter imagery process developed by R2Sonic to combine the advantages of the traditional side scan record and Snippets while eliminating their respective disadvantages.

Side scan records are:

- Formed independently from Bottom detection
- Compact
- Inclusive of water column data in the Nadir region
- Suitable for the pairing of highlights and targets

Snippets records:

- Suppress reverberation
- Report angle of the centre of snippets record for better colocation of backscatter and bathymetry

TruePix™ possesses all of the above advantages and more.

The TruePix™ operation processes all beams into a single continuous times series record for both the port and starboard regions. This continuous record contains intensity and angle values for every point in the record (approximately 10,000). The range corresponds to the sample number times the sample interval, (which is 1/sample rate) like a regular side scan; along with the angular information, the point's elevation and distance from nadir can be calculated.

On the Imagery tab, the user can select to store the Magnitude or the Magnitude + Angle data. The Magnitude + Angle data option will provide the geolocated information (preferred); storing Magnitude data provides only imagery.

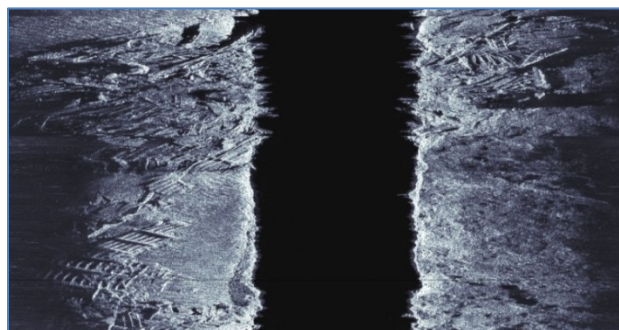


Figure 79: TruePix™ image of wreck debris and seagrass

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 5.6.13 Water Column Data Collection

Water column data takes a considerable amount of the uplink bandwidth. The network interface card (NIC) settings are very important to allow the computer to work with water column data collection. There are also Windows Registry settings that can be adjusted; please contact [r2support@r2sonic.com](mailto:r2support@r2sonic.com) for details on changing Registry settings.

The NIC has to be Gigabit. It is very important to increase the Receive Buffer size, for the NIC, so that the NIC can handle the flow of the data. Increase the value to the highest number possible. Depending on the NIC; there is more than one way to access the Receive Buffer setting on the Advanced Tab, under Configure.

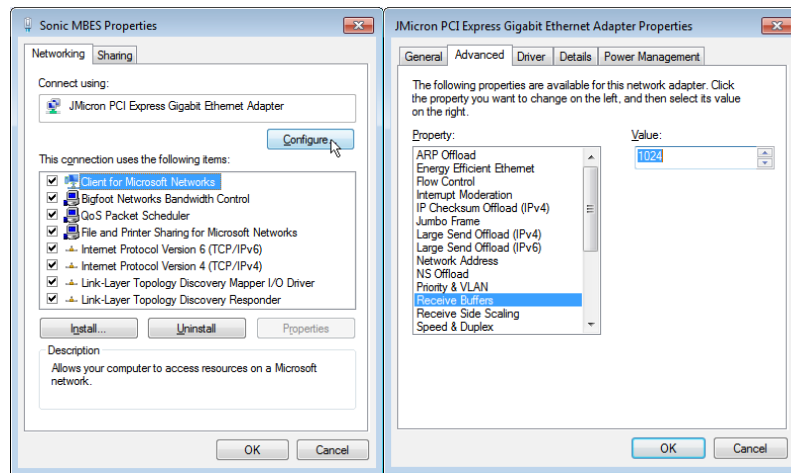


Figure 80: Network Card Properties

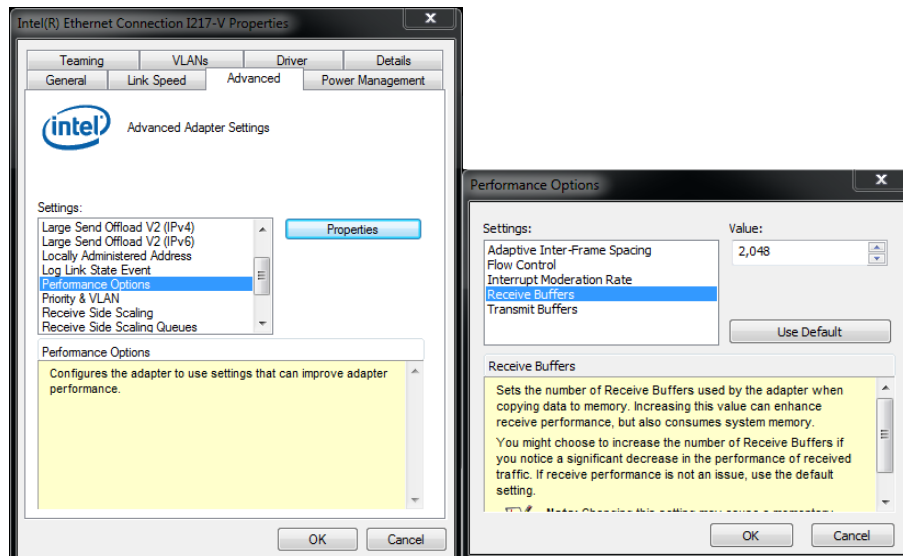


Figure 81: Intel NIC Properties

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.7 MultiMode

First introduced in 2016, the MultiSpectral mode provides a means to ping at different frequencies with each subsequent ping.

R2Sonic has greatly enhanced the ability to tune the sonar on a ping to ping basis beyond just the frequency. The MultiSpectral mode is now a selection in a more enhanced MultiMode function.

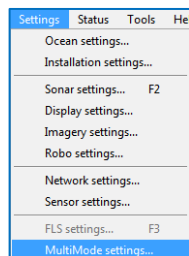


Figure 83: Settings | MultiMode

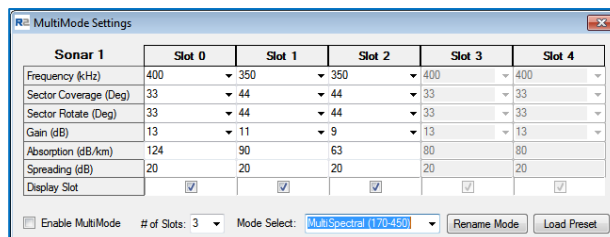


Figure 82: MultiMode Window

Where the MultiSpectral mode allowed the user to select a Frequency, Gain, Absorption and Spreading loss, MultiMode allows for also setting Sector Coverage and Sector Rotate.

From Mode Select, the user can select the MultiSpectral mode or a specialised UHR feature: Pipeline Mode.

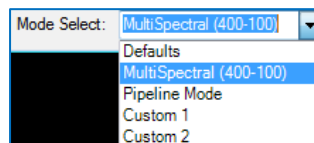


Figure 84: MultiMode Selections

### 5.7.1 MultiSpectral Mode™

R2Sonic developed the MultiSpectral Mode™ to meet the growing demands of those involved in extending the use and capabilities of multibeam backscatter. To a much lesser extent, this mode may provide benefits in some bathymetric surveys.

When enabled, this mode is used to sequentially shift the operating frequency on a ping-to-ping basis. Up to five different frequencies can be set to be shifted between. There are four preset, MultiSpectral modes; three of which are selectable under Presets, but the user can enter any values that they wish

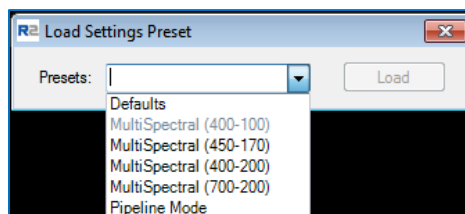


Figure 85: MultiMode Preset Settings

When loading a configuration, from the Presets, the user will be notified that the current settings are about to be overwritten.

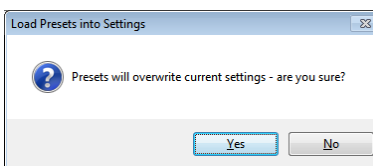


Figure 86: Preset warning

Under 'Mission Mode' there are preset options that can be used as a starting point or two Custom settings, which can be renamed by selecting the 'Rename Mode' option.

The number of frequencies, which are required, can be manually set by the '# (number) of Slots' drop-down menu. Each Slot can be set up manually by either entering the desired parameters or using the drop-down menu. An alternative is that if Sonic Control is currently using the desired configuration, the user merely clicks on the associated Slot column heading and those settings will be automatically transferred.

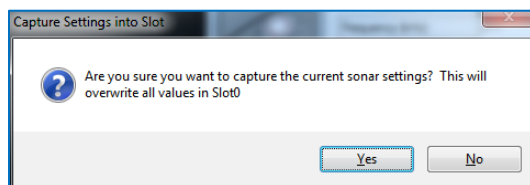


Figure 87: Capture settings prompt

When 'Enable MultiMode' is selected, by clicking on the associated box, the sonar will ping with Slot 0's configuration and, on the next ping, use Slot 1's configuration, then Slot 2's configuration and etc. When the last Slot is used, the sonar starts over at Slot 0's configuration.

**When MultiMode is enabled, the sector coverage and sector rotate will no longer be able to be adjusted via the computer mouse; the only way to change the sector coverage and the sector rotate is through the MultiMode settings.**

## 5.7.2 Pipeline Mode

Pipeline mode is designed for UHR capable systems. When enabled, the sonar will switch, ping by ping, between UHR mode and standard mode. This capability means that the pipeline or other linear feature is mapped with UHR and the full resolution of the surrounding natural bottom is mapped at the same time. This is opposed to systems that sacrifice beams to concentrate on a linear feature and sacrifice beams for the surrounding seafloor; pipeline mode provides full resolution of the feature as well as the seafloor on either side. Both the pipeline and the corridor receive full resolution coverage.

When enabled, the sonar will ping at 700kHz and then 400kHz (or other selectable frequency). The default sector size for UHR is 70°; the default for 400kHz is 125°. Pipeline mode can also benefit from using UHD bottom sampling. It is recommended that prior to entering pipeline mode, the

sonar is put to 700kHz and the power adjusted for that frequency. If this is not done, it could be the Power setting may be too low for 700kHz and the result will be noise instead of a good bottom return.

For a dual head installation, MultiMode will automatically go to a dual head configurable condition.

| MultiMode Settings                                                                                                 |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sonar 1                                                                                                            |                                     | Slot 0                              | Slot 1                              | Slot 2                              | Slot 3                              | Slot 4                              |
| Frequency (kHz)                                                                                                    | 400                                 | ▼ 700 UHR                           | ▼ 400                               | ▼ 400                               | ▼ 400                               | ▼ 400                               |
| Sector Coverage (Deg)                                                                                              | 120                                 | ▼ 70                                | ▼ 120                               | ▼ 120                               | ▼ 120                               | ▼ 120                               |
| Sector Rotate (Deg)                                                                                                | 0                                   | ▼ 0                                 | ▼ 0                                 | ▼ 0                                 | ▼ 0                                 | ▼ 0                                 |
| Gain (dB)                                                                                                          | 13                                  | ▼ 26                                | ▼ 13                                | ▼ 13                                | ▼ 13                                | ▼ 13                                |
| Absorption (dB/km)                                                                                                 | 111                                 | 200                                 | 111                                 | 111                                 | 111                                 | 111                                 |
| Spreading (dB)                                                                                                     | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  |
| Display Slot                                                                                                       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Sonar 2                                                                                                            |                                     | Slot 0                              | Slot 1                              | Slot 2                              | Slot 3                              | Slot 4                              |
| Frequency (kHz)                                                                                                    | 400                                 | ▼ 400                               | ▼ 350                               | ▼ 350                               | ▼ 350                               | ▼ 350                               |
| Sector Coverage (Deg)                                                                                              | 120                                 | ▼ 120                               | ▼ 120                               | ▼ 120                               | ▼ 120                               | ▼ 120                               |
| Sector Rotate (Deg)                                                                                                | 0                                   | ▼ -10                               | ▼ 0                                 | ▼ 0                                 | ▼ 0                                 | ▼ 0                                 |
| Gain (dB)                                                                                                          | 26                                  | ▼ 13                                | ▼ 13                                | ▼ 13                                | ▼ 13                                | ▼ 13                                |
| Absorption (dB/km)                                                                                                 | 200                                 | 111                                 | 99                                  | 99                                  | 99                                  | 99                                  |
| Spreading (dB)                                                                                                     | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  | 20                                  |
| Display Slot                                                                                                       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable MultiMode   # of Slots: 2   Mode Select: Pipeline Mode   Rename Mode   Load Preset |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |

Figure 88: Dual Head Multimode

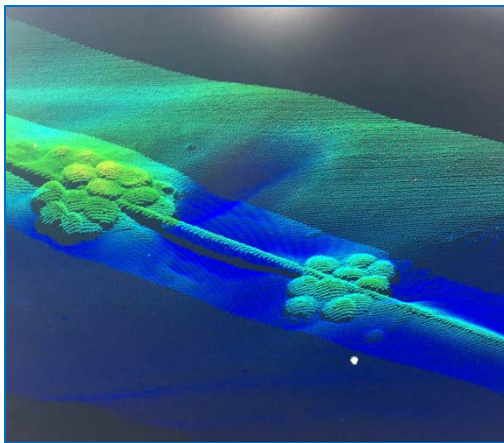
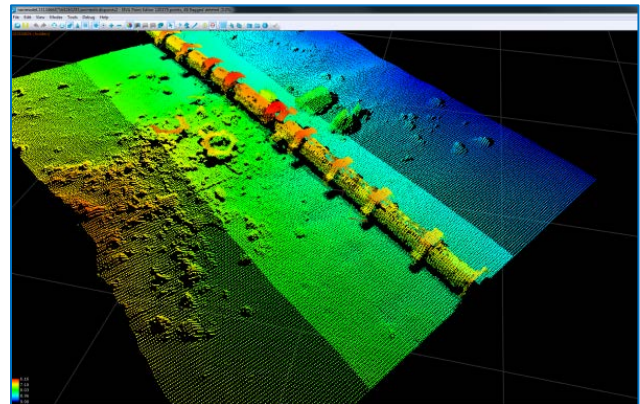


Figure 89: Pipeline Mode (courtesy of Swathe Services)

Figure 90: Pipeline Mode (image courtesy of DOF Subsea)



|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.8 Ocean Setting

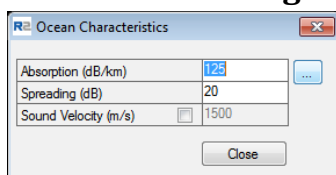


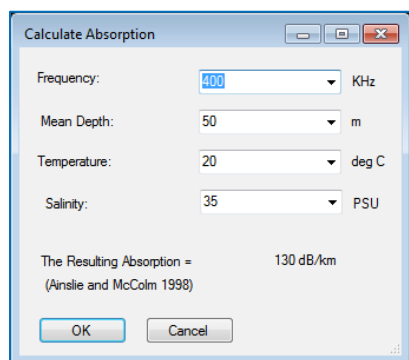
Figure 91: Ocean Characteristics

Ocean Characteristics include Absorption and Spreading loss, which are the main components of the Time Variable Gain (TVG) computation, and manual Sound Velocity (for receive beam steering).

### 5.8.1 Absorption: 0 – 200 dB/km

Absorption is influenced primarily by frequency and the chemical compounds of boric acid  $B(OH)_3$  and magnesium sulphate  $MgSO_4$  in the water column.

It is highly recommended that the local absorption value is entered. The button, next to the absorption input, will call up a calculator that will allow setting the correct parameters to derive the proper value to be entered.



Either manually enter the values for each variable or use the dropdown selection to choose a value.

Enter the resultant value into Absorption; it is not automatically updated from the calculator.

[Appendix VI](#) provides a table of absorption values based on operating frequency.

### 5.8.2 Spreading Loss: 0 – 60 dB

Spreading loss is the loss of intensity of a sound wave, due to the dispersion of the wavefront. It is a geometrical phenomenon and is independent of frequency. The sound wave propagates in a spherical manner, the area of the wavefront increases as the square of the distance from the source. Therefore, the sound intensity decreases with the square of the distance from the projector. Spreading loss is not dependent on frequency.

Spreading loss is not a setting that normally needs to be changed except when surveying in deeper depths. As spreading loss is not dependent on frequency, the setting is unaffected by a change in operating frequency. A general default value of 20 – 30 is normally sufficient for most survey conditions. The standard default is 20dB. The value should be increased when surveying into deeper depths (>100 metres).

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

**NB. In very shallow water (2m or less) it may be more advantageous to use Fixed Gain. To put the system into Fixed Gain enter zero (0) for both Spreading Loss and Absorption.**

For more detailed information on absorption and spreading loss, please refer to [Appendix VI Basic Acoustic Theory](#).

### 5.8.3 Time Variable Gain

Absorption and spreading loss are the main components of the Time Variable Gain (TVG) computation.

#### TVG Equation

$$\text{TVG} = 2 * R * \alpha / 1000 + \text{Sp} * \log(R) + G$$

- $\alpha$**  = Absorption Loss db/km
- R** = Range in metres
- Sp** = Spreading loss coefficient
- G** = Gain from Sonar Control setting

TVG is employed in underwater acoustics to compensate for the nature of the reflected acoustic energy. When an acoustic pulse is transmitted in a wide pattern, the first returns will generally be from the nadir region and very strong. As the receive window time lengthens, the weaker returns are received. Using a fixed gain would apply either too much gain for the early returns or insufficient gain for the later returns. The solution is to use TVG. The function of TVG is to increase gain continuously throughout the receive cycle. Therefore, smaller gain corresponds with the first returns (normally the strongest) and higher gain corresponds to the later returns (normally the weakest). This function is represented in, what is called, the TVG curve.

### 5.8.3.1 TVG Curve

The TVG curve can be either shallow or steep depending mostly on the Absorption value to define the shape of the curve. The Spreading Loss will determine the amplitude of the gain.

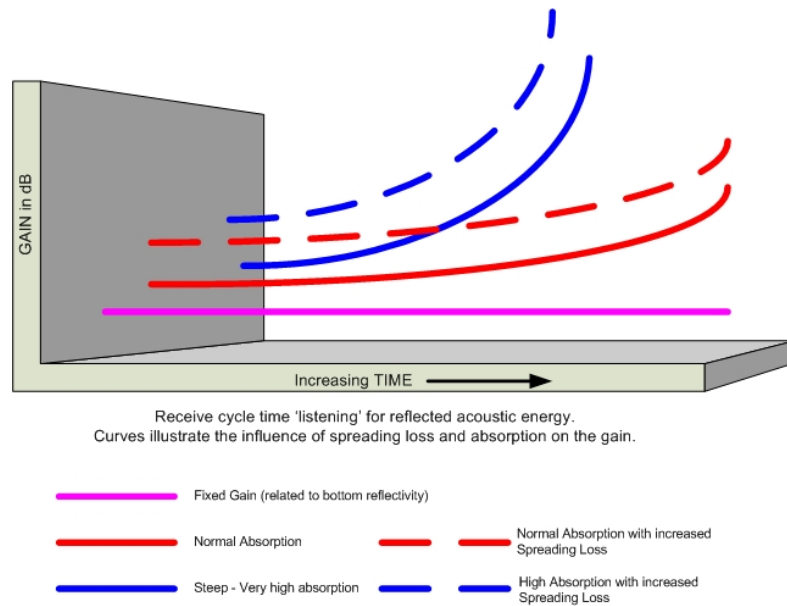


Figure 92: TVG Curve Concept

### 5.8.3.2 Sound Velocity

The speed of sound, at the receiver's face, is required to do the receive beam steering, which is required for all flat array sonars. The angular acoustic wavefront strikes each receive element, but at a different time and phase depending on the angle of the return. By introducing a variable delay to each receive element's information, the phases can be aligned, and the beam can be 'steered' in the direction of the return. In order to accurately apply the correct delay, three factors have to be known or measured: The physical distance between each receive element is known, the time of reception at each receive element is measured, the speed of sound at the receiver face must be known or measured (for this reason there is a sound velocity probe attached to the mounting frame).

In case of emergency (SV probe becomes fouled or is erratic) the beam steering can be accomplished, without a sound velocity probe, by entering in the correct sound velocity for the area around the sonar head. To manually enter a sound velocity, check the box in the Sound Velocity row, in the Ocean Settings, and enter a velocity. The SVP indicator, in the GUI, will change to Yellow.

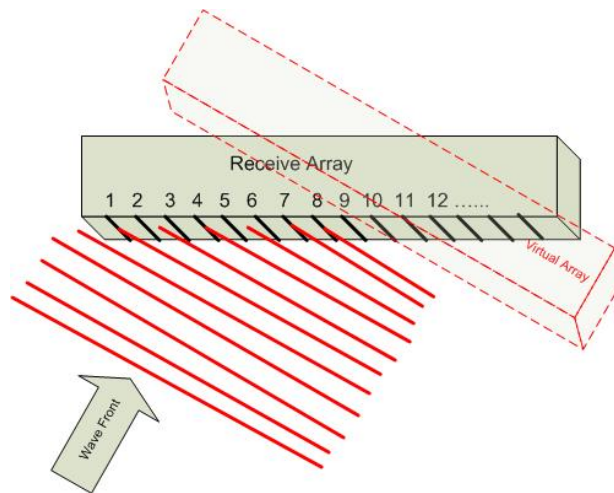
SVP TRG Pwr

## WARNING

**The wrong sound velocity, at the sonar head, will cause erroneous data. There are currently no known post-processing tools to correct for this.**

If the sound velocity is wrong, the beam steering will be in error. If the sound velocity is greater than what it really is at the face of the receiver, the ranges will be shorter, and thus the bottom will curve up or 'smile'. If the sound velocity is less than what it really is at the face of the receiver, the ranges will be longer, and the bottom will curve down or 'frown'. This error can be confused with a refraction error caused by the wrong water column sound velocity profile. The refraction error can be corrected by entering the correct water column sound velocity profile, however; erroneous beam steering cannot be corrected as it is part of the beam data.

Therefore, for accurate beam steering to take place, an accurate sound velocity must be provided to the Sonic MBES.



**Figure 93: The angular acoustic wavefront will strike each receive element at a different time**

As the wave progresses across the face, each receive element will see the wave at a slightly different time and thus a slightly different phase. The formed beam is steered in the direction of the acoustic wave by selectively adding delay to each receive element's data until the data is coherent and in phase. In the figure, above, receive element 1 would have the most delay applied, whereas receive element 8 would have no delay; thus a 'virtual array' will be formed.

## 5.9 Installation Settings

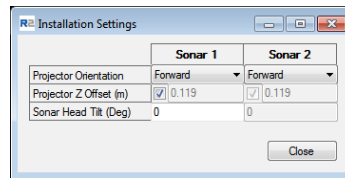


Figure 94: Installation Settings

### 5.9.1 Projector Orientation

The preferred orientation is with the projector facing forward. This configuration has been tested at speeds up to 12 knots, with excellent results (hull and moon pool mounting). However, if the installation requires the projector to face aft, this setting is used to renumber the beams to reflect the aft orientation.

### 5.9.2 Projector Z Offset (m)

Sonic Control automatically senses which sonar is attached and will set the correct Projector Z offset. If an alternative Projector Z offset is required (such as a system that is installed on an ROV), the checkbox needs to be deselected in order to enter a new value for the Projector Z offset.

Using the standard R2Sonic mounting frame, the projector is mounted at a precise distance, relative to the receive array, with a Z offset of 0.119m for the Sonic 2024 and 2022 and 0.045m for the Sonic 2026 being the default. If the projector is not mounted in the same vertical relationship to the receive array, an offset can be entered here to compensate for that vertical offset. If the box is checked, Sonic Control will automatically choose the correct Projector Z offset for the system. If a non-standard offset is used, deselect the box to type in the correct Projector Z offset.

**The default Z offset value is 0.119m (0.045m for the Sonic 2026);** this is the physical distance (vertical) between the receive array ceramic face and the acoustic centre of the projector array), as used with the standard R2Sonic mounting frame (with 35mm projector standoffs for the Sonic 2024/2022). **Do not change** this value unless the projector is mounted with a different vertical offset relative to the receive array. Please contact R2Sonic for further guidance on mounting the projector with a different vertical offset.

### 5.9.3 Head Tilt

If the sonar head is physically tilted to port or starboard, the tilt angle is entered here to rotate the wedge and depth gates. The head tilt limits are  $\pm 45^\circ$ . If the head needs to be tilted more than  $45^\circ$ , please contact [R2Support@R2Sonic.com](mailto:R2Support@R2Sonic.com) for instructions.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.10 Status

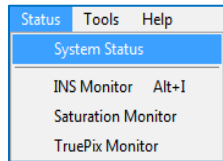
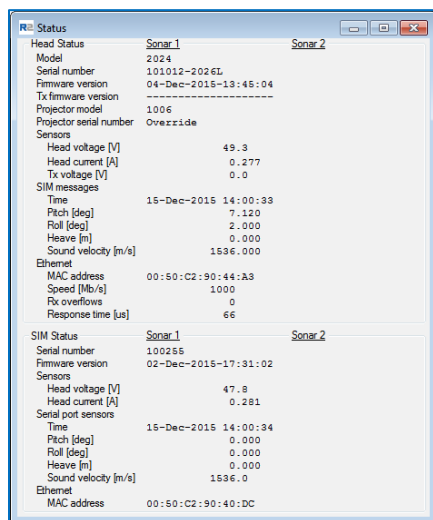


Figure 95: Status Options

The INS monitor is covered in [Appendix I](#)

### 5.10.1 System Status

The Status report provides a detailed list of the current system parameters in both the sonar head and the SIM, including the current version of installed firmware and serial input messages.



It is quite normal that the SIM messages, in the Head Status, differ slightly from the Serial port sensor data (in the SIM Status). The Head Status reflects what is received at the head, from the SIM.

Figure 96: Status Message

The upper area reflects the sonar head status; the lower area reflects the SIM status. In the SIM Status area, the real-time serial input data is shown. In the Head Status area, the received SIM message, which contains the serial received serial data, is shown. The Head Status Response time ( $\mu$ s) reflects the time required for a message (such as a time request) to go from the head to the SIM and return. The Response time can be very useful in ROV installations to determine any latency issues with the communication between the ROV and the SIM.

## 5.10.2 Saturation Monitor

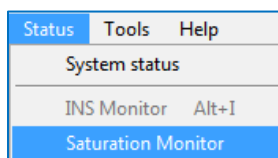


Figure 97: Status | Saturation Monitor

The Saturation Monitor provides the user with the means of monitoring the sonar's receiver signal level. The Saturation Monitor was developed by R2Sonic based on the work and input of Dr Jonathan Beaudoin (then with Centre for Coastal Mapping, University of New Hampshire).

The Saturation Monitor enables the user to set sonar parameters to collect meaningful backscatter; maintaining signal levels that keep the receivers within their linear region of response. The Saturation Monitor allows the user to maintain consistent intensity levels. When the Saturation Monitor is enabled, the Intensity Enable (Sonar Settings) will be automatically enabled.

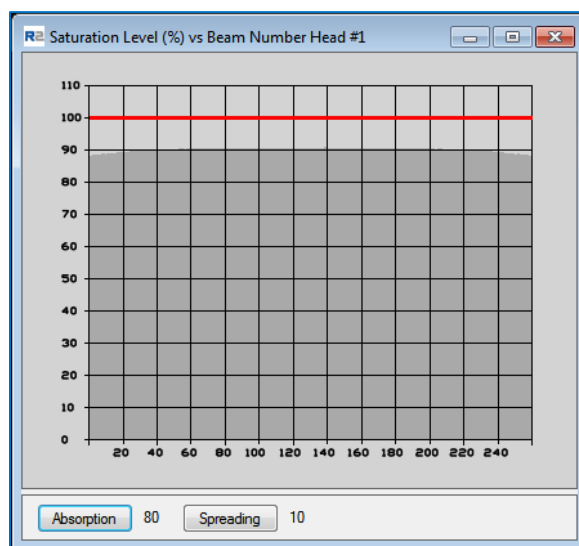


Figure 98: Saturation Monitor

The factors that control intensity are:

- Power
- Pulse Width
- Gain
- TVG Parameters
  - Spreading Loss
  - Absorption

When the Saturation Monitor is opened, the user can adjust the above parameters to maintain signal levels below the red 100% saturation line. The TVG parameters can be changed, directly in the monitor window, without having to go to the Settings | Ocean menu.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 5.10.3 TruePix™ Monitor

The TruePix monitor has been added to Sonic Control to provide users with a means to visualise the real-time imagery. It is important to note that with the addition of the TruePix monitor the manner in which TruePix are transmitted, from the head, has changed. TruePix data will only flow to the data collection software when Sonic Control is open. If Sonic Control is closed, the bathymetry (as well as Snippet and water column) data will still flow to the data collection software, but the TruePix data will not.

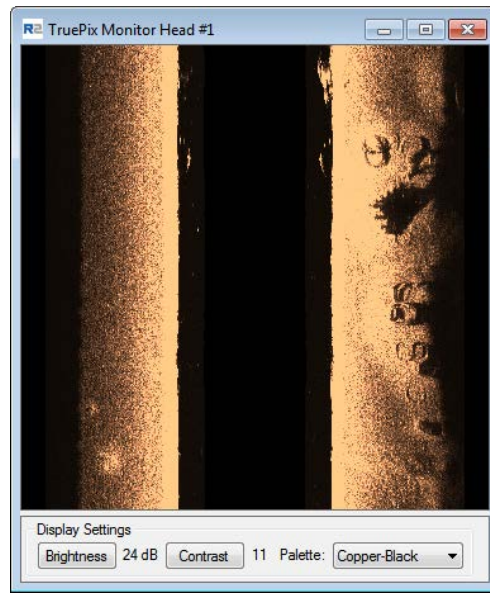


Figure 99: TruePix Monitor

There are multiple palettes available and can be changed and, when change, will take immediate effect on the displayed data. The Brightness and Contrast can be toggle up and down using the mouse buttons after first clicking on either Brightness or Contrast.

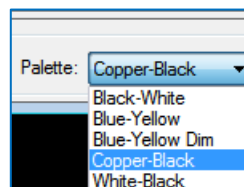


Figure 100: TruePix monitor palette

## 5.11 Tools

### 5.11.1 Engineering

This area is for engineering commands to be sent to either the head or SIM for either troubleshooting or system analysis. This area should not be used except by the direction of R2Sonic engineers.

### 5.11.2 Firmware Update



When R2Sonic issues a firmware update, it will be made available to the customer, allowing the customer to update their system by themselves. There are two firmware updates possible: SIM update and/or sonar head update. The update file will be designated either Simb\$ (SIM) or Head\$ (sonar head); the extension will be \*.bin. There is also an option to update the transmitter firmware; this is not the same as the sonar head firmware.

Before updating the firmware, make sure that none of the computer's other Ethernet ports are in use; it may be necessary to shut down other sensors that use the Ethernet for data transfer. Connect the SIM directly to the computer's network interface card.

Place the update file in the Sonic Control directory, on the computer hard drive. Go to Tools | Firmware Update; the files will be shown, if not use the browse button to search for the correct upgrade file to download to either the SIM or the sonar head. If there is an upgrade for both the sonar head and the SIM, it is recommended to upgrade the SIM first. Updates are not fully installed until the system has been power cycled.

In Dual Head systems, the firmware update can only be applied to Sonar 1. To update Sonar 2, it must be temporarily connected as Sonar 1.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

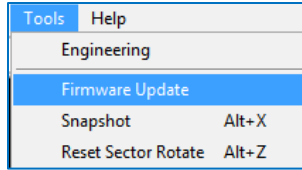


Figure 101: Select Tools; Firmware Update

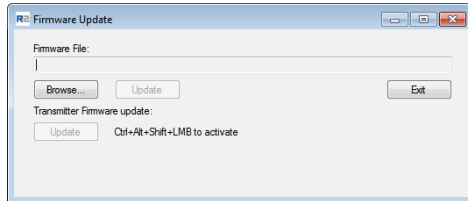


Figure 102: The Browse button will open the current GUI's directory

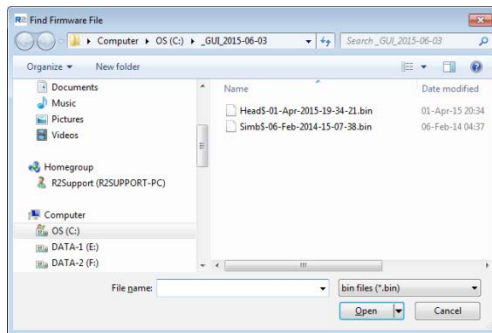


Figure 103: Select correct update .bin file

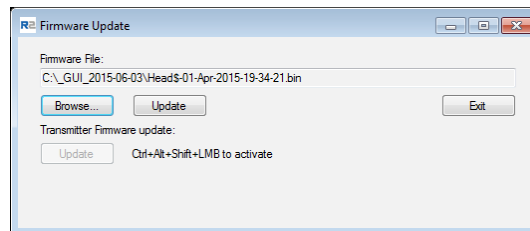


Figure 104: A batch file will automatically load the upgrade file

Once the Update button is clicked on, a batch file will automatically run and download the .bin to the appropriate location.

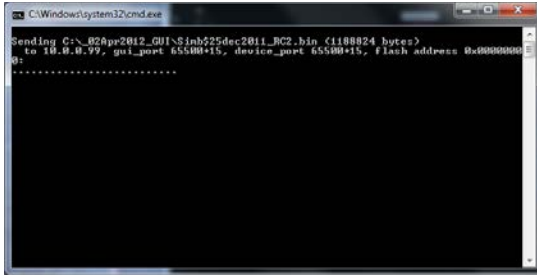


Figure 105: The start of a firmware update. A series of dots represents the update progress.

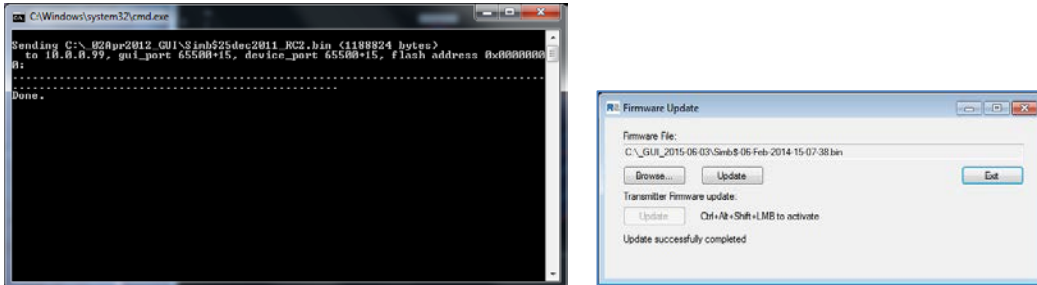


Figure 106: Firmware update completed.

#### 5.11.2.1 Firewall and Virus Checker Issues

A major problem can arise from having a firewall turned on (either Windows or third party) and virus checkers. Having a firewall on will cause a window to pop up, from the firewall, during the upgrade procedure requesting permission to run the upgrade; selecting yes (to allow) it proceeds. In the CMD window, a series of 'r' will appear to show the update procedure is trying to perform the update but is being prevented from doing so. Once the firewall has been turned off or trained, the 'r' will change to the normal update dots.

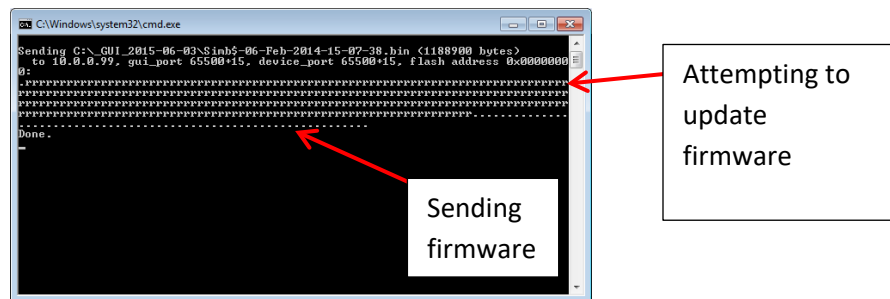
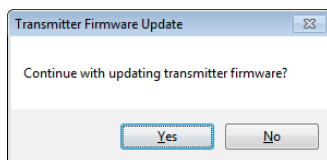


Figure 107: Indication of attempts to update the firmware

#### 5.11.2.2 Transmitter Firmware Update

When the transmitter firmware is to be updated, it is a special update. Being a special update, more steps have to be taken, which is why a series of keys and mouse clicks have to be used to activate the update. The transmitter firmware is embedded with the normal sonar head firmware. If the transmitter firmware is to be updated, click the transmitter firmware update button (with

associated keystrokes and LMB). The head will stop uplinking data (spinner stops) while the transmit firmware is being loaded. When the firmware is updated, the sonar will start pinging normally.



### 5.11.3 Snapshot and Reset Sector Rotate

Both of these features can be activated using hotkeys. Snapshot will capture a single image of the GUI. Unless a folder is selected, on the Imagery Tab, the captured image will be stored within the GUI files. The Snapshot also requires that ffmpeg is installed. A snapshot can be taken by using Alt X. With the ability to orientate the swath to port or starboard, an easy way to return the swath to zero rotation is by using Alt Z.

## 5.12 Help

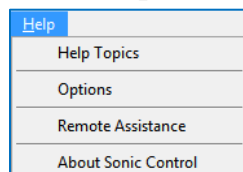


Figure 108: The Help Menu

### 5.12.1 Help Topics

Selecting Help Topics will bring up an electronic copy of the Operation Manual. This is the same as the paper version of the Operation Manual.

### 5.12.2 Options

The Options display shows the upgrades that have been installed in the system. The installed options are enabled or disabled, as required, in the Sonar Settings (except for the 3000m depth rating upgrade); this display merely shows what is available for the system. Enabling an installed option's output is done in Sonar Settings.

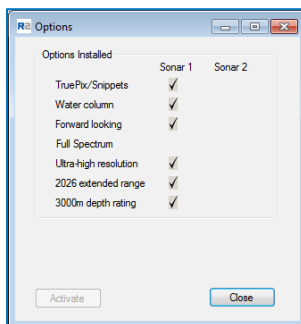


Figure 109: Installed Options

### 5.12.3 Remote Assistance

R2Sonic support can assist in setting up the system or troubleshooting the system, remotely, by taking control of the customer's computer. An internet connection is required.

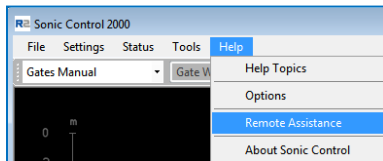


Figure 110: Remote Assistance

When Remote Assistance is selected, a separate program will be launched that will allow R2Sonic Support to control the computer on which Sonic Control is installed remotely. The Remote Assistance window will contain an ID and Password. Contact R2 Support (+1.805.259.8142) and provide the ID number and Password (SMS is preferred), this will allow support to connect to the computer and take control of it to assist in setup up or troubleshooting. It is preferred that before starting the Remote Assistance program that R2Sonic Support is notified via email:

[R2Support@r2sonic.com](mailto:R2Support@r2sonic.com) or called (SMS is fine), at the above number, to alert them that a Remote Assistance session is requested. Please use UTC or GMT time.

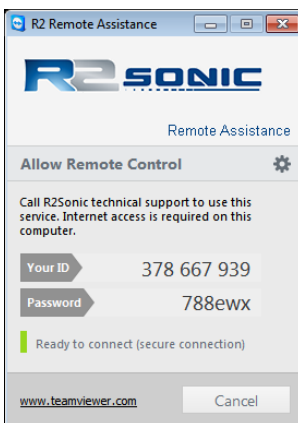


Figure 111: Remote Assistance window

Remote Assistance uses TeamViewer™ software licensed to R2Sonic. When contacting R2Sonic, requesting Remote Assistance, a mutually agreed upon time will be established for the session. When it is time for the session, run Remote Assistance. In the Remote Assistance window, there will be the unique ID, which identifies the computer and the password, which allows R2Sonic Support to take remote control of the computer. This information has to be sent to the R2Sonic personnel that will be assisting.

### 5.12.4 About Sonic Control

The About Sonic Control shows the version of Sonic Control that is being used. This can be of importance if a GUI is used that does not match the features of the sonar firmware or the sonar firmware does not match the features of the GUI.

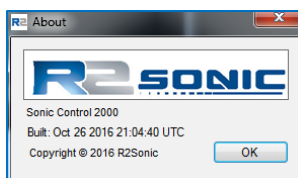


Figure 112: About, provides the GUI version

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.13 Display settings

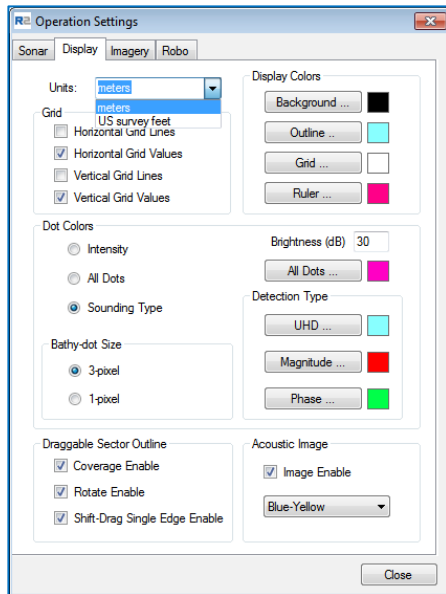


Figure 113: Display Settings

The user can customise the measurement units and colour scheme of Sonic Control's main window.

The Units dropdown allows for either metres or US Survey Feet. Whichever is selected will determine the labelling of the axes, the sound velocity and the nadir depth. NB. this is only for display purposes; the output remains in metric.

Dot Colors provides a means to view instantaneous information by colouring the bottom detections dots for the detection algorithm being employed when Sounding Type is selected.

Selecting Intensity provides a grey scale representation of the return data's acoustic strength. This Dot Color mode can be very helpful in balancing the power, gain and pulse length for optimal operation of the system. The Brightness (dB) sets a base reference for the depiction of the acoustic return

strength.

Bathy-dot Size selection is either normal (1-pixel) or large (3-pixel); default is large. Using the 1-pixel size is recommended when viewing the Acoustic Imagery, in the wedge display.

Under Draggable Sector Outline, the user can enable or disable the feature to use the mouse cursor to change the opening angle and swath rotation.

Acoustic Image the Image Enable box turns the wedge's acoustic imagery on and off. The drop down, under Image Enable, allows the user to select the colour palette for wedge's acoustic imagery

### 5.13.1 US Survey Feet Unit (Display Only)

The default display units are metric. Selecting US Survey Feet will change the display to that measurement system. This is only for display purposes. There will be a prompt to alert the user when the units are changed.

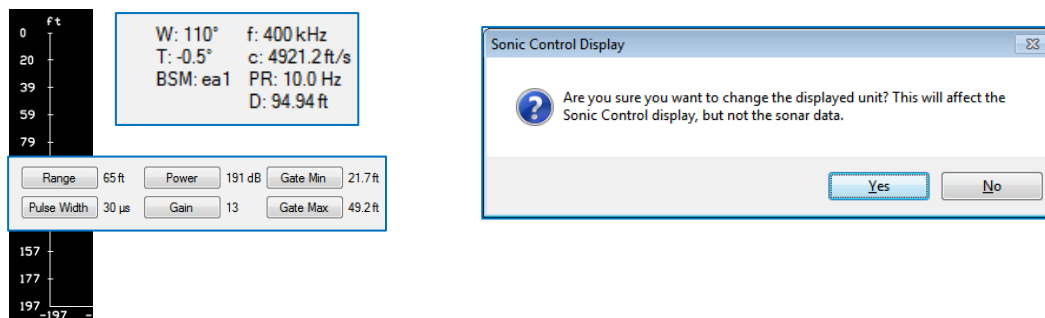


Figure 114: US Survey Feet display

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

## 5.14 Imagery

On the Imagery Tab, the user can select the imagery data (TruePix™ and Water Column) formats for logging. The maximum data size is shown to provide the user with an idea of what to expect when storing imagery data. The user can also select to apply the bathy gate settings to the TruePix™ data.

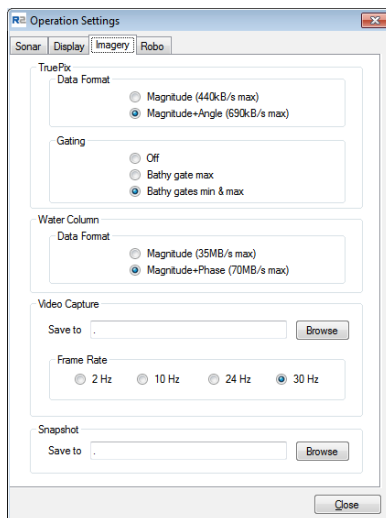


Figure 115: Imagery Settings

### 5.14.1 TruePix™ and Water Column

The size of the TruePix™ and Water Column formats are given; the user can select either of the formats (this would depend on the users' end product). For TruePix™, if geolocated data is required, the Magnitude+Angle format must be used.

Data rates for Water Column and TruePix are also affected by pulse width. Longer pulse widths will reduce data rate approximately:

15-30us: 1/1 data rate  
 35-65us: 1/2 data rate  
 70-135us: 1/4 data rate  
 >= 140us: 1/8 data rate

### 5.14.2 Video Capture

The GUI Record button, in the main window, will capture the entire GUI image in a video file. The format is \*.mkv; further details are in [Section 5.16](#). Select a folder location to store videos; if no folder is selected, the video file will be stored within the GUI files.

To maintain a useable video file size, select the appropriate frame rate for the video.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.15 ROBO Automatic Sonar Operation

The sonar can be set up to automatically change Power, Pulse Width and Gain based on the Range setting and the percentage of receiver saturation. This feature is designed for ease of use, but the user must be aware that environmental factors play a very large part as to how successful the Robo settings control the sonar. Robo operation does not negate the need for a user to pay attention to the sonar. As with all automatic features, Robo operation is designed for a non-challenging environment.

Robo operation, Range Trac and Gate Trac can be used together for almost hands-free operation of the sonar (within environmental limits).

Robo operation relies on a look-up table, which can be easily modified by the user. Enabling Robo operation is initiated by selecting Robo in the control line.

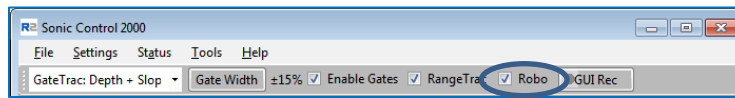


Figure 116: Enabling Robo Operation

When Robo mode is enabled, Power, Pulse Width and Gain will be greyed out. The Saturation value will be added, on the left side, to show the value being used for the automatic change of gain.

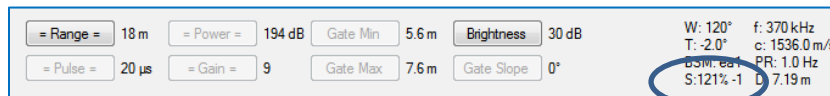


Figure 117: Operational settings with Robo active

## 5.15.1 Robo Settings

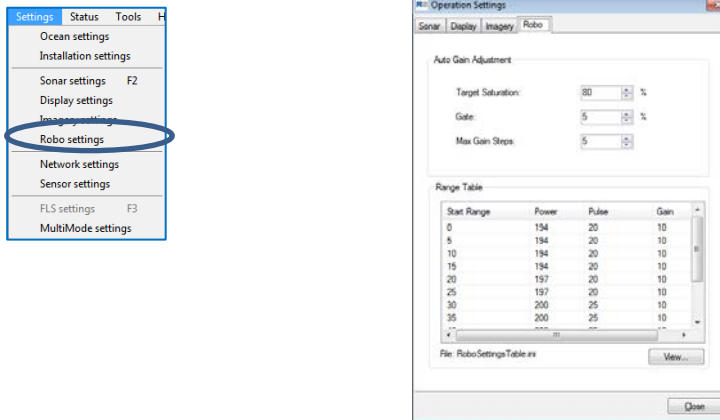


Figure 118: Robo Settings

### 5.15.1.1 Auto Gain Adjustment

The Robo feature uses the Range setting and the percentage of receiver saturation to determine when to change the Power, Pulse Width and Gain.

The Range setting will determine the Power and Pulse Width. Receiver saturation percentage will set the Gain. The Saturation Monitor is covered in [Section 5.10.4](#)

Target Saturation is the level of receiver saturation to be maintained. The Gate is the limit, about the Target Saturation, before a change is made. Max Gain Steps determines how the gain should increase or decrease.

### 5.15.1.2 Range Table

The current settings are shown in the Range Table; the values cannot be edited within this window. Selecting View will link directly to the RoboSettingsTable.ini file location. The ini file can be opened in Notepad or any text editor and modified to suit local survey conditions.

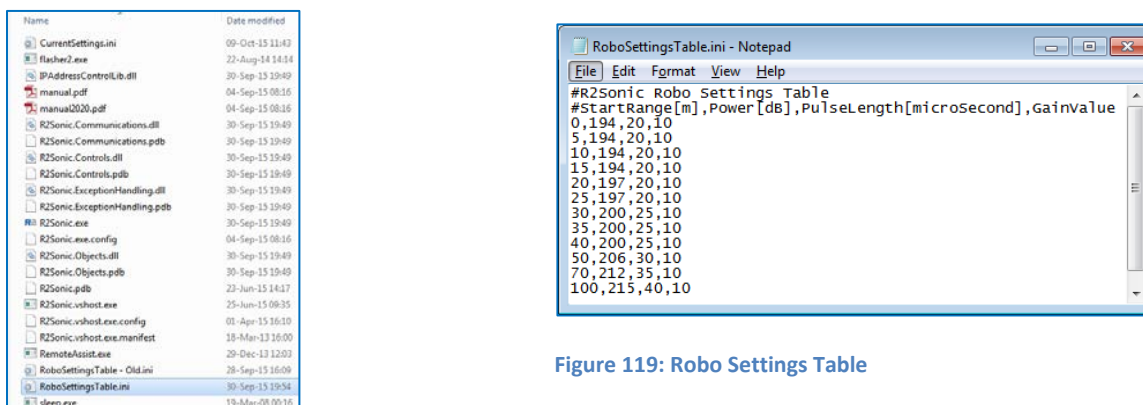


Figure 119: Robo Settings Table

Figure 120: In Robo Settings, View link to the ini file

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.16 Main Operation Parameters

The main operating parameters of the Sonic MBES are controlled by the buttons in the lower portion of the window.

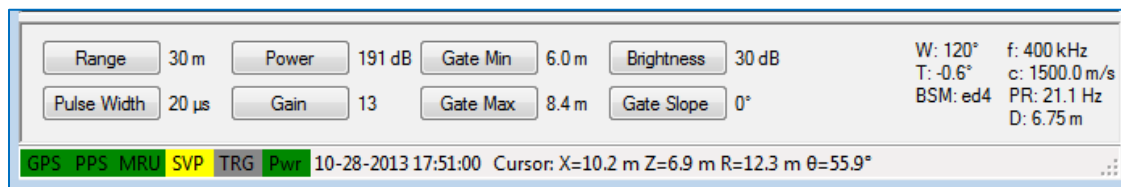


Figure 121: Operating parameter buttons

To change a value, position the mouse cursor on the button then use the left mouse button to decrease the value and the right mouse button to increase the value.

The right hand side of the panel provides system information:

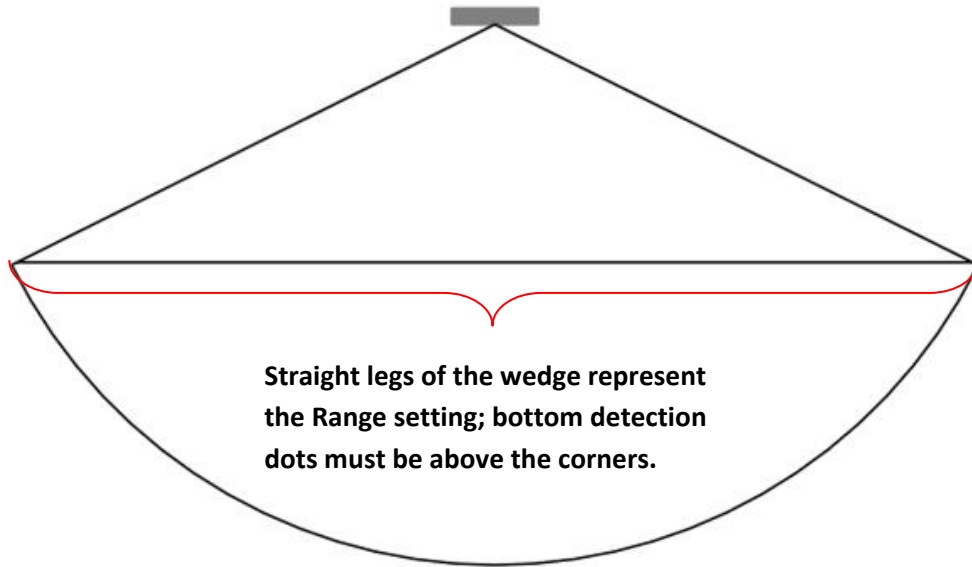
- W: Wedge sector (opening angle)
- T: Sector Tilt angle
- f: Operating frequency
- c: Sound velocity at the sonar head
- PR: Ping rate
- BSM: Bottom Sampling Mode
- D: Nadir depth

The lower left area displays the colour of the SIM communications LEDs, time, which is decoded from the bathymetry packet and the current cursor position, relative to the sonar head. The angular information is represented by theta  $\ominus$ .

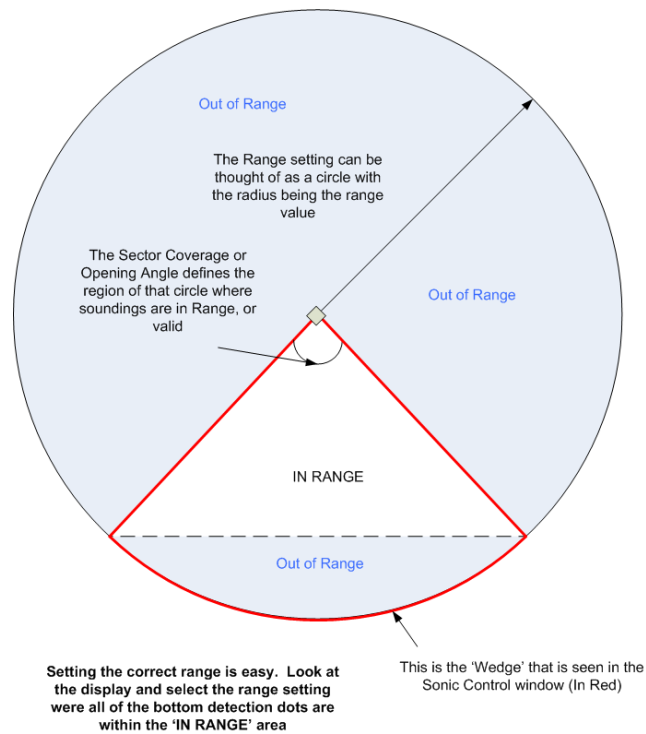
### 5.16.1 Range: 0 – 1200 metres

The Range setting sets the maximum **slant range** of the Sonic MBES. The maximum slant range determines how fast the Sonic MBES can transmit; this is the Ping Rate. What the range setting is doing is telling the MBES the length of time that the receivers should be 'listening' for the reflected acoustic energy. If the Range setting is too short, some of the returning energy will be received during the subsequent receive period, i.e. out of sync, and will be seen as noise.

It is easy for the operator to maintain the correct Range setting by noting the bottom detection dots relationship to the straight legs of the wedge display.



**Figure 122: Range setting represented in the wedge display**



**Figure 123: Graphical concept of the Wedge Display**

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 5.16.2 RangeTrac™ – Sonic Control automatically sets correct range

RangeTrac™ removes the need to set the correct range manually; Sonic Control will determine the correct range and maintain the range setting, no matter how rapidly the depth may change.

RangeTrac is enabled by selecting the box, next to RangeTrac, in Sonic Control.

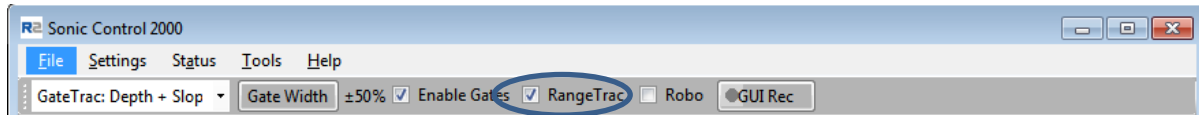
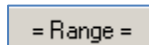


Figure 124: RangeTrac enabled

The Range button will change to reflect that Sonic Control is operating in RangeTrac mode.



Sonic Control will continue to operate in RangeTrac mode until the user manually changes range or RangeTrac is deselected.

When using RangeTrac, the user manually sets the range first and then turns on RangeTrac; from that point on, there is no need for the user to adjust the Range setting. RangeTrac will automatically set the correct Range for the water depth. RangeTrac will also optimise the ping rate for the determined range.

There are no limits to RangeTrac as far as the steepness of slope or amount of variability. RangeTrac can be used simultaneously with GateTrac, in both the Depth and the Depth + Slope modes.

### 5.16.3 Power: 191 – 221 dB

The Power setting sets the source level of the transmit pulse; this is represented in the figure below. The Sonic MBES should be operated with sufficient power to enable good acoustic returns from the sea floor. The value will change based on water depth, bottom composition, and operating frequency. In general, higher power is better for getting decent bottom returns rather than using receiver gain to obtain the returns. If the Power setting is too low, more receiver gain will need to be used to capture the bottom returns; this can mean extraneous noise will also be received. The increase in noise will require more processing time; it is better to slightly increase the Power to increase the strength of the bottom returns and, thus, allow for a lower receiver gain setting. If too much power is used, the receivers can be over-driven (saturated); this will result in noisy data and/or erroneous nadir depth readings. A good balance of source level (Power) and receiver gain is the desired end. **Shift – left click will turn transmitter power off (Power 0).**

### 5.16.4 Pulse Width: 15µsec – 1115µsec (Sonic 2026 max is 2000µsec)

Pulse width determines the transmit pulse duration time. The Sonic 2024/2022 pulse width range is from 15µsec to 1115µsec. The Sonic 2026 pulse width range is from 15µsec to 2000µsec in normal mode. If the Extended Range option is installed in the Sonic 2026 and the sonar is operated at 90 kHz or 100 kHz, the minimum Pulse Width is 140µsec. The pulse width does not affect the pulse

amplitude, which is determined by the Power setting. The general guideline is to maintain as short a pulse width as possible to optimise the resolution, but not so short as to weaken the transmit pulse. It is suggested that 20µsec pulse width is considered the minimum to use. Generally, as the water gets deeper, the pulse width will have to be increased to get more 'total' power in the water. The default pulse width will depend on the chosen operating frequency.

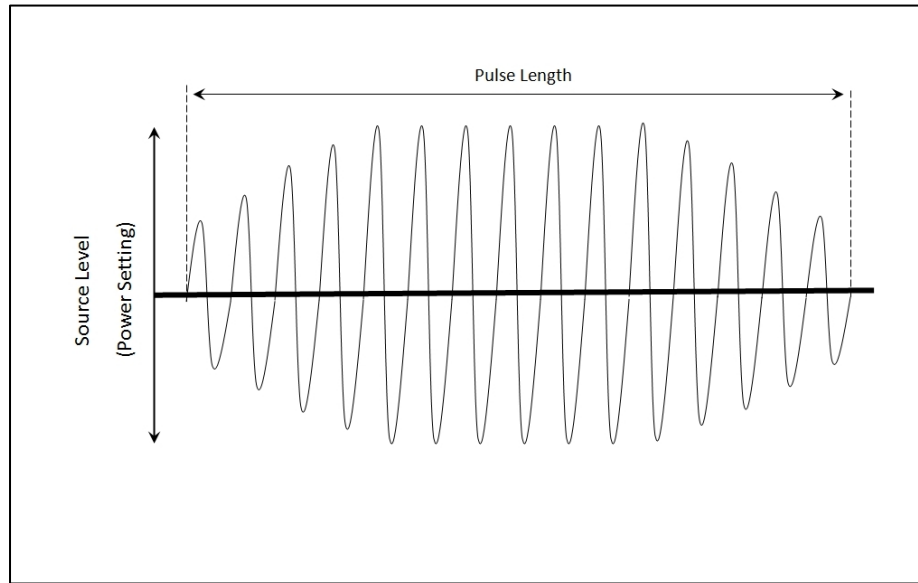


Figure 125: Transmit Pulse

The Pulse Width and sample rate are closely related. In order to reach the maximum pulse with, for a given sample rate, use Shift + mouse click to increase/decrease the pulse width in quarter octave steps. Sample rate change at 35, 70, 140, 280...µsecs.

Shift+RMB = Increase in quarter octave steps

Shift+LMB = Decrease in quarter octave steps

### 5.16.5 Gain: 1 – 45

Receiver gain is in 2 dB steps from 1 to 45. This adjusts the receive gain of the sonar head receivers.

### 5.16.6 Depth Gates: GateTrac™

The depth gate allows the user to eliminate noise or other acoustic interference by the limits set in the Minimum and Maximum Depth. There are manually selected gates, GateTrac: Depth and GateTrac: Depth + Slope.

Gates are enabled by selecting the checkbox next to Enable Gates.

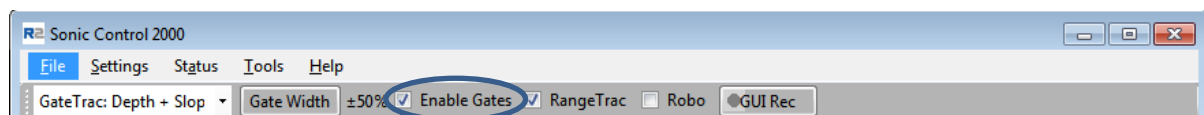


Figure 126: Enable Gates

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

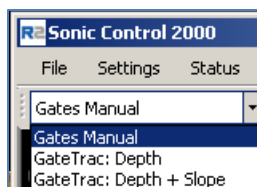


Figure 127: Manual and GateTrac selections

#### 5.16.6.1 Gates Manual

The depth gates can also be changed using the mouse in the wedge display. Click and drag on either depth gate; the cursor will change to a double arrow  $\updownarrow$ , drag the gate to the new depth and release the mouse button. The depth gate position is visible in the lower left-hand section of the display. When the mouse button is released, the gate will be updated in the Operation Parameters area.

To move both gates, simultaneously, use the right mouse button, and both gates will move, keeping the same relationship.

In Manual mode, the gate slope can be adjusted by using the Gate Slope button in the Operation area. The gates can be tilted up to  $\pm 90^\circ$ .

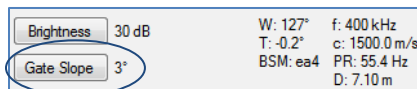


Figure 128: Manually adjust the gate slope

#### 5.16.6.2 GateTrac: Depth

GateTrac: Depth will automatically adjust the gates, for water depth, based on the tolerance that is selected by the control next to the gate drop-down menu. The tolerance is a  $\pm$  percentage of nadir depth. Right-click will increase the tolerance (up to  $\pm 90\%$ ); left click reduces the tolerance.

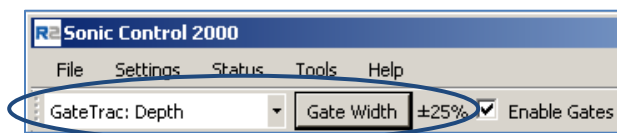


Figure 129: Gate width tolerance toggle

When GateTrac: Depth is enabled, the Gate Min and Gate Max buttons will be disabled, but the Gate Slope button will still be active.

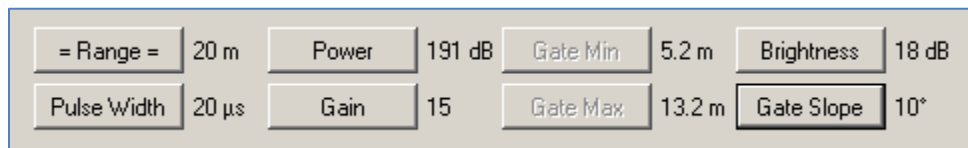


Figure 130: GateTrac enabled; Gate min and max control is disabled

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

If the soundings are visible, in the display then, when 'GateTrac: Depth' is enabled, the gates will automatically jump to the soundings, with the selected tolerance. The user can use the Gate Slope button to change the tilt of the gates, they will still automatically track the bottom, and the gate slope will not change from what the user has selected.

#### 5.16.6.3 GateTrac: Depth + Slope

Depth and Slope GateTrac will automatically adjust the gates for the depth and the slope of the bottom. When 'GateTrac: Depth + Slope' is enabled, the Gate Min and Max, as well as the Gate Slope buttons, will be greyed out.

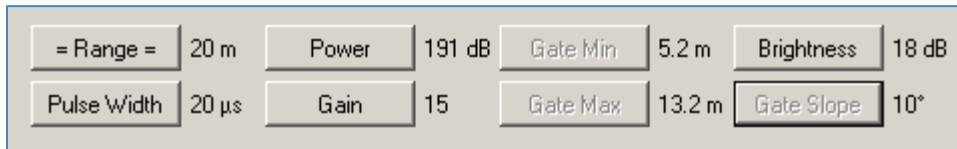


Figure 131: GateTrac: Depth + Slope enabled, manual gate controls are disabled.

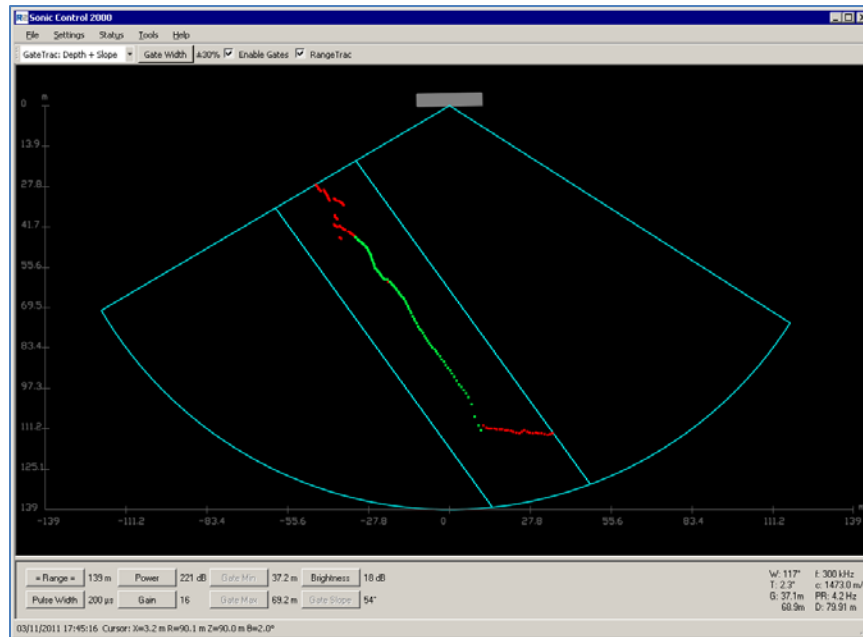


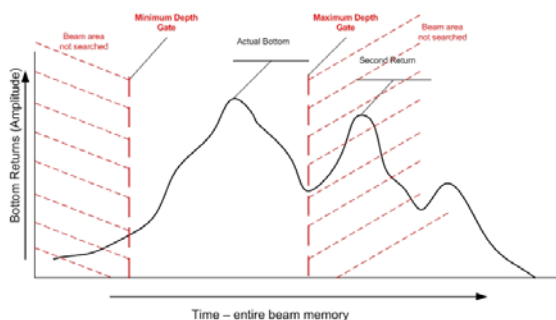
Figure 132: GateTrac: Depth + Slope enabled and tracking a steep slope

#### 5.16.6.4 Using Gates

If the minimum or maximum depth gate eliminates good data, the data are lost as it will not be included in the Sonic MBES output. In the data collection software, there will also be a form of depth gates. If the data are eliminated there, it is more than likely that the data is flagged and not really deleted so that it can be recovered.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

The main reason to use the Sonic MBES depth gates is to eliminate interference of the bottom detection process. Depending on the bottom composition, multiple returns can occur. There will be a secondary and possibly a tertiary return that arises from the initial bottom returns being reflected by the water surface and then back up again to the receiver. These second and third returns can be strong enough to influence the bottom detection process. Using the Sonic MBES depth gate will enable the Sonic MBES to search only a small area of the entire beam for the bottom detection. Therefore, only the area around where the energy from the actual bottom returns are, will be searched to derive the bottom detection. Although the user enters a depth for the gate setting, to the Sonic MBES this is a time to start searching and a time to stop searching.



**Figure 133: Graphical representation of depth gate**

The above representation illustrates how the depth gate narrows down the bottom detection search area (in time) to only the area where the true bottom is expected. If the Maximum Depth gate was not in this location, the second return could be strong enough so as to influence the bottom detection process.

Again, it must be borne in mind that if the depth gate is set such that true bottom detections are 'gated out'; those data are lost entirely and cannot be recovered.

## 5.17 GUI Rec(ord)

This feature allows the user to record the entire GUI in x.264 format (extension is .mkv). Due to licensing, R2Sonic cannot redistribute the required executables for this format, and it is left to the customer to download ffmpeg.exe from <http://ffmpeg.zeranoe.com/builds/>. The ffmpeg.exe file needs to be in the Sonic Control directory or in the Windows search path. To play back the recorded videos, there are several free programs that work. MPC-HC <https://mpc-hc.org/> is light-weight (16 MB), supports many formats, excellent scrubbing and launches videos quickly. VLC <http://www.videolan.org/vlc/index.html> is also good but may take a long time to open a video.

## 5.18 Ruler

The ruler or measuring tool can be used to obtain range and bearing information, within the GUI, by using the mouse cursor. Use Ctrl + Left Mouse Button (LMB), the cursor will change to a cross and can be dragged to the target (once the range and bearing are initiated, the Ctrl button can be

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

released. The Range and Bearing information is along the bottom of the Sonic Control window. To remove, the Ruler use Ctrl + Double Click LMB.

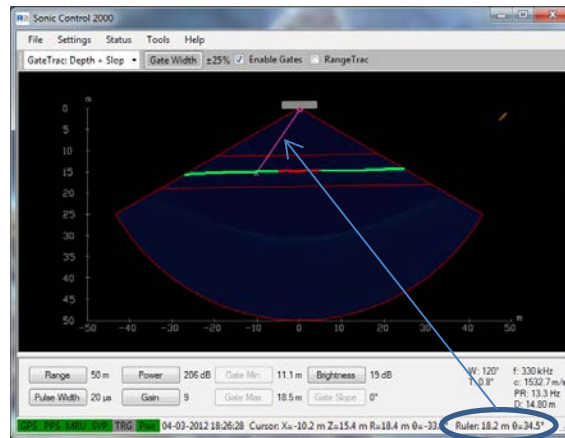


Figure 134: Ruler Function

## 5.19 Save Settings

When Sonic Control is launched, it will always load the default settings configuration file located in the Sonic Control installation directory (CurrentSettings.ini). The default configuration file will save any local configuration changes during operation of the system.

When a user-defined configuration is saved, like dualhead.ini, Sonic Control will still use the default configuration file to store local changes while operating the sonar. This is equivalent to copying the default configuration file to a configuration file with another name.

When a user-defined configuration is loaded, Sonic Control will use the default configuration file to store local changes while operating the sonar. This is equivalent to copying the loaded configuration file to the default configuration file.

### 5.19.1 Default setting ini file

Within the GUI files, there are factory default ini files, which can be loaded to reset the GUI to factory default status. Loading a default settings file has been known to clear some operational issues. When the correct default settings file is loaded, the GUI will need to be set up again by doing Discover and Apply and setting up the Sensor settings.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 5.20 Operating Sonic Control on a second computer

There may be circumstances where it is preferred to run Sonic Control on a different computer than the computer where the data collection software is running. The user can change IP addresses as well as UDP ports. By doing Discover (in Settings | Network Settings), the system looks for all attached R2Sonic equipment, which will be identified by model and serial number. Once the serial number is discovered, it is used to assign an IP and UDP port to the sonar head and the SIM, after this is done, the IP and UDP ports can be changed.

### 5.20.1 Two computer setup

- 1) Set the data collection computer's networking to IP address 10.0.1.102 as usual
- 2) Setup Sonic Control, on the data collection computer, as normal: do Discover and apply the settings to establish communication with the system
- 3) Set the second computer's networking to IP address 10.0.1.105 (using this as an example)
- 4) Load Sonic Control on the second computer, but do not connect the second computer to the SIM until directed to below
- 5) Open Sonic Control on the second computer
- 6) Go to Settings | Network settings and change only the GUI IP address to 10.0.1.105 (see illustration below)
- 7) Connect a LAN cable from the second computer to one of the free RJ45 ports on the SIM (there will now be 2 Ethernet cables connected to the SIM)
- 8) On the data collection computer's Sonic Control, go to Settings | Network Settings and change only the GUI IP to the IP of the second computer: 10.0.1.105 (see illustration below)
- 9) Do not change any other IP or Port, only the IP for the GUI is to be changed
- 10) Select Apply: the GUI, on the data collection computer, will no longer update nor will it be able to control the multibeam
- 11) On the second computer, open Sonic Control
- 12) Under Network settings, use Discover to obtain the serial numbers of the SIM and sonar head and Apply; this computer now controls the Sonic system.
- 13) This example used IP address 10.0.1.105, but any IP can be entered as long as it adheres to the restrictions set by the subnet mask

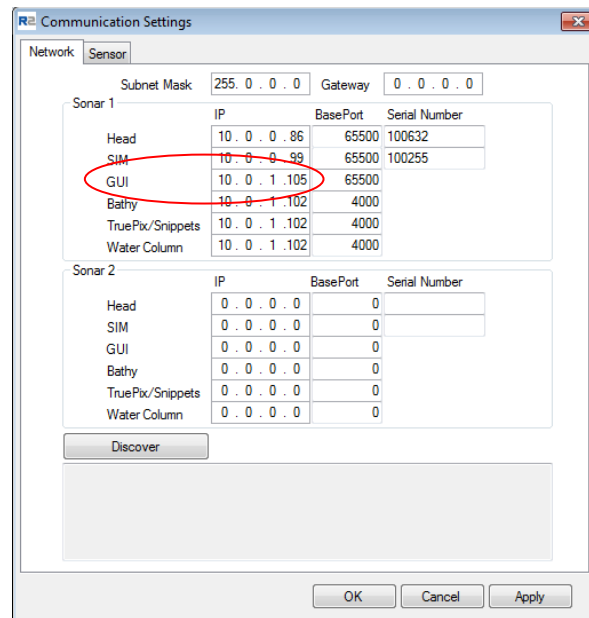


Figure 135: Change in GUI IP

### 5.20.2 Changing back to one computer

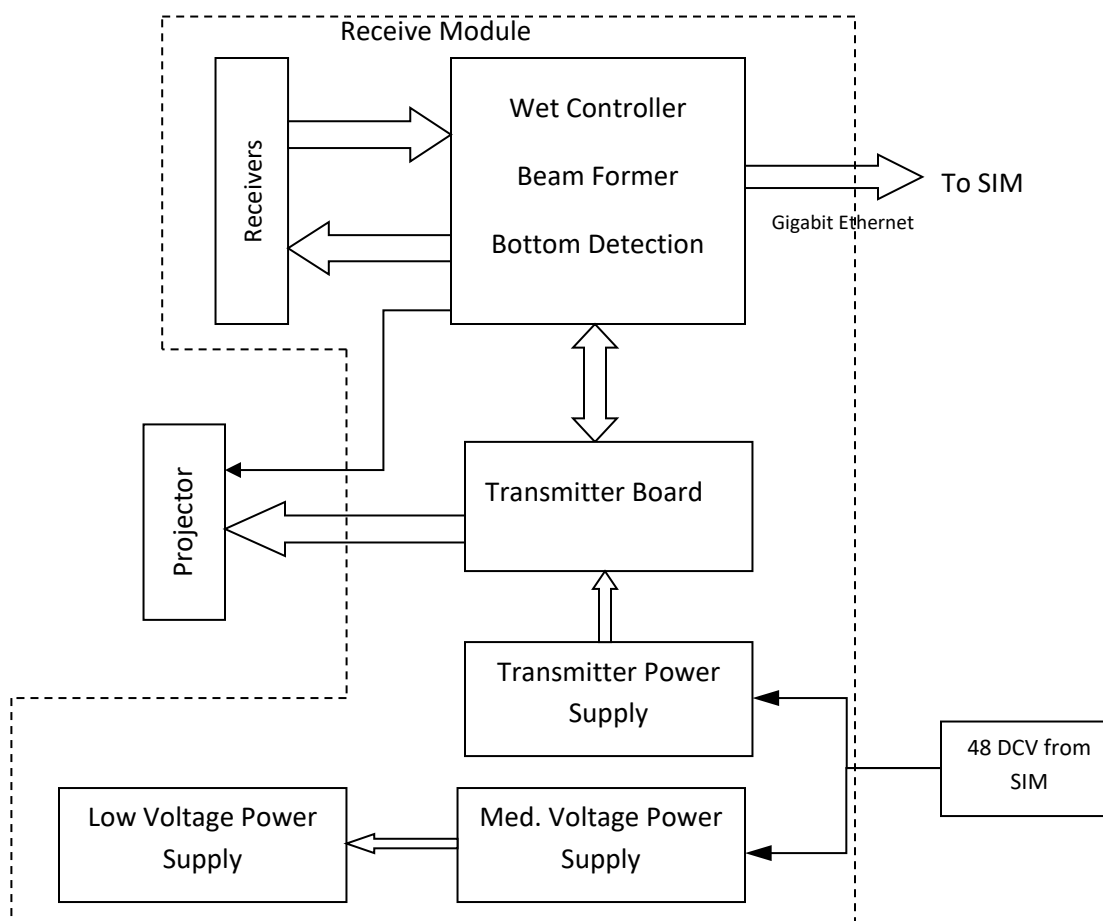
- 1) Open Sonic Control on the data collection computer.
- 2) Change the GUI address to 10.0.1.102
- 3) On the second computer, change the GUI IP address back to 10.0.1.102 and Apply.
- 4) Sonic Control, on the data collection computer now controls the system.

Disconnect the second computer's Ethernet cable from the SIM.

## 6 SONIC MBES THEORY OF OPERATION

The Sonic MBES transmits a shaped continuous wave pulse at the user-selected frequency. The transmit pulse is narrow in the along-track direction, but very wide in the across-track direction. The reflected acoustic energy is received via the Sonic MBES receivers; within the Receive Module the beams are formed and the bottom detection process takes place. The resultant bottom detections (range and bearing) are then sent, via Ethernet, through the deck lead, to the Gigabit switch in the SIM and out of the RJ45 connections to Sonic Control and the data collection software.

## 6.1 Sonic MBES Sonar Head Block Diagram



**Figure 136: SONIC 2024 Sonar Head Block Diagram**

## 6.2 Sonic MBES Transmit (Normal Operation Mode)

The projector is comprised of a precisely arranged set of composite ceramics. The projector, itself, can transmit over a wide frequency range, which makes it unique amongst multibeam echosounders. A pulse, at the chosen operating frequency, excites the ceramics which converts the electrical energy to acoustic energy. The pulse originates from the Wet Controller board in the Receive Module, which is then passed onto the Transmitters and out to the Projector. The amplitude of the pulse is set by the transmit Power setting in Sonic Control 2000; the Pulse Length setting in Sonic Control 2000 determines how long the pulse excites the ceramics.

The projector's transmit pattern ensonifies the seafloor in a very wide across-track, but narrow along-track pattern as the vessel moves along the survey line. The across-track angle is 160°; the along-track angle depends on frequency. The 450 kHz along-track pattern is 0.9° (0.5° for the Sonic 2026). The along-track lengthens out to 2° at 200 kHz. This is the Normal Operating Mode and not extended Vertical Mapping Mode.

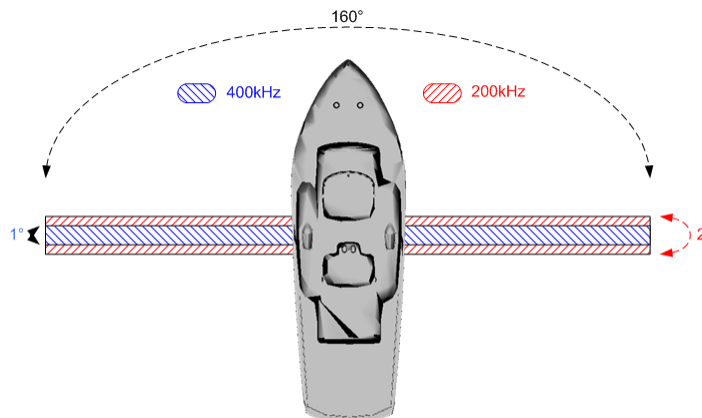


Figure 137: Transmit pattern; Sonic 2024

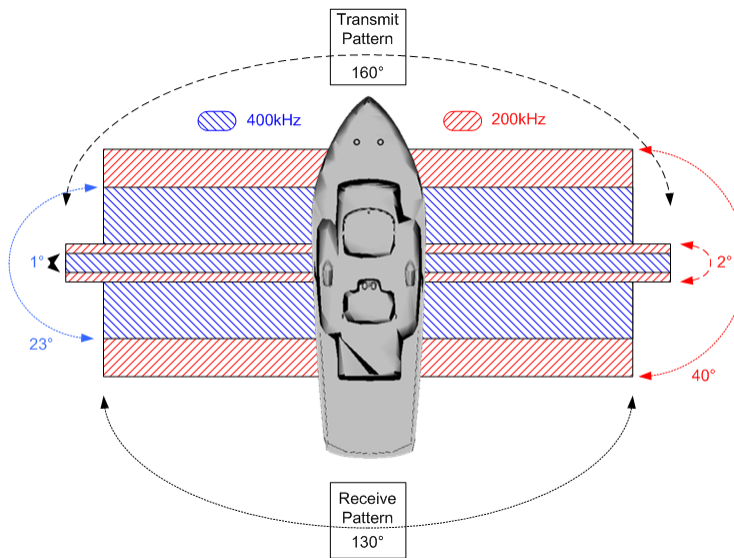
Depending on the water conditions, seafloor composition and other factors, a portion of the acoustic energy that strikes the seafloor will be reflected back towards the surface. The return acoustic energy will strike the Sonic MBES receiver's ceramics.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 6.3 Sonic MBES Receive (Normal Operation Mode)

The Projector is comprised of composite ceramics that convert electrical energy to acoustic energy. The composite ceramics, in the Receive Module, convert the reflected acoustic energy back to electrical energy. The small electrical voltage, generated by the ceramics, is amplified and then passed onto the receivers. The output of the receivers goes directly to the Wet Controller board in the Receive Module.

In general, the receive pattern is 130° (normal bathymetry survey) in the across-track. The along-track pattern depends on the frequency; from 23° at 400 kHz to 40° at 200 kHz.



**Figure 138: Receive pattern with Transmit pattern**

The Wet Controller board contains the FPGA that performs the beam forming and bottom detection operation; time tags the data; and formats the sonar data for output back up to the SIM. The bathymetry data is output as a Range and Bearing (from the sonar head's acoustic centre) for each beam. Other outputs include TruePix™ / Snippets, beamformed imagery and water column data.

The output of the Wet Controller board is sent through the deck lead, to the SIM's Gigabit switch and onto the data collection computer through one of the SIM's external RJ45 connections.

## 6.4 Sonic 2024/2022 Sonar Interface Module (SIM) Block Diagram

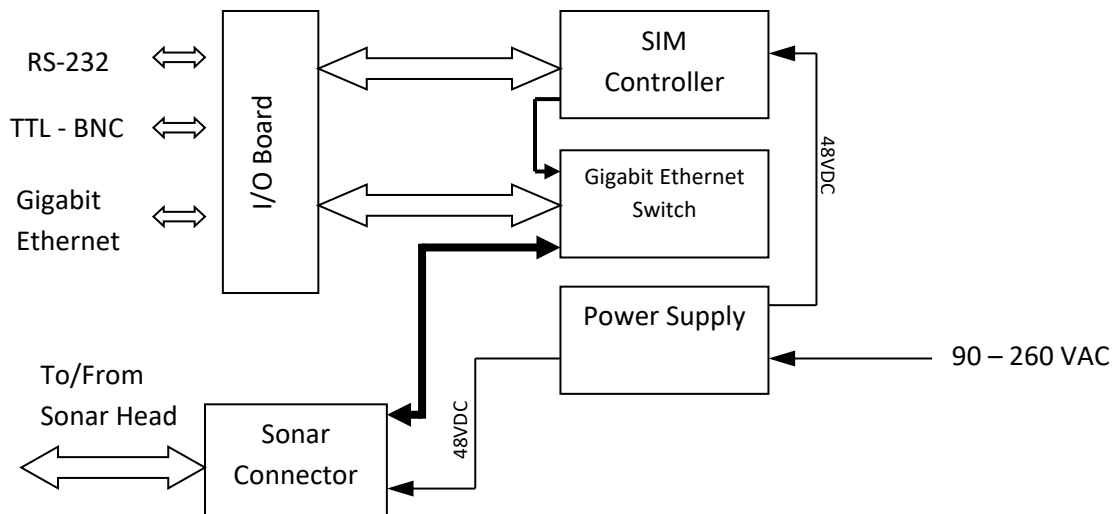


Figure 139: Sonar Interface Module Block Diagram

### 6.4.1 Sonar Interface Module (SIM) Block Diagram

#### 6.4.1.1 SIM Power Requirement

The SIM operates within a voltage range of 90 to 260 VAC. The mains voltage is converted in the various DC voltages required for the operation of the Sonic MBES. Primarily, 48 VDC is sent to the Receive Module to power the sonar head.

#### 6.4.1.2 SIM Controller

The SIM Controller card primarily does time stamping of sensor data and deals with RS-232 and BNC data.

#### 6.4.1.3 SIM – Sonic Control 2000 interfacing

Sonic Control 2000 communicates with the SIM over the Gigabit Ethernet DATA RJ-45. Commands, from Sonic Control 2000 are transmitted to the SIM and then to the Sonic MBES. The Sonic MBES data passes through SIM to the data collection software.

#### 6.4.1.4 SIM – RS-232 / Ethernet Interfacing

The SIM receives the GPS PPS and time message (NMEA ZDA), the sound velocity from the probe near the sonar head and the motion sensor data (for roll stabilisation only). These data are routed through the SIM Controller to the Ethernet switch for transmission to the sonar head.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

# Appendix I R2Sonic I2NS™

## 7 Appendix I: R2Sonic I2NS Components and Operation

The R2Sonic I2NS (Inertial Navigation System) option integrates the Applanix Position and Orientation System (POS/MV)'s POS Computing System (PCS) and Sonar topside units saving both power and space while simplifying vessel mobilization. The setup of the R2Sonic INS is identical to the setup of the Applanix POS/MV system; POSView (Version 7.60 or more recent) is necessary for inputting offsets and configuring outputs. All of the data, both sonar and POS/MV are sent over the one Ethernet cable to the data collection computer; eliminating the need for two network cards. The information contained here does not detail the POSView software to set up the Applanix POS/MV; that information is found in the Applanix POS/MV manual. The information provided here covers the necessary setup of the R2Sonic I2NS components as relates to the R2Sonic SIM and Sonic Control. Where necessary, certain steps in the POSView software are detailed.

The R2Sonic INS will work on all R2Sonic systems with SIM firmware: *Simb\$26-OCT-2013-15-58-27.bin* and head firmware: *Head\$16-Nov-2013-04-35-57.bin* or more recent.

### 7.1 Components

The R2Sonic I2NS is comprised of the enhanced Sonar Interface Module (SIM), which contains the Applanix boards and connections for the antennas and Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU). Two antennas (and cables) and one IMU (and cable) complete the physical INS components.



Figure 140: R2Sonic I2NS Main Components (not including antennas and cables)



Figure 141: GNSS Antennas

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 7.2 Connection diagram

When using the INS, there is no need to provide inputs for the motion or the time stamp, as those are provided internally, through the SIM's Gigabit switch. The only serial connection is the sound velocity probe that is on the sonar head. A PPS loop cable is required to go from the PPS out to the PPS in.

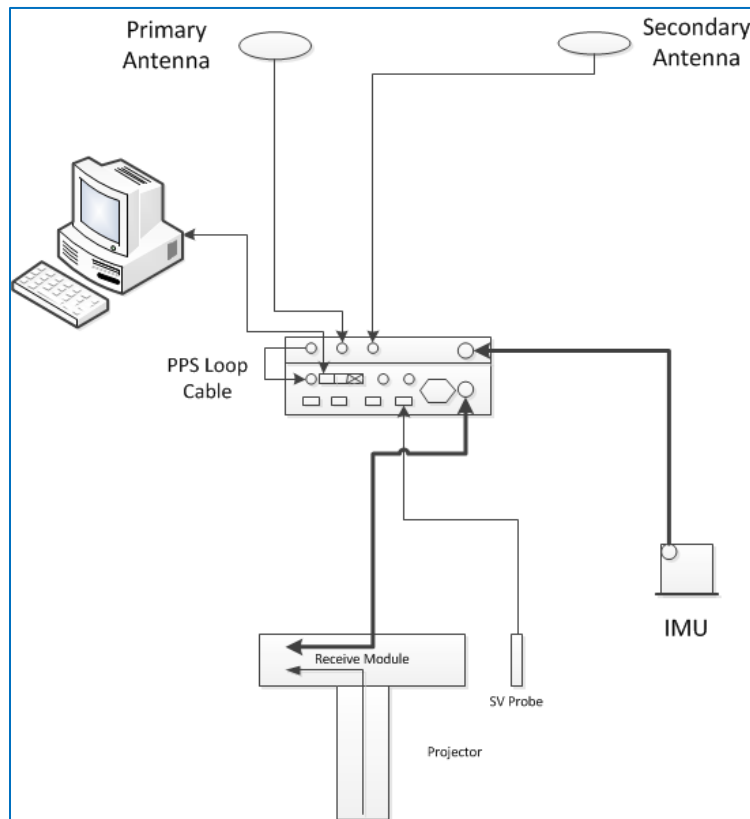


Figure 142: INS connections

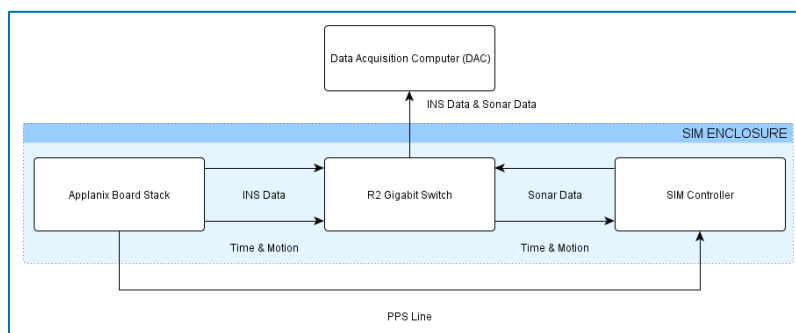


Figure 143: INS SIM block diagram

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 7.3 Installation

### 7.3.1 The IMU and GPS antennas

The IMU (Inertial Measurement Unit) housing should be secured by 4 M8 (5/16" in Imperial units) screws. The IMU housing is depth rated to 15m. The IMU can be mounted close to or on the Multibeam transducer itself. It is not necessary to mount the IMU at the vessel's CoG (centre of gravity), **but if it is not mounted on the CoG, it is vitally important that very accurate IMU to CoG offsets are input into POSView.**

The GNSS antennas should be mounted rigidly with respect to each other as well as the IMU, with a separation of at least 1m between the GPS antennas. The antennas should be mounted so that they have a clear view of the sky.

The standard cables provided with the INS option are:

1x15m IMU cable  
1xBNC jumper cable  
2x8m GPS antenna cables

### 7.3.2 INS BNC – TNC Connections



There is one BNC connection for the PPS out. The TNC connection next to it is for the Primary Antenna. The Secondary antenna connects to the TNC connection on the end.

Figure 144: INS BNC & TNC Connections



The PPS Out is connected to the SIM PPS In, with a short length of cable

Figure 145: PPS Out - PPS In

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 7.3.3 I2NS DB9 Connections

The I2NS has two serial communication ports and one dedicated to the internal GNSS board. The two com ports are standard DB9M serial connections that are set up in the POSView software. Both ports are bi-directional and can be configured to receive RTCM corrections or to output standard NMEA or binary serial data. The DB9M dedicated to the GNSS board is connected directly to the GNSS board, inside the SIMINS; the port is used to update or directly access the GNSS receiver. For full information on the serial ports, please refer to the POSView documentation.



Figure 146: SIMINS Serial Ports

Standard usage is to input GPS corrections or Aux GPS data using COM1 or COM2. The GNSS1 port is not configurable, as to input, like COM1 and COM2

In POSView, in the Input/Output Ports Set-up, only COM 1 and COM 2 are to be configured.

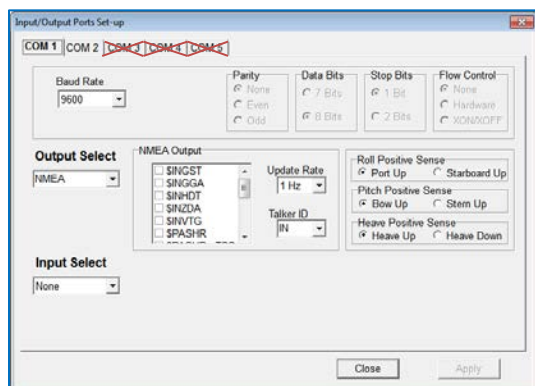


Figure 147: POSView Serial port setup

The GNSS1 port communication parameters are set up under Settings | Installation Settings | GNSS Receiver Configuration.

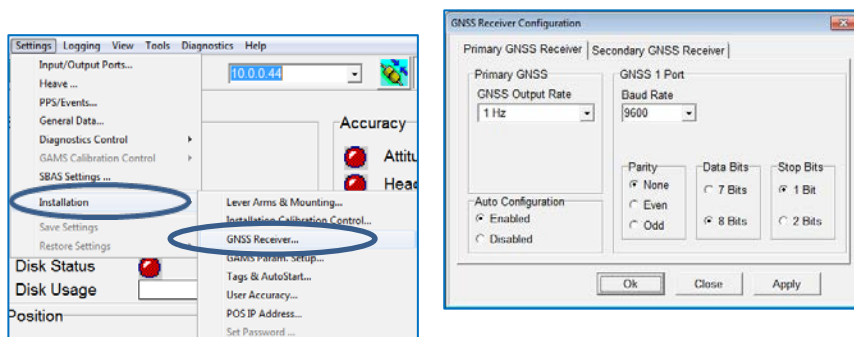


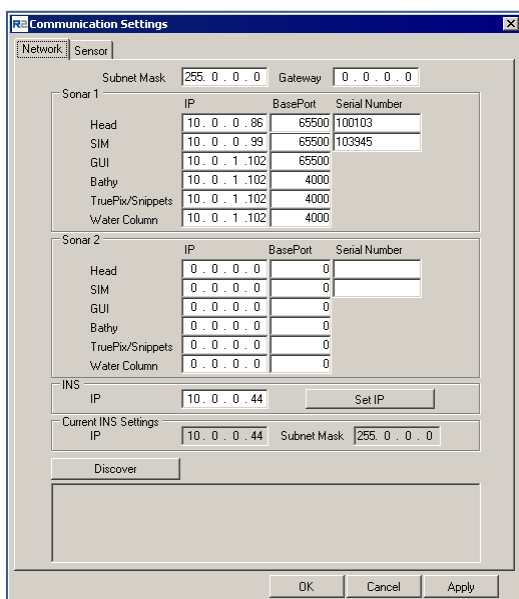
Figure 148: GNSS1 Port setup

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 7.4 Setup in Sonic Control

### 7.4.1 Network Setup

If the Applanix IP address is lost and no connection can be made through POSView it can be reset through the R2Sonic GUI. To change the IP address of the POS/MV, reboot the SIM box, open the R2Sonic GUI and go to Settings>Network Settings and under “INS IP” enter the desired IP. The POS/MV takes approximately 2 minutes to power on; once the POS is fully booted, the IP can be set in the R2Sonic GUI. Once the POS is fully booted, the user has 5 minutes to change the IP address of the POS/MV. Attempting to change the IP address, outside of the 5-minute window, will result in a warning that the SIM box must be rebooted before changing the INS IP.



0 minutes: turn on

0 to 1min: Button label is "Set IP wait" and button text is greyed out. The INS IP cannot be updated during this period. The GUI is waiting for the INS to send out message 32.

After ≈ 1 - 2 mins: the GUI will allow changes to the INS IP address. The actual time depends on when the GUI starts receiving message 32 from the INS.

From ≈1min (2min) to 7min: INS IP address can be changed. Button text turns from greyed out to black text and says "Set IP".

After 7 min: INS won't accept change in IP address. Button text color is greyed out and label says "Set IP expired".

Figure 149: Network Settings SIMINS

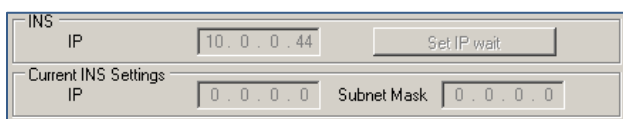


Figure 150: Cannot Change IP, waiting on msg 32

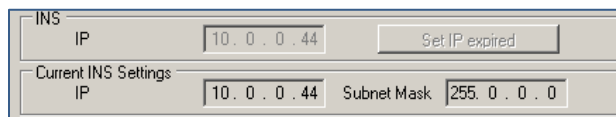


Figure 151: Set IP time expired, cannot change IP

## 7.4.2 Applanix Group 119 specific to R2Sonic SIMINS

Src: 10.0.0.44:65533

Dst: 10.255.255.255:5606

Applanix POS, Customer data

Group 119 (MV customer defined group)

Group start: \$GRP

Group ID: 119 (MV customer defined group)

Byte count: 132

Time/Distance Fields:

Time 1: 358370.467027857 (UTC seconds of the week) (Thu 03:32:50.467028 UTC)

Time 2: 1091.53761465444 (POS seconds since power-on) (0.303205 hours)

Distance tag: 0 (POS distance)

Time types: 0x02

Distance type: 0x01

User ID: 1

Reserved: 00

PacketName: R2A0

PacketSize: 100

Reserved0: 0000

PpsTime: 358386 (GPS seconds of the week) (Thu 03:32:50.000000 UTC) (1395286370 Unix)

VesselLatitude: 30.2391284856087 (degrees)

VesselLongitude: -97.838843091206 (degrees)

VesselAltitude: 198.64372053742 (meters)

North position RMS error: 0.922135 (meters)

East position RMS error: 0.698561 (meters)

Down position RMS error: 1.10037 (meters)

VesselPitch: 0.00230865 (radians) (0.132276 degrees)

VesselRoll: 0.000915637 (radians) (0.052462 degrees)

VesselHeave: 0.0256301 (meters)

VesselHeading: 0.115629 (radians) (6.625050 degrees)

RmsErrorPitch: 0.0292523 (degrees)

RmsErrorRoll: 0.0292523 (degrees)

VesselSpeed: 0.063469 (meters/second)

RmsErrorHeading: 10.2586 (degrees)

GpsWeekNumber: 1784 (GPS weeks)

UTCTimeOffset: 16 (GPS-UTC seconds)

StatusB: 0x0189200d

StatusC: 0x00001000

StatusExtended: 0x00000100

Satellites: 9

Reserved1: 00

Reserved2: 0000

Checksum: 23896 (Good)

Group end: \$#

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

### 7.4.3 Sensor Setup

All of the required information (time message and motion data) from the INS stack, except for the PPS, is transferred internally. However, in the Sensor setup, the Interface type and Ethernet configuration has to be set up to receive the internal information. The GPS and Motion interface type is set to Ethernet. The IP that the POS/MV stack sends data out is 10.0.0.44 and uses UDP port 5606, which is unique for R2Sonic requirements. **The POS/MV Ethernet data, going to the data collection computer, is on the same IP (10.0.1.102), as the sonar data and uses the standard POS/MV UDP 5602. If the data collection software requires the IP address of the 'talker', the POS/MV stack outputs on IP 10.0.0.44.**

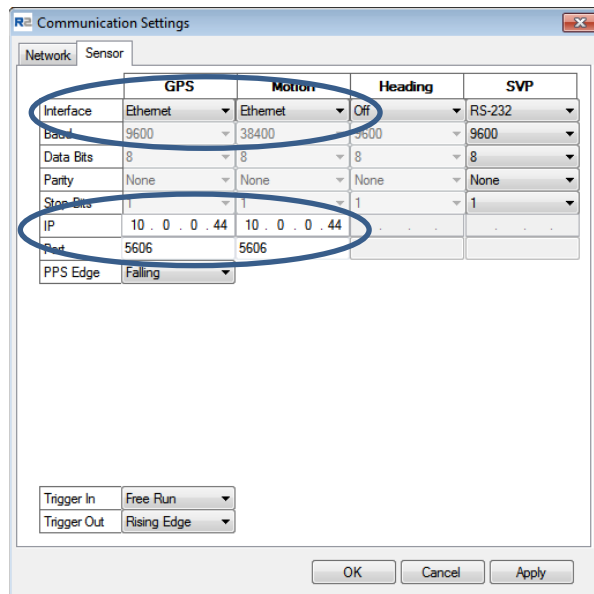


Figure 152: Sensor setup for SIMINS

### 7.4.4 INS Monitor (Alt+I)

INS data can be monitor through the INS monitor. The INS monitor option is under Status.

| INS Monitor                                      |               |     |         |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----|---------|
| Latitude                                         | 30.23915662°  | +/- | 1.383m  |
| Longitude                                        | -97.83881809° | +/- | 1.380m  |
| Altitude                                         | 208.961m      | +/- | 2.417m  |
| GNSS Fix Status Pri. GPS configuration file sent |               |     |         |
| Speed                                            | 0.048 knots   |     |         |
| Roll                                             | -0.195°       | +/- | 0.038°  |
| Pitch                                            | -0.157°       | +/- | 0.038°  |
| Heading                                          | 96.349°       | +/- | 15.776° |
| Heave                                            | -0.182m       |     |         |
| GAMS                                             | Not ready     |     |         |
| # of satellites                                  | 10            |     |         |

Figure 153: INS Monitor

The INS Monitor allows the user to constantly monitor the values from the INS.

The accuracy limits are preset and independent of the settings in POSView:

|                     |        |
|---------------------|--------|
| Roll & Pitch:       | 0.050° |
| Heading:            | 0.050° |
| Latitude/Longitude: | 2.000m |
| Altitude:           | 2.000m |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 7.5 Measuring IMU Offsets

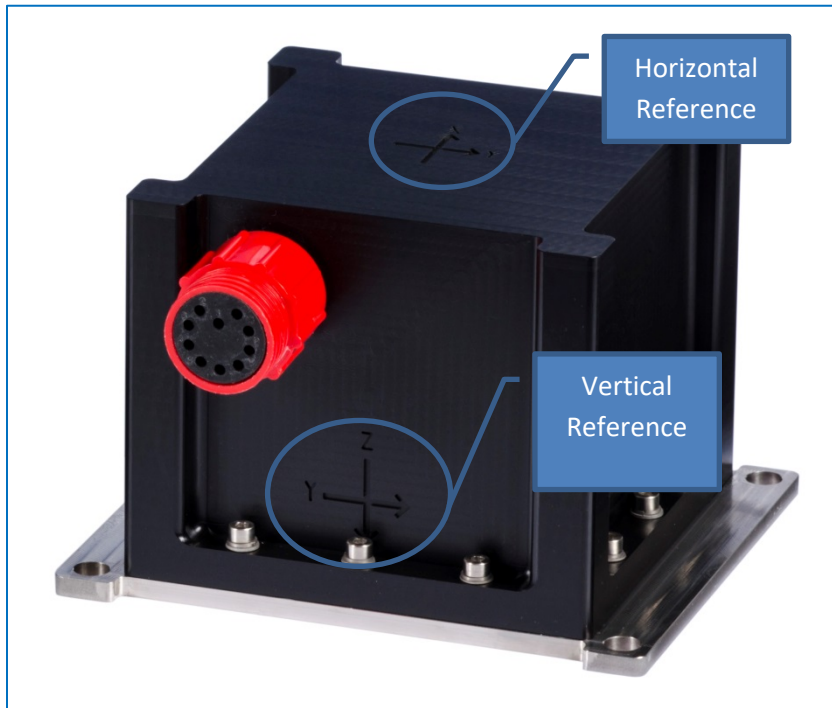


Figure 154: IMU Reference indicators

Identify the COG of the vessel that point becomes the reference point of the INS offsets. The POS/MV uses a right-hand Cartesian coordinate system, therefore, the lever arm offsets should be measured as

- +X = To Bow
- +Y = To Starboard
- +Z = Down

When using DGPS offsets should be measured to 5cm accuracy. When using RTK offsets should be measured to 5mm accuracy.

Measure the offset from the reference point to the primary GPS antenna and record it in POSView in the ***“ref. to Primary GPS Lever Arm”*** fields. There is no need to measure the offset of the second antenna; the Applanix GAMS calibration will determine this X offset.

**Measurement of the IMU COG is critical.** The IMU has two reference points. On top of the IMU is the horizontal reference for the X and Y measurement. The vertical Z reference is measured to the reference point on the rear part of the IMU. After measuring the reference to IMU offsets, input the values in the ***“Ref. to IMU Target”*** fields in POSView. Be sure to check the box by ***“Enable Bare IMU”***, as seen below. NOTE: Some older versions of POSView will not have this option. If not, please install the version preloaded on the R2Sonic CD that shipped with the Sonar.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

**Lever Arms & Mounting Angles**

Lever Arms & Mounting Angles | Sensor Mounting | Tags, AutoStart

| Ref. to IMU Target |     | IMU Frame w.r.t. Ref. Frame |   | Target to Sensing Centre |       | Resulting Lever Arm |       |
|--------------------|-----|-----------------------------|---|--------------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| X (m)              | 0   | X (deg)                     | 0 | X (m)                    | 0.000 | X (m)               | 0.000 |
| Y (m)              | 2.5 | Y (deg)                     | 0 | Y (m)                    | 0.000 | Y (m)               | 2.500 |
| Z (m)              | 2.0 | Z (deg)                     | 0 | Z (m)                    | 0.000 | Z (m)               | 2.000 |

| Ref. to Primary GPS Lever Arm |      | Ref. to Vessel Lever Arm |   | Ref. to Centre of Rotation Lever Arm |   |
|-------------------------------|------|--------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| X (m)                         | 1.2  | X (m)                    | 0 | X (m)                                | 0 |
| Y (m)                         | 0.5  | Y (m)                    | 0 | Y (m)                                | 0 |
| Z (m)                         | -1.2 | Z (m)                    | 0 | Z (m)                                | 0 |

Notes: 1. Ref. = Reference  
2. w.r.t. = With Respect To  
3. Reference Frame and Vessel Frame are co-aligned

Compute IMU w.r.t. Ref. Misalignment

☒ Enable Bare IMU

Ok Close Apply View

Figure 155: POSView Lever Arm setup

Use the View, when entering offsets, so that the correct sign is confirmed. This figure represents the physical installation, using the offsets that are seen in the above figure.

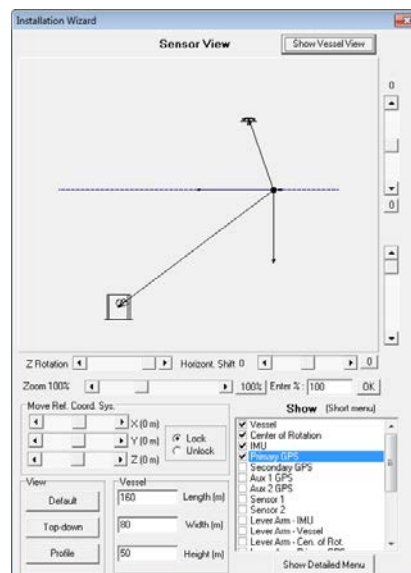


Figure 156: View of installation with the entered offsets

If the Reference point chosen is NOT the COG of the vessel input the offsets from the ref to the COG in the ***"Ref. to Centre of Rotation"*** fields. This step is extremely important for accurate heave information to be reported.

## 7.6 I2NS Physical Specifications

**Table 14: I2NS Dimensions and Mass**

| Component                             | Dimensions (L x W x H) / Mass                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| I2NS Sonar Interface Module (INS-SIM) | 280mm x 170mm x 126.4mm (top of cooling fins) / 4.17kg |
| Inertial Measurements Unit (IMU)      | 161mm x 140mm x 110mm / 2.2kg                          |
| GNSS Antenna                          | Ø178mm x 73mm / 0.45kg                                 |

**Table 15: Electrical Specifications**

| Item                      | Specification |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| INS (SIM, IMU & Antennas) | 38.4w         |
| INS + Sonic 2024          | 88.4w         |
| INS + Sonic 2022          | 73.4w         |

## 7.7 I2NS Drawings

### 7.7.1 I2NS IMU

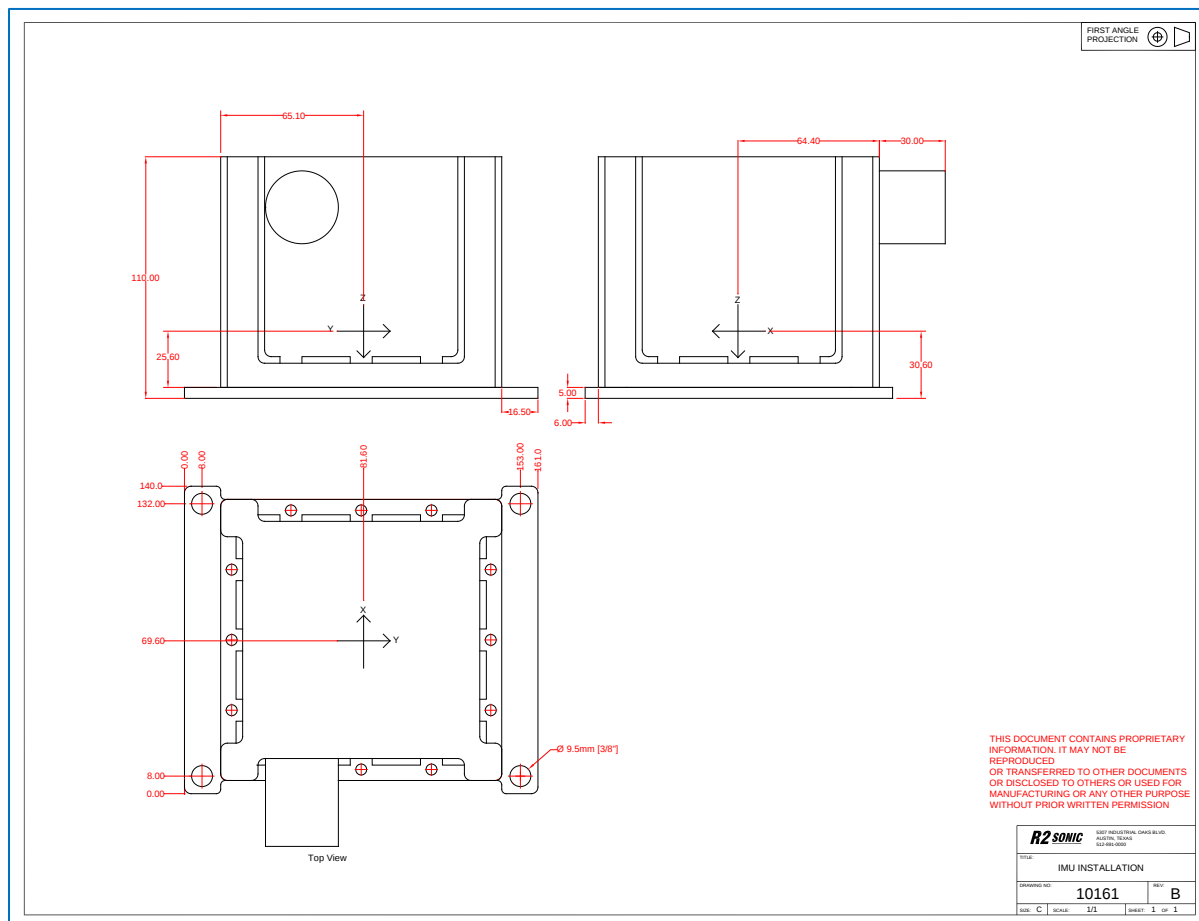


Figure 157: IMU Drawing

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

## 7.7.2 I2NS Sonar Interface Module (SIM)

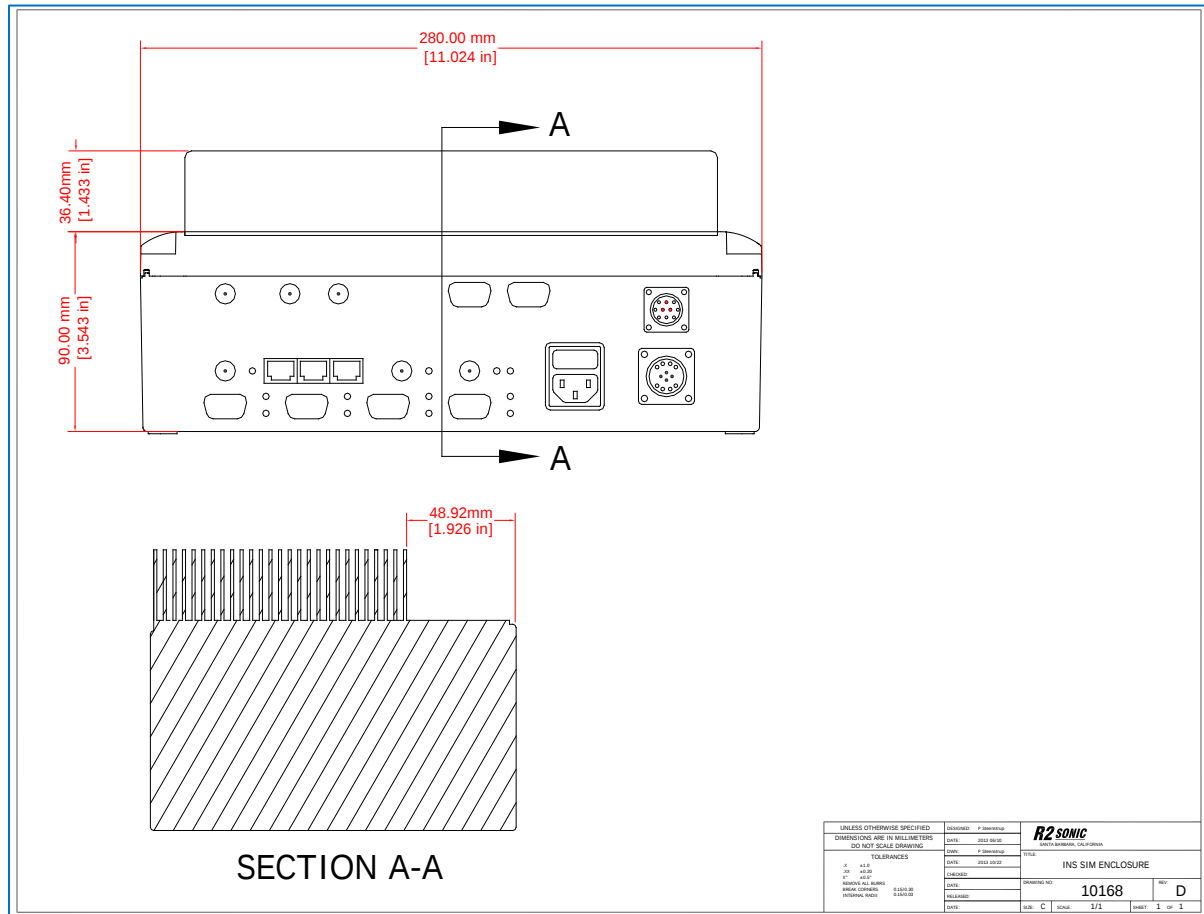


Figure 158: I2NS SIM Drawing

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

# APPENDIX II: Multibeam Survey Suite Components

---

## 8 APPENDIX II: Multibeam Survey Suite Components

### 8.1 Auxiliary Sensors and Components

A multibeam survey system is comprised of more components than just the Sonic Multibeam Echosounder. These components are the auxiliary sensors, which are required to provide the necessary information for a multibeam survey. This does not mean that these sensors are a minor part of the survey system; each auxiliary sensor is required for any multibeam survey operation. The required sensor data:

- Position: Differential Global Positioning System Receiver
- Heading: Gyrocompass
- Attitude: Motion Sensor
- Refraction correction: Sound Velocity Probe

Each of the individual sensors requires their setup and operation procedures. The details, discussed here, concerning the installation and calibration of the auxiliary sensors, is supplemental to any manufacturer's documentation.

### 8.2 Differential Global Positioning System

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is well known to all surveyors. There was a period when the GPS position was intentionally made less accurate; this was Selective Availability (SA). When SA was enacted, the GPS position became too inaccurate for survey use. It was during this period that the concept of differential corrections was established. Differential corrections were derived from users monitoring the GPS position at a known survey point and computing the corrections required to adjust the various pseudo ranges to make the GPS position agree with the known survey position. If a vessel was operating within the local area and observing the same satellite constellation, the derived pseudo-range corrections could be applied on board to make for a more accurate and consistent position. The corrections are normally transmitted over a radio link and applied within the GPS receiver.

#### 8.2.1 Installation

The first and foremost consideration when installing the DGPS system is the location of the respective antennae. Both the GPS antenna and the differential antenna (if they are two separate antennae) need to be mounted on the vessel in such a way to have an unobstructed view of the sky.

When installing the GPS antenna, the surveyor should be aware of the position of the stacks and masts; in particular, are davits or cranes that may be currently in a stored position, but will be in use

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

during survey operations. If mounting the antenna on a vessel that has helicopter landing facilities, coordinate the placement of the antenna with the personnel in charge of helicopter operations.

When the location for the antennae has been determined the next step is determining how the coaxial cable, connecting the antenna and the receiver, is to be run. The cables should be run in such a manner to be protected from possible damage. Cables should not be run through hatches or windows if it can be avoided; if such runs are necessary, then a block or other such obstruction should be placed so that the hatch or window will not close on the cable. If the cables are to be suspended between two points, a rope or other line should be strung to carry the weight of the cables. Cables should never be kinked; all cables have a minimum bending radius, and if it is known, adhere to it, if it is not known, use common sense. Do not run cables in a manner that they will become safety hazards on the vessel, causing personnel to trip or be caught on them. Avoid running cables along voltage carrying lines.

It is important to mark the cables at both ends to denote what they are and to where they go.

The connection to the antenna may be required to be completely waterproofed (depending on the manufacturer's recommendations) using electrical tape, with a secondary covering of self-amalgamated tape. Ensure that there are no air gaps in the tape; they will become a channel for water. If a cable is to be run upwards from the antenna, form a drip loop by leaving slack in the cable that will hang below the antenna connector. This will allow any water that flows down the cable to collect and drip from the slack loop instead of running into the connector.

The cables, connectors and antennae should be inspected regularly for signs of damage, corrosion or abuse. Any abrasions on the cable should be securely taped; if possible, a waterproof coating should also be applied.

### **8.2.2 GPS Calibration**

Prior to commencing survey operations, the accuracy of the Differential GPS position and transformation to local datum should be determined. There are two main methods to determine the accuracy of the DGPS position and data transformation. For both methods, a local land survey benchmark is required.

#### **8.2.2.1 Position Accuracy Determination Method 1**

The GPS antenna is physically placed over the survey benchmark. The surveyor will ensure that the antenna has a clear view. This is particularly important if the benchmark being used is in a dock area. The surveyor will also ensure that if a separate antenna is used to receive differential corrections, that it is not blocked.

The GPS position data should be logged, in the data collection software, for not less than 15 minutes. The collected data can then be averaged, standard deviations determined and compared to the published position of the survey benchmark.

The two main causes of error, in this area, are:

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

- Wrong geodetic transformations being applied to the WGS-84 position derived from GPS.
- Erroneous coordinates for the Differential reference station.

### **8.2.2.2 Position Accuracy Determination Method 2**

This method is most easily accomplished during the gyrocompass calibration. The antenna remains mounted on the vessel. The surveyor will set up on the known survey benchmarks; using standard land survey techniques, the exact absolute position of the antenna can be determined. During the period that the surveyor is 'shooting in' the GPS antenna, the GPS position will be logged on board; the averaging and statistical analysis will be as above.

The surveyor will need to take numerous shots to also obtain an average, due to the possible movement of the vessel while alongside.

## **8.3 Gyrocompass**

Utmost care is required for the installation of the gyrocompass. The gyrocompass is a sensor that cannot be situated randomly. The purpose of the gyrocompass is to measure the vessel's heading. To do this, the gyrocompass should be placed on the centre line running from the bow stem to the midpoint of the stern. If it is not possible to place the gyrocompass on the centreline of the vessel, it can be mounted on a parallel to the centre line.

All survey grade gyrocompasses will be plainly marked for alignment on the centre line. This marking may be an etched line fore and aft on the mounting plate, or possibly metal pins on the front and the back of the housing that point down. If no marking exists, then measuring the fore and aft faces and finding the centre may be sufficient.

No matter how well the gyrocompass is placed, there exists a possible error between the true vessel's heading and the gyrocompass derived heading. Any new installation of a gyrocompass should include a gyrocompass calibration. There are various methods to perform a gyrocompass calibration; the best method employed will be determined by the location of the vessel, the time allotted for the calibration and the resources at hand.

### **8.3.1 Gyrocompass Calibration Methods**

After the installation of gyrocompass (henceforth termed gyro) on a vessel, that gyro should be calibrated to ensure that the heading it determines is the true heading of the vessel.

If the error is large, the gyro can be physically rotated to align itself with the true vessel heading. Small errors can be corrected, either by internal adjustment to the gyro or in the software that receives the gyro reading.

#### **8.3.1.1 Standard Land Survey Technique**

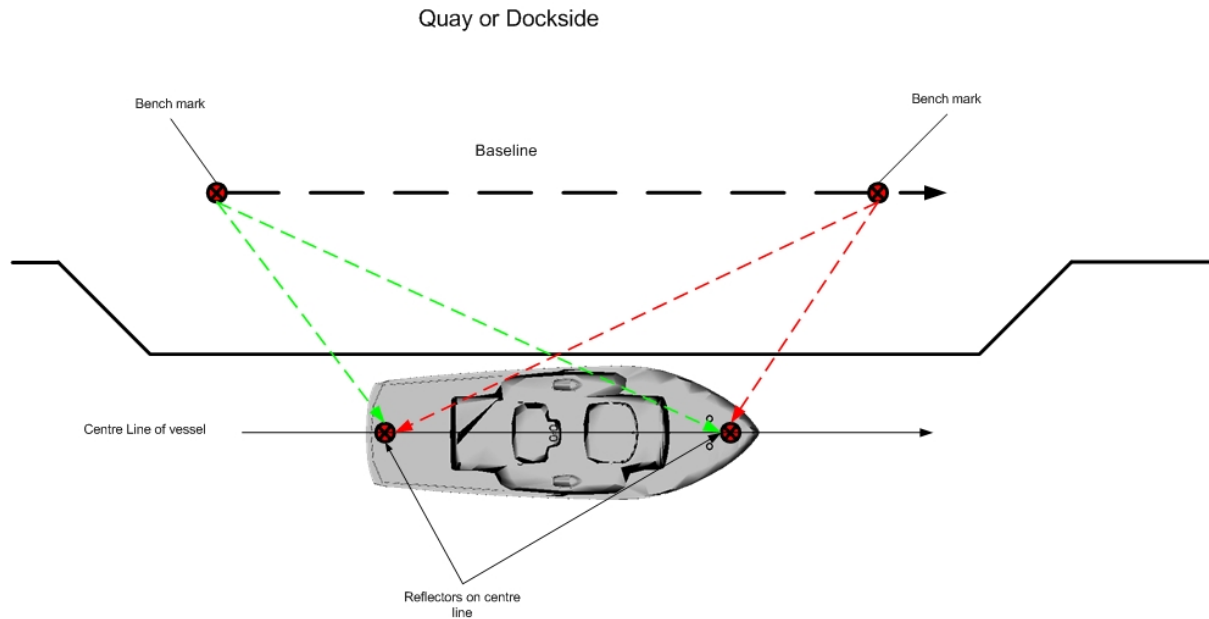
One of the most accurate methods to determine the gyro error involves the use of standard recognised land survey techniques. The time and equipment involved require that a substantial period is allotted for such a calibration.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

- If possible, the vessel will be berthed alongside a quay or dock that has a survey benchmark located nearby.
- If a survey benchmark is not located close to the berth, then the surveyor will have to run a transit from the nearest, suitable, local survey benchmark to establish a point on the quay that has a well-defined position. From this point, another point should be established along the quay to form a baseline.
- When the vessel comes alongside, all lines should be made as taut as possible. The gyro should be allowed 2 hours to settle down after the vessel has come alongside.
- The stern of the vessel should be measured, with a metal tape, to determine the centre point of the stern. A survey reflector will be placed at this position. Another survey reflector will be placed exactly at the bow. It will be verified that the reflectors are accurately placed on the centre line of the vessel by either measurements or survey techniques.
- The surveyor will set up on one benchmark; a round of readings will be taken from the benchmark to the fore and aft reflectors. Simultaneous to this, the survey personnel will record the gyro heading as it is read by the survey computer. Any variation between the digital output and the physical gyro reading should be remedied before the commencement of readings. It is recommended that the personnel on the vessel and the surveyors on the quay be in constant communication to assist in coordinating the measurements.
- One round of readings will be considered to be not less than 30 sets, a set being one reading each from the bow and stern reflectors.
- Upon completion of the round from benchmark one, the surveyor will move to benchmark two and repeat the process.
- Upon the completion of all rounds, from the two benchmarks, the vessel will turn about. With the vessel, now heading on the reciprocal heading, the gyro will be allowed at least 1 hour to settle down.
- When the gyro has been given sufficient time to settle down, a further series of range and bearing measurements will be made in the same manner as before.

When all readings are completed, the surveyor will calculate the azimuth between the two survey reflectors for each set of readings. The azimuth readings will be compared with the headings taken on board the vessel from the gyro itself. If there has been little or no movement of the vessel, an average can be taken of the azimuths and for the gyro readings and compared. By calculating the standard deviation of the readings, the surveyor can determine the degree of movement during the recording process. If the deviation is greater than the stated accuracy of the gyro, the comparison readings should be based on simultaneous time.

If physical adjustments are required, they should be made and the calibration process repeated. If the adjustment is determined to be minor and can be accounted for in the survey software, the correction value should be entered and then verified using the calibration process. This check of the calibration value can be an abbreviated version of the calibration process detailed above.



**Figure 159: Gyrocompass Calibration method 1**

- Quayside Benchmarks have known geodetic positions.
- Measure Range and Bearing to reflectors on the vessel centre line.
- Using Range and Bearing to reflectors, determine a geodetic position for reflectors.
- Calculate bearing from the stern reflector to bow reflector will give the true heading of the vessel.
- True heading of the vessel is then compared to gyrocompass reading taken at the same time as the Range and Bearing measurements.
- Benchmarks do not have to be on the quay but should be in a position to give accurate Range and Bearing to the reflectors.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 8.3.1.2 Tape and Offset Method of Gyro Calibration

This method relies on measuring the offset distance from a baseline on the quay, with a known azimuth, to a baseline that is established on the vessel. There are greater areas for error when using this method, particularly in establishing a baseline with known azimuth.

A baseline is established on the quay as close as possible to the vessel's side. It is very important that the azimuth of this baseline be as accurately determined as possible. The baseline should be of a length that will exceed the baseline that is established on the vessel.

A baseline is established on the vessel that is parallel to the centre line of the vessel. It should not be assumed that the side of the vessel is parallel to the centre line. This baseline should be on the deck that faces the dock. The baseline on the vessel should be as long as possible, the longer the better.

With the vessel secured alongside the quay, the vessel baseline will be compared to the quayside baseline. Two points will be established on the quayside baseline that corresponds exactly to the fore and aft positions on the vessel baseline. That is: the points that are established on the quayside baseline should be normal to the points on the vessel baseline.

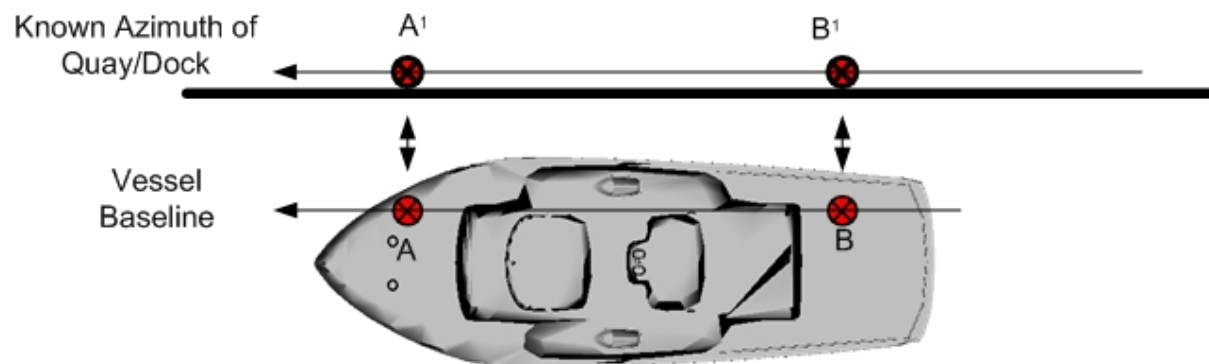


Figure 160: Gyro Calibration Method 2

The example, below, will illustrate the math involved.

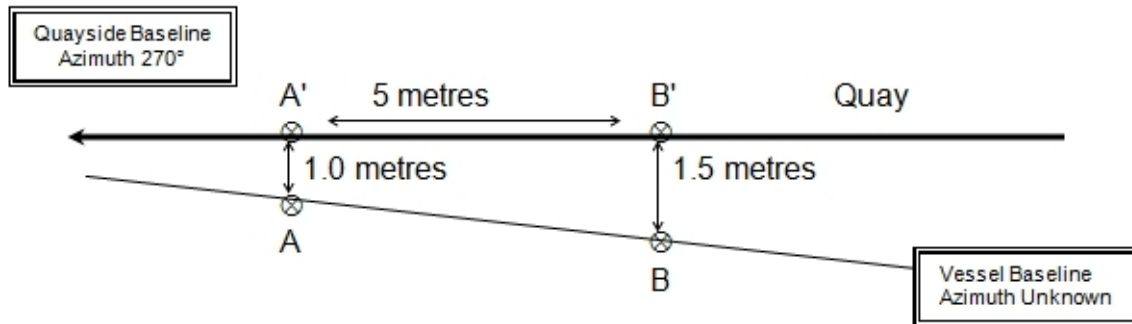


Figure 161: Gyro Calibration Method 2 example

|                                            |                       |                |                               |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>A to A'</b>                             | 1.0 metres            | <b>B to B'</b> | 1.5 metres                    |
| <b>Side a</b>                              | 5.0 metres            | <b>Side b</b>  | 1.5 – 1.0 = <b>0.5 metres</b> |
| <b>Angle b'</b>                            | Arctan 0.5/5.0 = 5.7° |                |                               |
| Ship Azimuth = 270° + 5.7° = <b>275.7°</b> |                       |                |                               |

Table 16: Gyro Calibration Method 2 computation

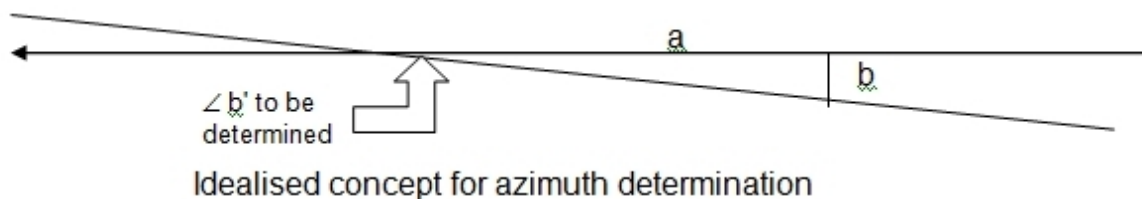


Figure 162: Idealised concept of Gyro Calibration Method 2

In this example, the vessel heading for this set of readings is  $275.7^\circ$ ; this would be compared to the gyro reading recorded at the same time the offsets were measured.

In the above example, if the bow was further out from the quay than the stern, the angle  $b'$  would be subtracted from the azimuth of the quay, i.e.  $270^\circ - 5.7^\circ = 264.3^\circ$ .

## 8.4 The Motion Sensor

The motion sensor is used to determine the attitude of the vessel in terms of pitch, roll and heave. Pitch is the movement of the bow going up and down. Roll is the movement of the port and starboard side going up and down. Heave is the vessel going up and down.

The sonar head is physically attached to the vessel; as the vessel moves, so does the sonar head. The motion sensor reports the movements of the vessel to the data collection software; the data collection software, using the offsets to the motion sensor and to the sonar head, computes the movement at the sonar head to correct the multibeam data for pitch, roll and heave.

One important aspect of the motion sensor is the sign convention used by the motion sensor as compared to the sign convention used in the collecting software. The surveyor must be aware of the convention that is used and what adjustments are necessary, if any, to ensure that the convention is consistent with the data collection computer.

There exist two major areas of thought as to where the motion sensor should be situated. One group believes that the motion sensor should go as close to the multibeam as possible, even if the multibeam is mounted on an over-the-side pole. The second group believes the motion sensor should be placed as close to the centre of rotation for the vessel as possible.

Placing the motion sensor on the hydrophone pole would seem to solve for all movement of the pole itself, but in fact, the motion sensor, mounted in this fashion, can provide false attitude measurements. This is particularly true when there is significant roll; the motion sensor on the pole can interpret a portion of this roll as heave, which is not true. By placing the motion sensor as close to the centre of rotation (also called the centre of gravity) as possible, only the real heave of the vessel will be measured. All software will solve for the motion of the sonar head, based on the offsets that have been entered into the setup files for the vessel configuration; this is called a lever arm adjustment. The other consideration is that the motion data is usually applied to the GPS antenna. The GPS antenna is usually mounted high on the vessel, so any pitch or roll will induce a large amount of movement in the GPS antenna thus providing a false position due to the antenna movement. If the motion sensor is mounted on the hydrophone pole, it is reporting an exaggerated motion because it is far from the centre of motion of the vessel; this exaggerated motion then would be applied to the GPS antenna position and the vessel position computation would be in error.

The other consideration is that the alignment of the motion sensor must be on or parallel to the centre line of the vessel; it is essential to prevent 'bleed-over' of pitch and roll. If the motion sensor is not aligned with the centre line, when the vessel rolls some of the roll will be seen as pitch as the motion sensor's accelerometers and gyros are not aligned with the axes of the vessel it is mounted on. It is more difficult to obtain this precise alignment if the motion sensor is placed on the pole.

**Mount the motion sensor as close to the centre of rotation (or centre of gravity as possible) and perfectly aligned to the centre line of the vessel.**

The motion sensor should be mounted on as level a platform as possible. After mounting the motion sensor, the actual 'mounting angles' should be measured. Some motion sensors contain internal programs that can measure the mounting angles. Some data collection software packages also include the capability to measure mounting angles. The mounting angles are the measured degrees of the actual physical mounting of the motion sensor. This is to compensate for sloping or warped decks. Many decks have some slope to them, and this should be accounted for to ensure that the pitch and roll values that the motion sensor derives are for vessel movement and not for its physical mounting on the deck. The mounting angles should be measured before any multibeam calibration and not changed after the calibration.

Before measuring the mounting angles, the vessel should be put in good trim by the engineer. On a small vessel, it is important that the angles be measured without undue influence from people standing around. A false measurement can be induced by two people sitting on the gunwale having a conversation while the measuring process is being completed. It is usually a good idea to have all personnel leave a small vessel during the measuring process.

If the motion sensor mounting angles have been entered in the motion sensor or the data collection software, they can only be changed before the multibeam calibration (patch test); they are not to be changed after the patch test.

It is important to keep the motion sensor in mind when surveying. A motion sensor takes time to 'settle down' after a turn or a speed change, and most of the settling down will depend on the heave bandwidth that is entered into the motion sensor. Some motion sensors can take in position, speed and heading data to assist them in the settling process. Depending on the degree of the turn or the amount of the speed change a practical period of 2 minutes should be allowed for the motion sensor to settle. It is prudent to plan the survey to allow for a long enough 'run-in' to the start of data collection to allow the motion sensor time to settle and the heave normalise. If this is not done, many times motion artefacts or erroneous depths will be seen at the beginning of the line, and the processed data will not be correct.

Monitor the motion sensor (all data collection software provides a time series window to monitor individual data) to ensure that it is operating properly.

## 8.5 Sound Velocity Probes

There are two basic types of sound velocity probes. One type measures the parameters of sound velocity in water; those being **C**onductivity (Salinity), **T**emperature, and **D**epth (Pressure), these are normally referred to as CTD probes. The other type of probe contains a small transducer and has a reflecting plate, at a known distance from the transducer that reflects the sound; the time is measured for this transmission and the sound velocity determined by that measurement; these are called Time of Flight probes. There is a third type, known as the Expendable Bathythermograph (**XBT**) which is launched and as it passes through the water column sends back temperature readings (through two very thin wires); it is not recovered, it is expendable.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

The CTD and Time of Flight probes store the data internally. The data is downloaded to a computer after the probe is recovered.

### 8.5.1 CTD Probes

The CTD probe type of sound velocity probe has instruments to measure the conductivity of the water, water temperature, and a pressure sensor to measure depth. The CTD probe is a good choice if any of this information is also required; to obtain a sound velocity, a formula must be used.

There are various formulae available that are based on the parameters that are recorded by the CTD. The UNESCO algorithm is considered a universal standard and was put forth by C-T. Chen and F.J. Millero in 1977. The Chen-Millero (and Li) equation is complex as is Del Grosso's (1974) and have been termed Refined. Simple formula, such as Mackenzie's (1981), also yields good results.

When using a CTD, it is very important that the probe be allowed to sit, fully submerged, in the water for a few minutes prior to deploying it; this is to allow the probe to reach equilibrium with the water temperature. It is also important that the tube, through which the water flows past the sensors, is checked for obstructions or marine growth.

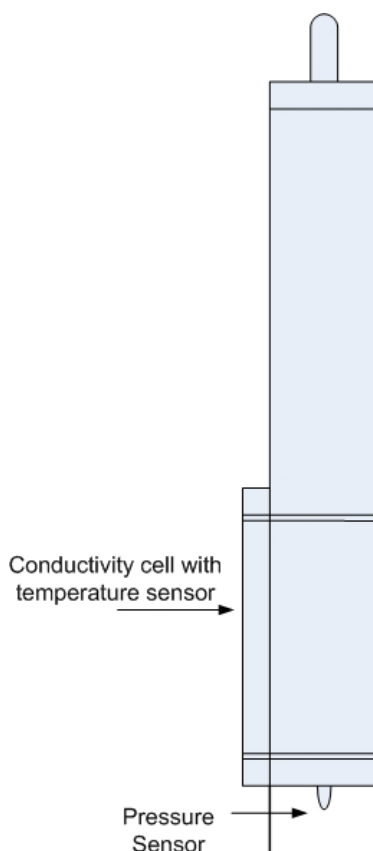


Figure 163: CTD Probe

### 8.5.2 Time of Flight Probe

The Time of Flight probe incorporates a transducer that transmits an acoustic pulse that reflects back from a plate that it is at a very precise distance from the transducer. The two-way travel time is measured, divided by 2, and the sound velocity determined. The Time of Flight probe is usually considered more accurate for multibeam survey work.

The sound velocity probe that is mounted close to the Sonic MBES sonar head is a time of flight probe.

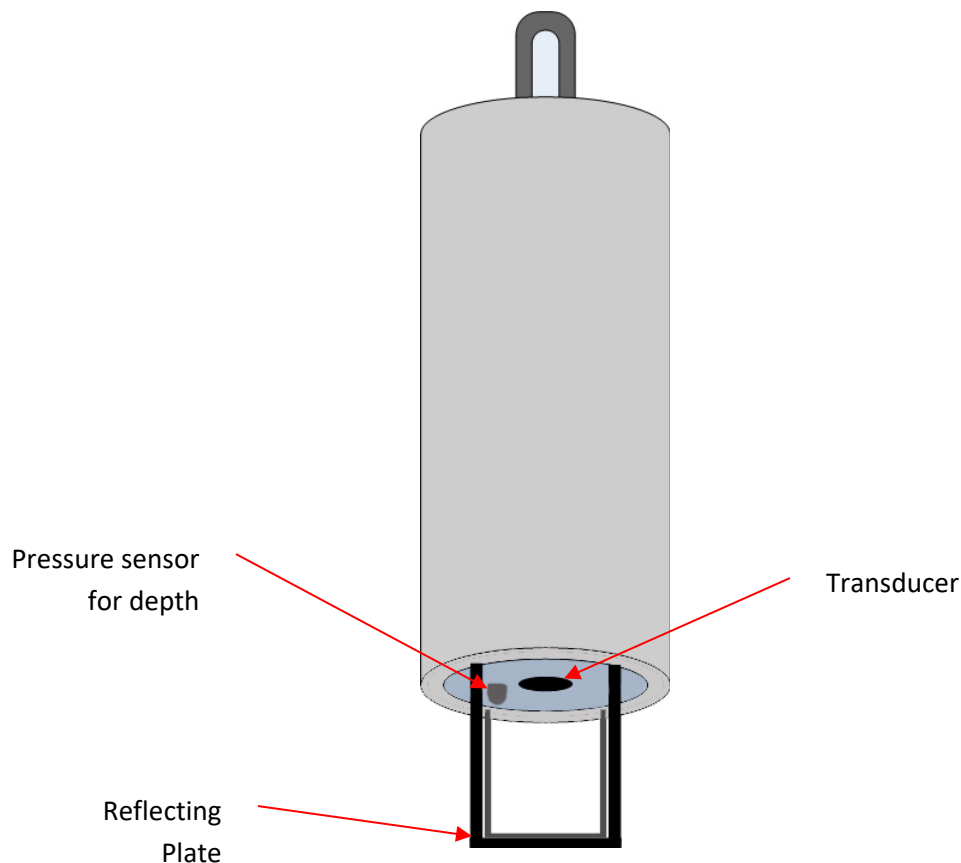


Figure 164: Time of Flight SV probe

### 8.5.3 XBT Probes

The XBT is a probe which free falls through the water column at a more or less constant speed (the probe is designed to fall at a known rate so that the depth can be inferred) and measures the temperature as it passes through the water column. Inside the probe is the thermograph, which is attached to a spool of very fine wire. Two very small wires transmit the temperature data from the probe back to a computer. The XBT is not recovered. XBT probes can be launched while underway

and are used extensively by Navy and Defence forces for rapid determination of the sound velocity without stopping the vessel.

## **8.6 The sound velocity cast**

There are no set rules for when to take a measurement of the water column sound velocity. Common sense is a good guideline. The conditions, detailed below, have a major influence as to when to take a sound velocity cast.

### **8.6.1 Time of Day**

Throughout the day the upper-level sound velocity characteristic will change mainly due to solar heating or cooling due to cloud cover or precipitation. Another main element of the time of day changes is tides.

When working in tidally influenced areas, the sound velocity can change drastically due to a salt wedge that moves in and out with the tide. The surveyor must be aware of the relationship of the time of the tide to the salt wedge.

### **8.6.2 Freshwater influx**

Any river, stream or runoff will drastically change the sound velocity through the introduction of freshwater and also through a temperature difference.

### **8.6.3 Water Depth**

The sound velocity cast should always be made in the deepest part of the survey area. The sound velocity profile cannot be extrapolated to deeper depths as there are too many possible variables.

### **8.6.4 Distance**

If the survey area is large, then it is quite possible that there will be differences across the range of the survey area even in open water.

### **8.6.5 Deploying and recovering the Sound Velocity Probe**

The guidelines for deploying and recovering the sound velocity probe are based on common sense but are sometimes ignored during the actual operation. The guidelines, below, are for a hand cast in shallow water. The softline, used for the cast, should be marked to provide an indication of the amount of line out.

#### ***8.6.5.1 Shallow water sound velocity cast/deployment by hand***

1. Plan where the cast is to be made.
  - a. In a small area, deploy in the deepest part of the survey area.
  - b. Always do a cast prior to starting the survey.
2. Liaise with the captain or officer of the watch with the plan position and time of deployment and time required for the cast.
3. Prepare the probe for casting (some probes may need to be programmed prior to each launch).
4. Secure the probe to the downline with a bowline knot or shackle.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

5. **Secure the bitter end of the downline to the vessel.**
6. Request permission, from the bridge or helm, to deploy and await their OK to launch.
  - a. Bridge or helm to ensure that the vessel is out of traffic.
  - b. Bridge or helm to assess wind and sea conditions and advise as to which side of the vessel the deployment should be made.
7. Put the probe in the water until it is totally covered and let it remain there for a period of time to acclimate to the sea temperature. This is very important with a CTD type of probe, but of less concern for a time-of-flight probe.
8. Verify the water depth.
9. Lower the probe at a constant rate; only the downcast should be used.
10. Try not to allow the probe to touch the bottom.
11. Recover the probe rapidly.
12. As soon as the probe is on deck, notify the bridge or helm that they are free to manoeuvre, but remain in the area.
13. Rinse the probe with fresh water and dry thoroughly.
14. Download the cast and verify that it looks good.
15. Load the cast into the data collection software.

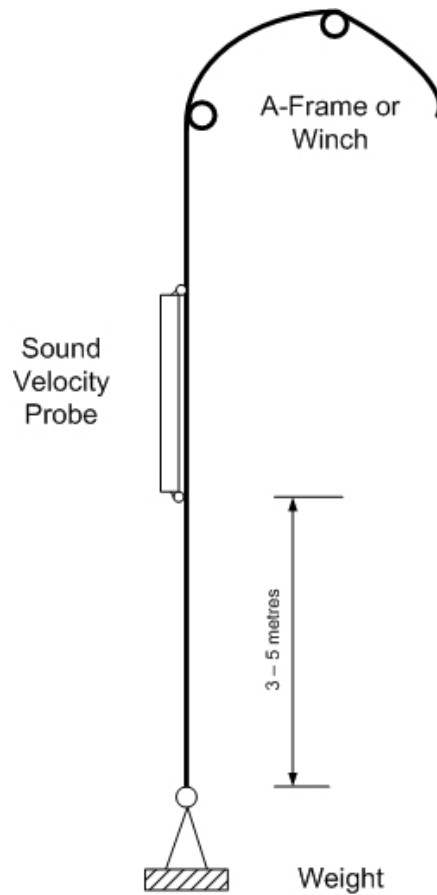
#### ***8.6.5.2 Deep Water Cast / Deployment by mechanical means***

A cast in deeper water requires more preparation and planning. A deepwater cast can be considered to be any cast that is deployed via an 'A' Frame, winch, or other mechanical means. Even a shallow water cast can fall under this definition when mechanical means are used.

One of the main concerns, in a deep water cast, is that the probe will not go straight down due to the current flow or vessel drift due to wind and/or currents. This being the case, weights must be used to ensure the cable (and probe) go as straight down as possible.

Unless the sound velocity probe is designed to have an additional weight attached to it, no weights should be attached to the sound velocity probe. The weights, which enable deployment as straight as possible, are attached to the end of the cable. The probe should be attached to the cable approximately 3 – 5 metres above the weights; if the weights hit bottom, this should provide enough scope for the probe to land clear of the weights.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



**Figure 165: Deploying a sound velocity probe via a winch or A-Frame**

The other major consideration, when deploying a probe in deeper water, is that the vessel must be stationary longer and will drift. If there is a large variation in depths, the depth where the probe went in, may not be the same depth when the probe reaches the bottom. It is essential that enough cable is deployed to ensure a full profile to the sea floor.

# APPENDIX III: Multibeam Surveying

---

## 9 APPENDIX III: Multibeam Surveying

### 9.1 Introduction

Multibeam surveying affords the surveyor with many advantages, but it also requires more thought behind the survey itself.

### 9.2 Survey Design

Multibeam surveying survey planning is very different than single beam survey planning. The main considerations are line spacing and line direction. In single beam surveying, lines are normally spaced based on the scale of the desired chart. The line direction is normally at the discretion of the surveyor. In multibeam surveying, the surveyor has to plan the survey carefully, with thought to overlap between adjacent lines and the direction that those lines are run.

#### 9.2.1 Line Spacing

The entire concept of multibeam surveying is based on the swath coverage that defines the multibeam system. The survey lines should be designed so that there is 100% overlap in coverage between adjacent lines. As swath width is a function of water depth, it follows that the spacing between lines may not be constant. Looking at a chart of the survey area, the surveyor should be able to determine the swath width that will be obtained and can design the line spacing accordingly.

A large overlap in swath coverage is required due to various factors. One prime factor is roll. As the vessel rolls, the swath coverage will vary in relation to this roll. If the vessel rolls to port (port-side down), the swath coverage on the port side will be lessened, whereas the swath coverage on the starboard side will increase. If there is not sufficient overlap in swath coverage, there could be gaps in coverage, between adjacent lines, due to the roll.

If the helmsman has problems keeping the vessel on the designated line, this could cause gaps if the vessel goes offline to opposite directions on adjacent lines.

Unexpected shallows will reduce the swath coverage. If the lines are designed with very little overlap, a shallow area on the lines will see reduced swath coverage and the possibility of gaps between the lines.

#### 9.2.2 Line Direction

In single beam surveying, the usual practice is to survey normally to the contours. The concept is to cut the contours at 90° to obtain the best definition of the slope. Multibeam survey is exactly opposite of this; in multibeam survey, the lines are planned to survey parallel to the contours. Multibeam surveying can be likened to side scan surveying; the best definition is obtained when the

slope is within the port or starboard swath coverage. There will be poor definition of the slope covered by the nadir beams, as they act similar to a single beam echo sounder.

In setting up the survey lines, if the lines were to run up and downslope, the spacing would have to vary between the start and the end of the lines, as the swath coverage would vary due to the change in water depth. The lines would not be parallel. By surveying along the contours, the depths will remain more or less constant so that the spacing does not have to change from beginning to end. However, the spacing between adjoining lines may vary due to increased or decreased depth.

### **9.2.3 Line Run-in**

As was previously noted, it is good survey practice to allow the motion sensor and gyro time to settle after making a turn. With this in mind, the surveyor should set up the survey lines so that an adequate lead-in, before the start of data recording, is allowed.

Extra lead in time allows the helmsman the opportunity to get on to the line and make any adjustments that are necessary to counteract wind or current conditions. It is much better for the vessel to be a little off of the planned survey line, but heading in a straight direction, rather than ‘fish-tailing’ back on forth across the line, trying to maintain zero offline.

Surveying into a beach may only allow very limited run-in if the lines are also to be surveyed out from the beach. In this case, it may be better to design the lines so that they run parallel to the beach. Of course, if it shallows greatly towards the beach, the lines should be run parallel to this slope anyway as detailed above.

## **9.3 Record Keeping**

It is essential that detailed records be kept of all aspects of the multibeam survey. The logging of all details of the survey will greatly assist those in charge of processing the data. Maintaining a vessel log, that reflects offsets, draft measurements, sound velocity profiles, etc.; will give the surveyor a reference that can be easily accessed. The more information that is logged, the easier it will be during processing, and it will also provide the surveyor with a means to assess survey technique with a view to improving the efficiency of the survey.

### **9.3.1 Vessel Record**

A hardbound ledger book should be kept for the vessel record. The vessel record should include, but is not limited to:

- Diagram of the vessel with measurements
- All offsets
- Daily draft measurements
- Diary of sound velocity profiles
- Surveyors / Operators
- Equipment list
- Equipment interface information
- Diary reflecting dates of individual surveys

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

The vessel record is meant to be a quick reference for general information that is required for multibeam surveying. Some of the information does not change from survey to survey and should go either in the front of the book or the back of the book. A section of pages can then be devoted to the information that does change from survey to survey or day to day.

As an example:

- Page 1 – Plan of the vessel with all vessel measurements
- Page 2/5 – Plan of the vessel with all offsets
- Page 6/9 – Equipment list and interfacing information
- Pages 10/20 – Dates of individual surveys with a listing of surveyors responsible for those surveys
- Pages 21/40 – Diary of draft measurements
- Pages 41/60 – Diary of sound velocity measurements

As can be seen, this is a general reference which can provide dates and general details.

When naming surveys and sound velocities, a certain degree of logic in their naming will greatly assist deciphering an individual event out of many events. In the case of sound velocity profiles, it is common to name the profiles for the date that they were taken. A sound velocity profile taken on 04 July 2015 would be referred to as 20150704. If more than one profile is taken during the day, then a letter suffix can be added: 20150704a, to separate the profiles, or time of cast can be added to the file name. Keep in mind that personnel, who were not on board during the data collection, may need to reference the information; keeping it logical and chronological will help.

Ensure that many blank pages are kept for the various categories. When a book is filled, plainly mark on the cover the inclusive dates that the vessel log covers. If possible, also mark this information along the spine of the vessel log. These logs should be kept in a safe and dry place on the vessel.

### 9.3.2 Daily Survey Log

The Daily Survey Log is where all the details of the survey are recorded: start/stop time of the lines, line names, and line direction, the speed of survey, and comments about that survey line. A copy of the appropriate survey log should accompany all multibeam data along its path during processing.

Daily Survey Logs are of two types: rough and smooth. The smooth log is a sheet that is arranged in rows and columns, where the appropriate survey information is entered, much like a spreadsheet. It can be a single sheet that is printed out on board, or it can be professionally produced pad of sheets. The rough log is similar to the vessel log; it is normally a ledger book; the start/stop times, line name, line direction and comments are entered line by line, usually on the right-hand page as they occur. The left-hand page then is left for details of the draft, sound velocity profile data, tides or any other information that is pertinent to the lines that are detailed on the right-hand page.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

A copy of the survey log is sent along with the multibeam data to processing and a copy is kept on board the vessel.

An example of the information on a smooth log:

- Sensor offsets
- Calibration offsets
- Date
- Survey name, area and surveyors
- Name of sound velocity file
- Name of tide file
- Vessel name
- Start/Stop time of survey line
- Line name
- Direction
- Comments

Due to the nature of a single sheet type log, the information should be entered on each sheet, even though many items do not change from one day to the next.

With the logbook style of the daily log, the items that do not change can be listed on one page so that everything following that page will be under those parameters (offsets, vessel name etc.). The right-hand page will include the start/stop times, line name, direction and comments. The left-hand page, as noted above, is for additional information. A further advantage to using a logbook is the space available to sketch diagrams of the survey or other visual aids that might make the survey easier to understand.

The surveyor uses a log book to record the data as it occurs. A daily survey log sheet can be created in any word processor or spreadsheet program. At a convenient time, the surveyor can call a sheet up, within the appropriate program, enter the data and print it out. This has many advantages; the most obvious is that the daily log sheet is typed in and printed out making it very legible to read; it can be stored down to memory, making a permanent record.

Although maintaining a good detailed log of daily survey events may be difficult to get used to, after a short time the advantages will become obvious.

80 Meters Line Spacing

E 365845  
N 4162200

Lines Numbered for N to S.

2nd Run

Cm 123 364585 E  
4162187 N

Going to Line 12 by Rock and a run  
high tide.

V/L to Por O/L (40 meters South)

Going to Line 23 just South of  
Line 11

1012 Line 1 → 270° 9.5 Kts drop  
1015 7.5 Kts  
1019 EOL 1  
1023 Line 1A → 090° 7.3 Kts For R.  
1031 EOL 1A Run Ck Ck  
1034 Line 2 → 270°  
1042 EOL 2  
1044 Line 3 → 090° 7.2 Kts  
1052 EOL 3  
1055 Line 4 → 270°  
1102 EOL 4  
1105 Line 5 → 090°  
1105 @ SOL No jump very unstable  
due to jump 1st 5 minutes  
Line to be to close  
1113 EOL 5  
1115 Line 6 → 270° 7.5 Kts  
1122 EOL 6  
1127 Line 12 → 090° 7.3 Kts  
1135 EOL Rock on STD 5.1 N  
1137 Line 11 → 270° 7.4 Kts  
1145 EOL 11  
1148 Line 10 → 090°  
1156 EOL 10  
1158 Line 9 → 270° 7.6 Kts  
1205 EOL 9  
1208 Line 7 → 090°  
1215 EOL 7  
1219 Line 8 → 270°  
1226 EOL 8

END OF E/W Lines

Figure 166: Rough log, kept during survey operations.

(Log does not need to be neat, but must contain all pertinent information)

| <b>2002 Sydney Harbour Survey</b>                                                                                                                 |                         |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|-------------|------------------|--|------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|-----------|-------------------------|
| <b>DATE:</b> 13 May 2002 (UTC)                                                                                                                    |                         |                                                                  | <b>SURVEY NAME:</b> Area B/ Area A         |                        |                  |              | <b>PAGE/PAGES</b> 1/1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| <b>Vessel:</b> 440                                                                                                                                |                         |                                                                  | <b>All Times in UTC (UTC = LOCAL - 10)</b> |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| <b>OFFSET INFORMATION (metres)</b>                                                                                                                |                         |                                                                  |                                            | <b>NB Draft change</b> |                  |              | <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 15%;">SV Profiles</td> <td>20020512_2300UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>20020513_2240UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tide File</td> <td>200205_11-15UTC.tid.txt</td> </tr> </table> |  |  | SV Profiles | 20020512_2300UTC |  | 20020513_2240UTC |  |  |  |  |  |  | Tide File | 200205_11-15UTC.tid.txt |
| SV Profiles                                                                                                                                       | 20020512_2300UTC        |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   | 20020513_2240UTC        |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   |                         |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   |                         |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   |                         |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| Tide File                                                                                                                                         | 200205_11-15UTC.tid.txt |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   | <b>X</b>                | <b>Y</b>                                                         | <b>Z</b>                                   | <b>Pitch</b>           | <b>Roll</b>      | <b>Yaw</b>   | <b>Latency</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| Multibeam                                                                                                                                         | 0.0                     | 4.21                                                             | -1.00                                      | 0.673°                 | 0.692°           | 3.43°        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| Motion Sens                                                                                                                                       | 0.0                     | 0.0                                                              | 0.295                                      |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| DGPS                                                                                                                                              | -1.40                   | -3.40                                                            | 3.38                                       |                        |                  |              | 0 (Used PPS)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| <b>GEODESY</b>                                                                                                                                    |                         | <b>Datum:</b> WGS 84 <b>Projection:</b> UTM Zone 56S (CM 153° E) |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| <b>Start</b>                                                                                                                                      | <b>Stop</b>             | <b>Line Name</b>                                                 |                                            |                        | <b>Direction</b> | <b>Speed</b> | <b>Comments</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0021                                                                                                                                              | 0033                    | 0042 Area B (200)                                                |                                            |                        | 038°             | 5.1 kts      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0038                                                                                                                                              | 0052                    | 0043 Area B (190)                                                |                                            |                        | 218°             | 4.4 kts      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0058                                                                                                                                              | 0107                    | 0044 Area B (180)                                                |                                            |                        | 038°             | 5.4 kts      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0111                                                                                                                                              | 0118                    | 0045 Area B (170)                                                |                                            |                        | 218°             | 4.2 kts      | Stop line, computer not responding well.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0126                                                                                                                                              | 0137                    | 0046 Area B (170)                                                |                                            |                        | 218°             | 4.0 kts      | Completion of above line after circle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0140                                                                                                                                              | 0150                    | 0047 Area B (160)                                                |                                            |                        | 038°             | 5.2 kts      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0157                                                                                                                                              | 0211                    | 0048 Area B (150)                                                |                                            |                        | 218°             | 4.0 kts      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0225                                                                                                                                              | 0225                    | 0049 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              | Infill Lines various headings and speeds                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0228                                                                                                                                              | 0229                    | 0050 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0232                                                                                                                                              | 0232                    | 0051 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0234                                                                                                                                              | 0235                    | 0052 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0235                                                                                                                                              | 0237                    | 0053 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0237                                                                                                                                              | 0238                    | 0054 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0242                                                                                                                                              | 0243                    | 0055 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0246                                                                                                                                              | 0246                    | 0056 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 0248                                                                                                                                              | 0249                    | 0057 Area B (Infill)                                             |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   |                         | <b>STOP AREA B SURVEY</b>                                        |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   |                         | <b>START AREA A SURVEY</b>                                       |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 2240                                                                                                                                              |                         | SV Profile 20020513_2240UTC                                      |                                            |                        |                  |              | 33° 50' 9S, 151° 12' 0E; 333470E, 6253200N                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 2315                                                                                                                                              | 2325                    | 0001 Western Centreline                                          |                                            |                        | 297°             | 5.2 kts      | @2321 noise on starboard side due to other vessel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 2334                                                                                                                                              | 2347                    | 0002 Western Centreline (25)                                     |                                            |                        | 117°             | 4.4 kts      | @2340 Mouse button stuck, range ran too shallow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| 2351                                                                                                                                              | 2358                    | 0003 Western Centreline (-25)                                    |                                            |                        | 297°             | 4.4 kts      | Stop line - Lost differentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
|                                                                                                                                                   |                         | <b>LAST ENTRY</b>                                                |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |
| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-top: 20px;"> <div>Surveyor: Charles W. Brennan</div> <div>Signed: </div> </div> |                         |                                                                  |                                            |                        |                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |             |                  |  |                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |           |                         |

Figure 167: Smooth log; information copied from a real-time survey log

# APPENDIX IV: Offset Measurements

## 10 APPENDIX IV: Offset Measurements

### 10.1 Lever Arm Measurement – Offsets

Each component or sensor that produces information, unique to its position, will have a point that is considered the reference point of that sensor. The Sonic MBES, the motion sensor, and the GPS antenna will have a documented point from which to measure. The gyrocompass' data is not dependent on its position on the vessel so, therefore, does not require an offset measurement.

### 10.2 Vessel Reference System

When all equipment (Sonic MBES sonar head, motion sensor, gyrocompass and GPS) have been permanently mounted, the physical offsets to a central reference point (CRP) must be measured. The central reference point (CRP) or vessel reference point (VRP) is that point that the surveyor chooses to be the origin for the X and Y grid that will define the horizontal relationship between all of the sensors. The vertical or Z reference can be the water line or another logical vertical reference. Generally, the CRP corresponds to the centre of gravity or rotation of the vessel. All of the sensors must have their physical relationship to each other measured and entered into the data collection software or the processing software.

All offsets, between sensors, are defined by an X, Y and Z offset from a reference (CRP or VRP) point. In most survey software, the X-axis runs athwartship, i.e. from the port side to the starboard side; the Y-axis runs alongship from the bow to the stern. The Z axis runs perpendicular through the reference. The origin is usually located at the vessel's centre of gravity or centre of rotation. The sign convention is standard for a Cartesian plane, translated to a vessel: starboard of the reference point is positive, forward of the reference point is positive. The sign for Z may differ, depending on the data collection or processing software.

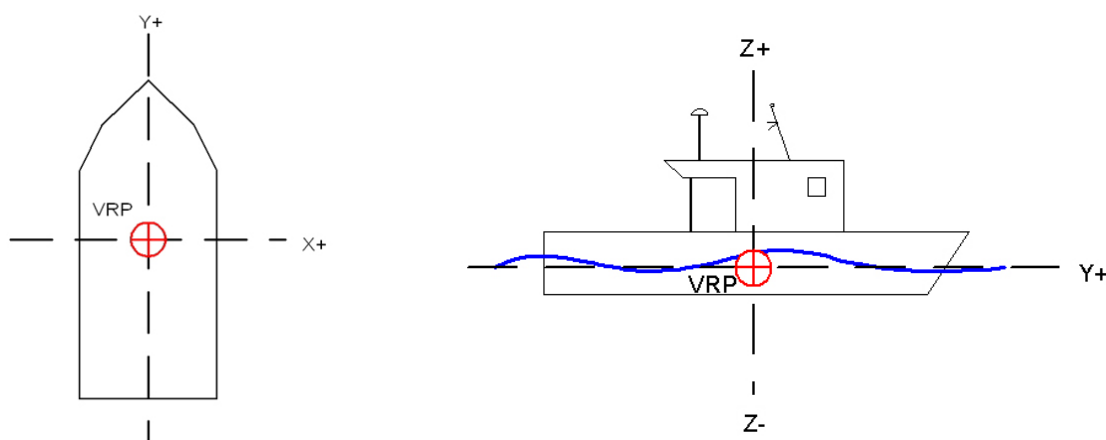


Figure 168: Vessel Horizontal and Vertical reference system

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | REV | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 10.3 Measuring Offsets

The accurate measurement of offsets is vital to the accuracy of the survey data. If possible, the vessel will be put on a hard stand so that it can be very accurately measured using standard land survey equipment, such as a total station. However, this may not be possible and the offsets will have to be measured using tape and plumb-bob, which is detailed below.

### 10.3.1 Sonic MBES Acoustic Centre

Please refer to the drawings appendix to obtain measurements, with reference to the system offsets, when mounting on the Sonic mounting frame.

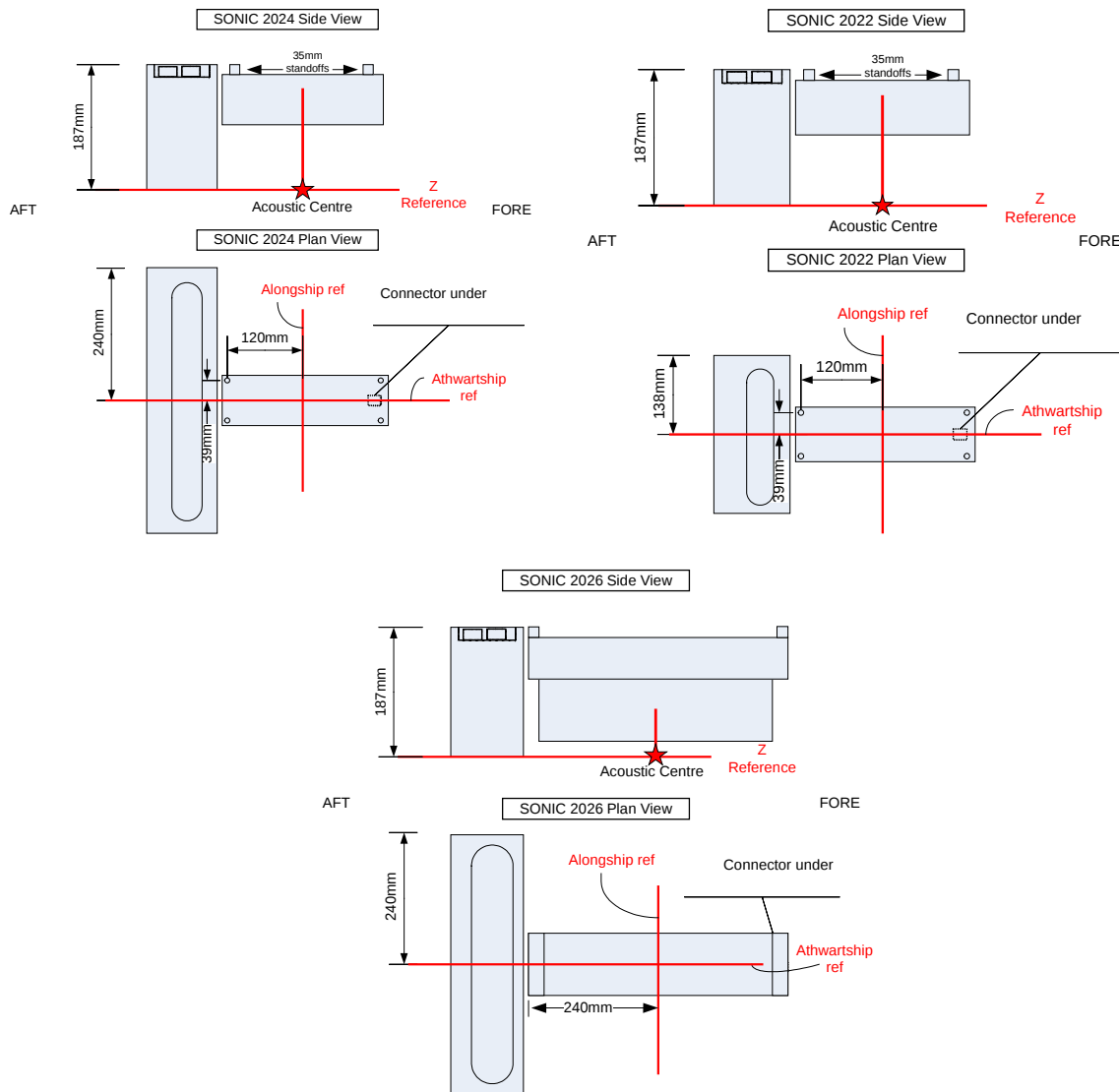


Figure 169: Sonic 2026/2024/2022 Acoustic Centre

### 10.3.2 Horizontal Measurement

All measurements should be made with a metal tape measure. A cloth tape can stretch, it can also be knotted or kinked, unknown to the persons making the measurements. At a minimum, two people should be assigned to take the measurements; three people will work better with the third person writing down the measurements. One person will be the holder, and the other will be the reader. Starting at either the reference point or the sensor, the distance will be measured. When

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

either the reference point or the sensor is reached, the two people will reverse roles: the holder is now the reader, and the reader is the holder, the transverse is made back to the point of beginning, but not using the same path. If reference marks were made on the first leg, they should not be used on the second leg back. If the measurement from the sensor to the reference point, in one direction, agrees with the measurement in the opposite direction, made by a different reader and holder, then the offset is good. If there is a small disagreement in measurements, the two measurements can be averaged. If there is a large disagreement, then the process should be repeated. What is a small disagreement? A few centimetres can be expected.

### 10.3.3 Vertical Measurement

To measure elevations or the Z offset, the use of a plumb bob is required. This can be something as simple as a spanner tied to a length of line and lowered from one deck to the next. The plumb bob will also allow for accurate measurements in the X and Y direction when transposing them from one deck to the other.

The plumb bob works, of course, by gravity so generally points to the centre of the earth. This being the case, if the vessel is not in good trim, i.e. has a list, the resting position of the plumb bob may not be at the true vertical point under the place from which it is being held. This is very critical when transposing X and Y measurements from one deck to another.

The draft of a vessel will not be constant. Before going out on a survey, the fuel and water may be filled up, causing the vessel to settle lower in the water. Possibly fewer people are on board causing the vessel to rise higher in the water. The main concept here is that the draft of the sonar head changes. All X and Y offsets remain the same as long as the sensors are not moved, but the Z offset changes constantly depending on the draft of the vessel.

If possible, the pole should be marked to show the depth of the head. Measuring up from the sonar head's acoustical reference, rings can be painted on the pole in 10 cm (or other) increments, with 2 cm hatching between rings. The surveyor may have to observe the pole over the course of a few minutes to determine where the water line is and would then estimate the depth by interpolating between the 10 cm depth rings.

Another method would be for the surveyor to initially measure from the sonar head's acoustical reference to the top of the hydrophone pole. This is the total pole measurement. At the start of a survey day, the surveyor will go to the pole and measure from the top of the pole to the water line (using the tape measure and plumb bob or similar weight), this is called the dry measurement. Taking the dry measurement from the total pole measurement yields the wet measurement, which is the draft of the sonar head. Due to wave motion, the surveyor may have to take a series of measurements to ensure an accurate reading.

When the draft or Z of the sonar head is determined the Z for the GPS antenna and the motion sensor can be adjusted accordingly, if the Z reference is the water line. In most data collection software a Z shift, in relation to the water surface, can be entered in for the CRP, which will make the vertical adjustment for all offsets

It is very important that when measuring the draft on small vessels that the person taking the measurement does not unduly cause the vessel to list towards that side. Having someone counterbalance the weight of the person taking the measurement is a good idea. This is also true of

any temporary list the vessel is experiencing. On small survey vessels, a person leaning over the side, to take the draft measurement, can induce upwards, or exceeding a 10cm error in depth readings during survey operation.

On some vessels, it is advisable to take draft readings during the survey or immediately after completion of the survey, as the draft will change that much.

All offset information should be recorded in the daily survey log and the vessel's permanent survey record.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

# APPENDIX V: The Patch Test

## 11 APPENDIX V: The Patch Test

### 11.1 Introduction

The alignment of the Sonic MBES sonar head to the motion sensor and gyro is critical to the accuracy of the determined depths. It is not possible to install the sonar head in exact alignment with the motion sensor and gyro to the accuracy required ( $x.xx^\circ$ ). If GPS time synchronisation is not used, the latency of the position, as reported by the GPS, must also be measured during the calibration. This being the case a multibeam calibration must be performed to measure the angular misalignment between the Sonic MBES and the motion sensor and gyro and, if necessary, the position latency; this is called the Patch Test.

The patch test is performed with each new installation or whenever a sensor is moved. In the case of an over-the-side mount, a large number of calibration computations need to be performed to determine how well the pole goes back into the same position each time it is deployed. With more permanent mounting arrangements, a minimum of 5 separate patch tests should be conducted to derive a standard deviation that would indicate the accuracy of the derived values.

The patch test involves collecting data over certain types of bottom terrain and processing the data through a set of patch test tools. There are two primary methods of processing the data that are currently used: an interactive graphical approach and an automatic, iterative surface match. Each of these techniques has strengths and weaknesses and the preferred approach is dependent on the types of terrain features available to the surveyor. All modern multibeam data collection software packages contain a patch test routine. Please read the software manual for explicit information regarding the requirements for that software's patch test. The below criteria is, in general, the norm for a patch test.

### 11.2 The orientation of the Sonic MBES Sonar Head

The orientation of the sonar head must be known to convert the measured slant ranges to depths and to determine the position of each of the determined depths.

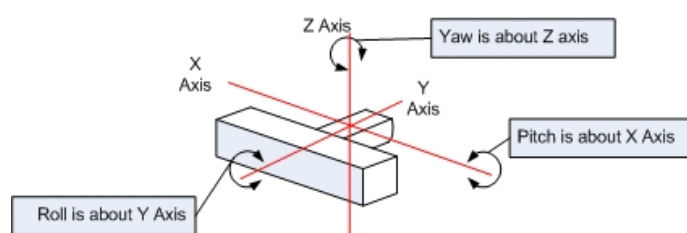


Figure 170: Sonic MBES axes of rotation

Any error in the measured roll of the Sonic MBES sonar head can cause substantial errors in the conversion from slant range to depth. A roll error of  $1^\circ$  on a 50 m slant range will cause a 0.6 m error in the resulting depth. Any error in the measured pitch of the Sonic MBES head will primarily have a detrimental

effect on the accuracy of the positions that are determined for each slant range/depth.

A pitch error of  $1^\circ$  will cause an along-track error in the position of 0.4 meters when the sonar head is 25 meters above the seabed.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 11.3 Patch Test Criteria

The patch test requires collecting sounding data over two distinct types of seafloor topography; a flat bottom is used for the roll computation whereas a steep slope or feature is used for the latency, pitch, and yaw data collection.

Care must be taken that the sonar head covers the same area on both data collection runs, this may not be the same as vessel position, especially with an over-the-side mount or if the sonar head rotated. Only the latency data collection requires a different speed from normal survey speed.

The data collection for Latency, Pitch and Yaw should be done in as deep water as possible. This is particularly true for the pitch computation because in shallow water the angle of pitch may not be easily determined due to a lack of resolution.

#### 11.3.1 Latency Test

The vast majority of installations will incorporate GPS time synchronisation and, as such, no latency is expected in the GPS position. However, it is necessary to complete at least one or two latency tests to prove that the latency, for all practical purposes, is zero. Most patch test programs will not yield zero latency, but the derived value would be so small to constitute a practical zero.

For the latency test, data is collected on a pre-defined line up a steep slope or over a well-defined object (such as a rock or small wreck). The line is surveyed at survey speed up the slope and then surveyed again, in the same direction, but at a speed that should be half of the survey speed. If the vessel cannot make way at half survey speed, then the fast run will need to be taken at a higher speed than normal survey speed, and this can influence the latency test due to squat or settlement. The main consideration is that one line should be twice the speed of the other.

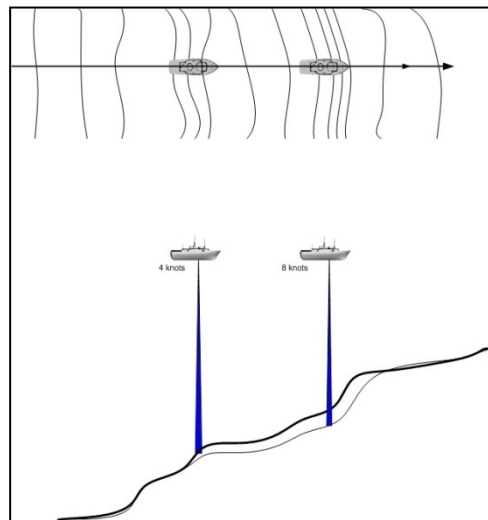


Figure 171: Latency Data collection

### 11.3.2 Roll Test

The data collection for roll has to be over a flat seafloor. One line is surveyed twice, in reciprocal directions and at survey speed.

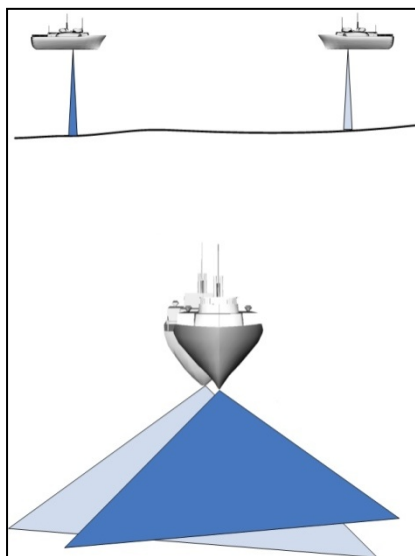


Figure 172: Roll data collection

When the data, from the two data collections, are looked at in profile, there will be two seafloors sloped in opposite directions. Most patch test programs will go through a series of iterations to determine when the difference between the two surfaces is the smallest, and this is the roll offset.

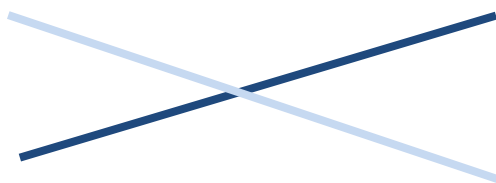
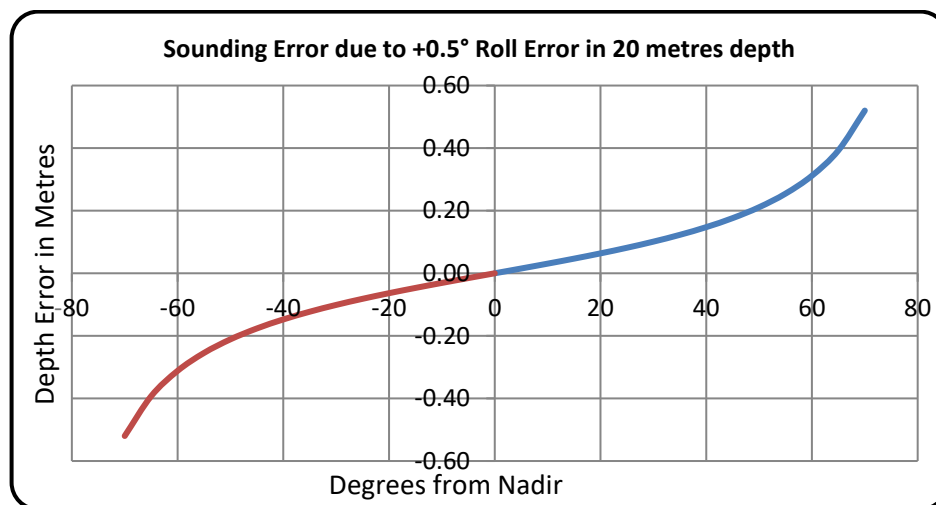


Figure 173: Roll data collections

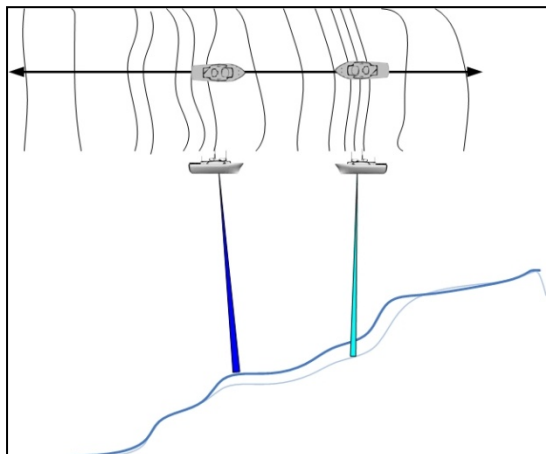
Roll is perhaps the most critical value in the patch test routine as an error in the roll will result in an error in sounding depths. However, the computation to determine the roll misalignment is usually the easiest and most consistent.



Graph 1: Depth errors due to incorrect roll alignment

### 11.3.3 Pitch Test

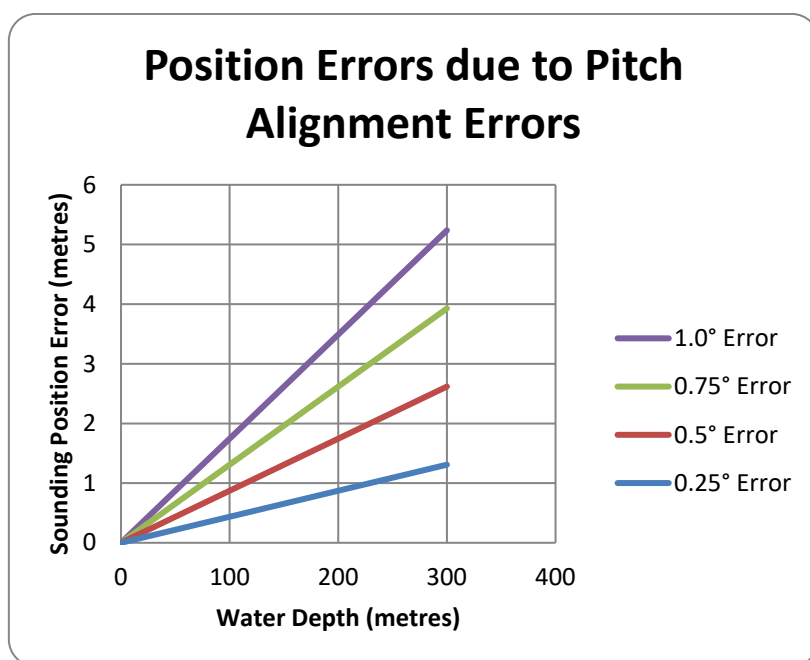
The pitch data collection is over the same type of seafloor as the latency data collection, i.e. steep slope or feature on the sea floor. One line is surveyed, twice, in reciprocal directions at survey speed. It is very critical that the sonar head passes over the same exact part of the slope on each run.



A profile of the data will show two different slopes, which represent the reciprocal data collections. The patch test software goes through a series of iterations of pitch angle corrections until the difference between the two surfaces reaches a null. Whatever the angle of correction, which results in the minima or null, that angle will be reported as the pitch misalignment.

Figure 174: Pitch data collections

A pitch error will result in an along-track position error, which increases greatly with depth

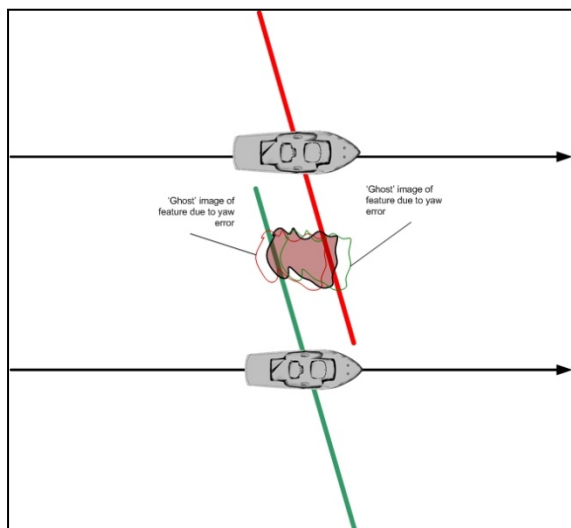


Graph 2: Position errors as a result of pitch misalignment

(Error can be either negative or positive)

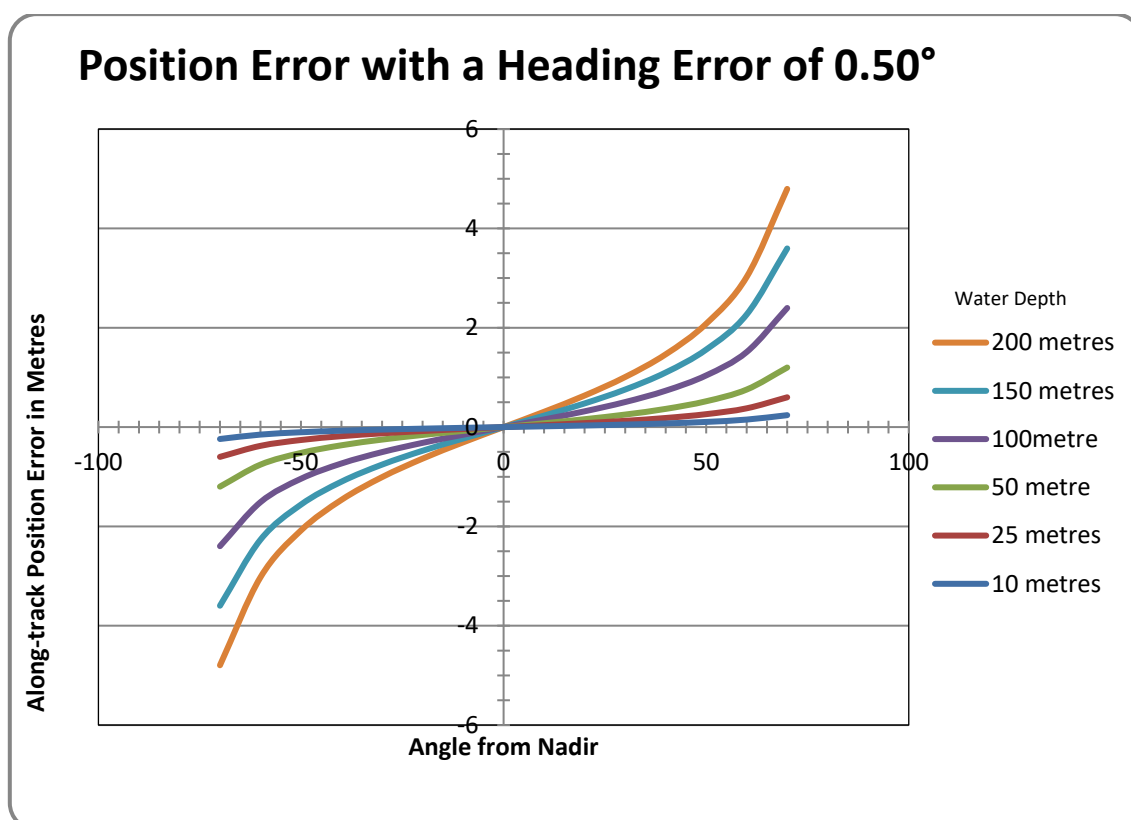
### 11.3.4 Yaw Test

The yaw data collection and subsequent solving for the yaw offset is usually the most difficult of the 4 tests that comprise a patch test. This is especially true if a slope is used for the yaw computation; a feature generally works much better. The reason for this is that the area that is used for the computation is not directly under the vessel, but in the outer beams and the slope may not be perfectly perpendicular in relation to the course of the vessel.

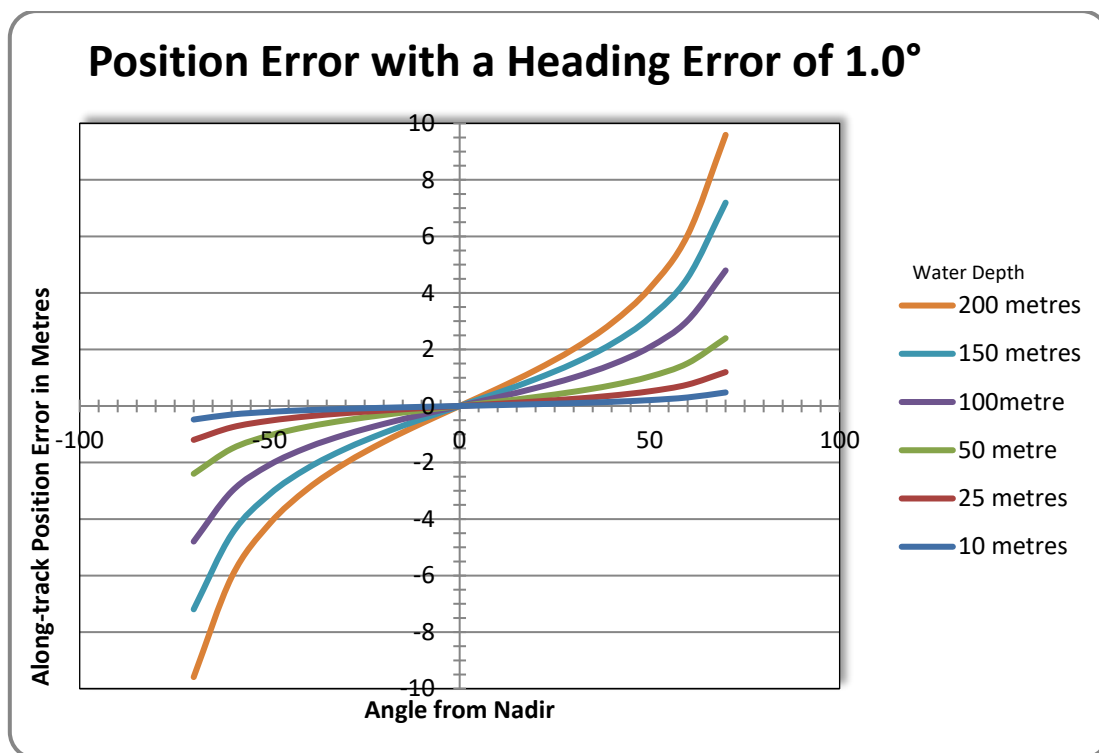


For the Yaw data collection, two parallel lines are used, with the vessel surveying in the same direction on those lines. The lines are to be on either side of a seafloor feature or over a slope. The lines should be approximately 2 – 3 times water depth in separation. A yaw error will result in a depth position error, which increases with the distance away from nadir.

Figure 175: Yaw data collection



Graph 3: Along track position error caused by 0.5° error in yaw patch test



Graph 4: Along-track position error caused by 1.0° error in yaw patch test error

## 11.4 Solving for the Patch Test

Depending on the data collection software that is employed and how it solves for the patch test, there will be a distinct order that the tests will be solved for, but this does not influence the data collection for the patch test. In general, latency will be solved before pitch; roll will be solved before yaw. It is not uncommon that a larger than expected error in one of the tests will make it necessary to go back and resolve for all previous values. This can be the case with a large yaw offset, as this will influence to a greater degree the accuracy of the latency and pitch computations if done using a slope.

The resultant patch test values are corrections that are entered in the data collection software and not in the Sonic MBES software, as the values are used for process data.

## 11.5 History

Since the advent of commercial multibeam echosounders, there has been the need to measure the angular offsets between the multibeam sonar head and the auxiliary sensors that provide attitude and heading information. Another measurement is made to determine the latency, in the GPS receiver. Multibeam data is collected that is used to determine (1) latency, (2) roll offset, (3) pitch offset and (4) heading or yaw offset

What has been developed is called the Patch Test; this is the multibeam calibration. During the development of the data collection criteria, for the Patch Test, there has only been a basic description for the manner of the data collection; providing little, if any, directions that would help create a high degree of confidence in the results of the various tests. This section will address those very directions that will help create a highly accurate and statistically viable result from the Patch Test.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 11.6 Basic data collection criteria

Patch test data collection does not have to be in any set order, but the order that the values are computed, in the data collection or processing software, will be in a distinct order.

Normally, Latency is the first value that is computed, followed by Roll, Pitch and Yaw (or heading). The solving order is important, as will be seen below.

## 11.7 Patch Test data collection error areas

There are many common errors, or mistakes, made during the patch test data collection.

### 11.7.1 Positioning

The accuracy of the positioning system is a common area where errors arise. DGPS has, at best, a variability of  $\pm 0.50$  metres, whereas RTK variability is  $\pm 0.05$  metres.

A recent article, in *Hydro International* ('Stop Using DGPS'; Hydro International; Volume 16, Issue 7; Oct 2012) documents this issue very well.

The article fully details the errors that can occur by using DGPS, instead of highly accurate positioning for the Patch Test data collection. The error increases inversely with the water depth, i.e. the shallower the water, the larger the error that can be induced by using DGPS over more accurate positioning.

However, many users do not have any better positioning capabilities than DGPS; how can they still obtain valid patch test results without having centimetric accurate positioning? This is, in large part, what this paper is concerned with. However, even with centimetric position, the following should be followed.

### 11.7.2 Feature chose for the test

Where at all possible, for latency, pitch and heading data collection, a feature should be used rather than a slope. Slopes tend to be too variable as opposed to a well-defined feature such as a wreck, rock outcrop or pipeline.

One of the other issues, with using a slope, is that many times the shallow end of the slope does not allow sufficient area or depth for the vessel to come about and line up for the reciprocal run; this does not allow sufficient time for the motion sensor to settle down nor for the helmsman to find a steady course.

It has been found that when using a slope, for the pitch calibration, that the heading angular offset can have a large influence. If the sonar head does not track exactly the same route, up and down the slope, the heading offset will affect the pitch angular result.

### 11.7.3 Water depth

*The deeper the water, the better the result.* In shallow water, DGPS wobble creates more, relatively severe, position errors. A corollary to this is that the subtended angle is proportionally larger in shallow water, which can blur the definition of the object used, be it a feature or slope. The shallower the water, the larger the subtended angle; the deeper the water, the smaller the subtended angle and, therefore, the better the definition of the object or slope.

### 11.7.4 Use predefined survey lines

The most important positioning issue is having the sonar head pass over the same exact location in both of the survey data collections. This is especially true when using a highly variable slope. One way to assist the helmsman is to give the helmsman a defined line to navigate by. Just trying to go over the same track, without a line reference, does not work, as it is the sonar head that has to pass over the same exact point; this accuracy cannot be obtained just by using the grid display to steer the vessel.

When setting up the survey software, make sure that the sonar head is the steered reference for all offline measurements. It does no good to have the vessel on the survey line if the sonar is mounted on the side of the vessel; it is the sonar that should be on the survey line.

### 11.7.5 Speed

When doing the latency data collection, the fast run should be at survey speed where, if there is squat or settlement, it should have been previously measured and can be applied. Many times, the fast run survey line is at a speed that is greater than the normal survey speed and induces unknown squat and settlement errors into the computation.

### 11.7.6 Vessel line up

For the angular measurement to be accurate, the vessel should have sufficient time to come on line and allow the motion sensor to 'settle down'. Sufficient lead/run in should also be allowed in order for the helmsman to find the proper heading so that vessel can maintain as straight a course as possible.

### 11.7.7 Pole variability

The other issue, which is often overlooked, is the variability in the repeat position of a deployable hydrophone pole. With any moveable mounting arrangement, the pole should be recovered and redeployed a few times, during data collection, to determine if it does, indeed, go back into the same aspect every time that it is deployed. (It is a good idea, after redeploying the head, to do a few figure 8 manoeuvres.)

## 11.8 Improving the Patch Test and Patch Test results

Section 11.7 described areas that should be addressed to improve the results of the patch test when collecting the data. Further improvement will come with the number of data collections and the manner in which the patch test is computed.

### 11.8.1 Need to collect sufficient data

Too many times, surveyors will collect just a few lines of data for each test. One of the major issues, detailed above, is the variability of the position accuracy of DGPS. Another issue, detailed above, is the steering of the vessel during the data collection and the relationship of the sonar head to the feature or slope on each data collection.

To overcome the variability of the DGPS positioning and vessel steering, it follows that the more tests that are performed, the greater will be the reliability of the test results. Below, is an example of a multibeam calibration, which included five data collections for each test.

| ROLL | PITCH        | YAW         |
|------|--------------|-------------|
| 0.73 | -0.73        | 1.02        |
| 0.73 | -0.99        | 0.90        |
| 0.76 | <b>-2.16</b> | 0.81        |
| 0.76 | -1.07        | <b>2.26</b> |
| 0.74 | -0.83        | 0.94        |

Pitch mean with erroneous value = -1.16 (SD = 0.58); without erroneous value of -2.16 = -0.91 (SD = 0.13) Yaw mean with erroneous value = 1.19 (SD = 0.61); without erroneous value of 2.26 = 0.92 (SD = 0.08)

Consider the above patch test and what the result would have been if only two collections were made and those were the ones that contained the highlighted values, which can clearly be seen to be outside of the trend. Having more data to work with will create a more reliable result.

The more data collected, the more evident will be any out of trend values that may reflect a DGPS wobble, a steering issue, or variability of the positioning of the pole. Enough data should be collected to provide a reliable statistical result, i.e. mean and standard deviation. Collecting enough data to compute six of each test, allows the exclusion of any one 'out of trend' result to yield a mean and standard deviation derived from five computations; this would be a statistically viable sampling.

### 11.8.2 Individually solving values

No matter what the solving order may be, each value should be computed independently. All tests should be based on the mean of the previous test(s).

It is important to understand why a certain solving order is used in all survey software. Each computation is based on the previous test result. This is the reason that latency is computed before pitch and roll is computed before heading; the primary test (latency or roll) has a large influence on the result for the secondary test (pitch and heading). The roll computation can also have an influence on the pitch computation, primarily if the position of the sonar head, of the reciprocal runs, was not coincident. The heading offset will also have an influence on the pitch computation for the same reason.

Generally, multibeam surveys are conducted with very accurate time synchronisation using GPS time and the Pulse Per Second. In this case, the latency test is used to prove the lack of latency or that is sufficiently small enough to be of no consequence. Using accurate timing, it is not necessary to collect more than two latency collections. This paper will concentrate on the angular offset computations. However, if accurate timing is not used there should be the same number of collections as with the other tests.

With a good number of individual tests, solve for one computation (i.e. only roll) and derive a mean and standard deviation for that one test. Determine if the standard deviation is within acceptable accuracy requirements, then use that derived mean to solve for the next computation (i.e. pitch). As an example, using the results on page 7, the first step would be to solve for Roll first, derive a Roll mean and then use that mean in all of the Pitch computations. Find the mean and standard deviation for Pitch. Use the mean Roll and Pitch values to determine the Heading offset.

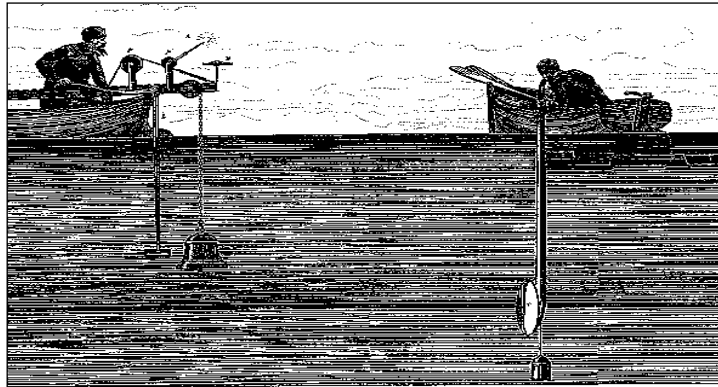
In the above example, the roll mean, of the five tests, is  $0.74^\circ$ , with a standard deviation ( $\delta$ ) of  $0.01^\circ$ . The roll mean would now be used when determining the value for pitch. Use the roll mean and solve all of the pitch computations; the pitch mean is  $-0.91^\circ$  (excluding the out of norm value),  $\delta = 0.13^\circ$ . The roll and pitch computed means are now used to solve for the heading offset. The solved heading offset is  $0.92^\circ$ ,  $\delta = 0.08^\circ$ .

If the heading offset had been  $1.5^\circ$  or greater, it would be advisable to re-compute the pitch offset, using the computed heading offset value. This is due, again, to the fact that if the sonar head did not track the same exact position in the reciprocal runs, the heading offset would have an influence on the pitch offset result.

### 11.9 Truthing the patch test

After deriving the values for roll, pitch and yaw, the values should be entered into the appropriate areas in the data collection software. Ideally, find a singular object that can be boxed in (running data collection lines, on all sides of the object) and process the data. The object depiction, with all survey lines, should not vary from the object depiction from any one line

# APPENDIX VI: Basic Acoustic Theory



**Figure 176: In 1822 Daniel Colloden measuring velocity in Lake Geneva**

(Daniel Colloden used an underwater bell to calculate the speed of sound underwater in Lake Geneva, Switzerland at 1435 m/Sec, which is very close to recent measurements)

## 12 APPENDIX VI: Basic Acoustic Theory

### 12.1 Introduction

With multibeam, as with any echosounder, the main concern is sound in water. Once the projector transmits the acoustic energy into the water, many factors influence that energy's velocity and coherence. The major influence is the velocity of sound in water.

### 12.2 Sound Velocity

The major influence on the propagation of acoustic energy is the sound velocity of the water column. As the acoustic pulse passes through the water column, the velocity and direction (refraction) of the wavefront will vary based on the water column sound velocity. If the sound velocity, through the water column, is not accounted for in the data collection software the depths and the depth location will be in error. For this reason, sound velocity casts are an oft-repeated routine during the multibeam survey.

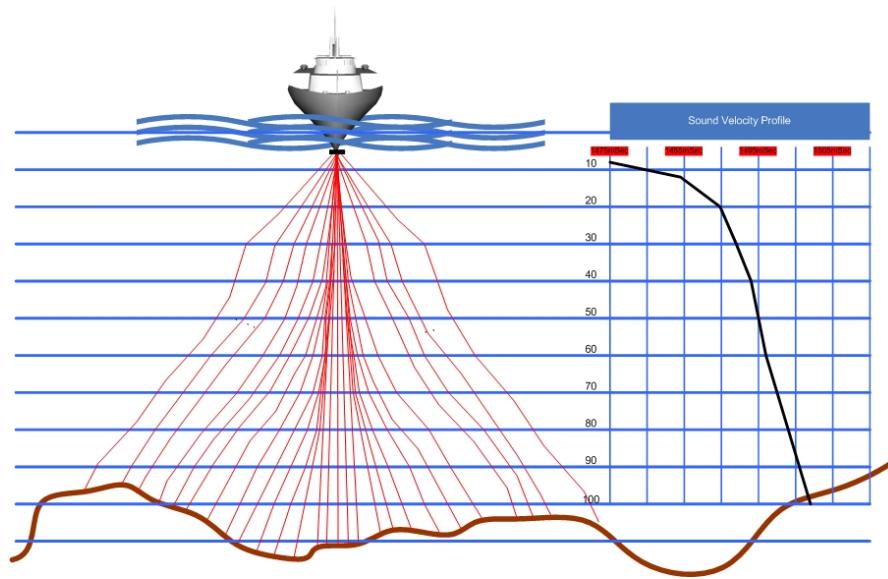


Figure 177: Concept of refraction due to different sound velocities in the water column

The velocity of sound in water varies both horizontally and vertically. It cannot be assumed that the velocity of sound in the water column remains constant over large areas or throughout the day in a more local area. The main influences on sound velocity are Conductivity (salinity), Temperature and Depth (pressure).

|                                           |   |                              |
|-------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| 1 ° C change in Temperature               | = | 4.0 m/sec change in velocity |
| 1 ppt change in Salinity                  | = | 1.4 m/sec change in velocity |
| 100 m change in Depth (10 atm's pressure) | = | 1.7 m/sec change in velocity |

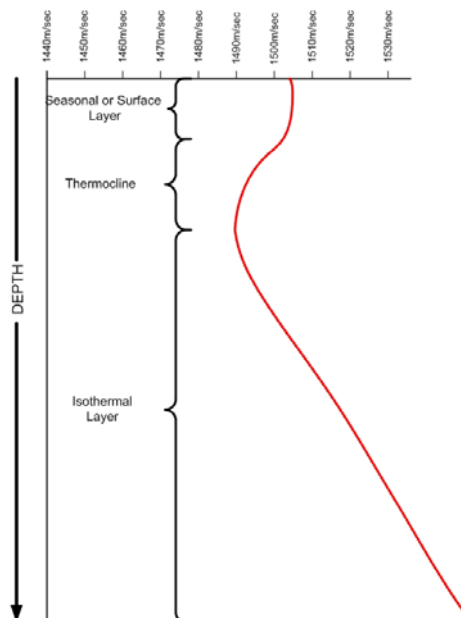


Figure 178: Sound velocity profile

### 12.2.1 Salinity

Generally, salinity ranges from 32 – 38 parts per thousand (ppt) in ocean water. A change in salinity will create density changes, which affect the velocity of sound. As a general rule, a change in salinity of only 1 ppt can cause a sound velocity change of 1.4m/sec. There are many influences on the salinity concentration in seawater.

1. Evaporation
2. Precipitation
3. Freshwater influx from rivers
4. Tidal effects (salt wedges)

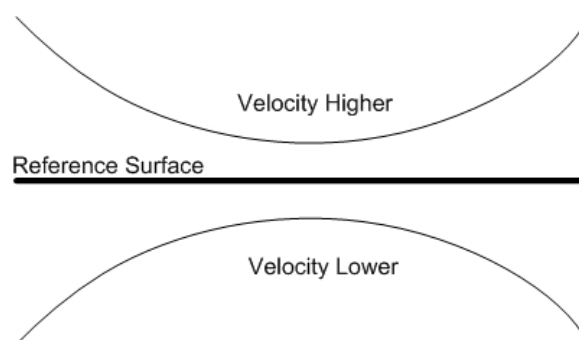
### 12.2.2 Temperature

Temperature is the major influence on sound velocity in water. A 1°C change is equal to approximately a 4m/sec change in velocity. Once the upper layer is passed, the temperature normally decreases until the pressure becomes the more dominating influence on the velocity of sound, which is approximately at 1000 metres. The normal influences on the temperature component of sound velocity include:

1. Solar heating
2. Night time cooling
3. Rain/runoff
4. Upwelling

### 12.2.3 Refraction Errors

Refraction errors occur due to the wrong sound velocity profile being applied to the data. The error increases away from nadir and, as such, is more apparent in the outer beams. The visual effect is that the swath will curl up (smile) or curl down (frown). The actual representation is that the soundings are either too shallow or too deep.



**Figure 179: Refraction Error indication**

At an angle of 45° in 10 meters of water, a  $\pm 10$  meters per second velocity error will result in a depth error on the order of  $\pm 4.6$  cm.

- Convex (smiley face) = Sound velocity profile used higher than the real profile
- Concave (frown face) = Sound velocity profile used lower than the real profile

## 12.3 Transmission Losses

The transmission of an acoustic pulse is generally called a 'ping'. When the projector sends out the acoustic pulse many factors operate on that pulse as it moves through the water column to the bottom and also on its return upward. The major influence of the water column sound velocity characteristics was detailed above; this affects the speed of transmission (and return). There are other influences that will affect acoustic energy in water, and these are transmission losses.

### 12.3.1 Spreading Loss

Spreading loss does not represent a loss of energy, but refers to the fact that the propagation of the acoustic pulse is such that the energy is simply spread over a progressively larger surface area, thus reducing its density. Spreading loss is not frequency dependent.

#### 12.3.1.1 Spherical Spreading

Spherical spreading loss is the decrease in the source level if there are no boundaries (such as the water surface or sea floor) to influence the acoustic energy; all of the acoustic energy spreads out evenly, in all directions, from the source. The loss in intensity is proportional to the surface area of the sphere. The intensity decreases as the inverse square of the range for spherical spreading. With Spherical spreading, the transmission loss is given as **TL = 20log(R)**, where R is range

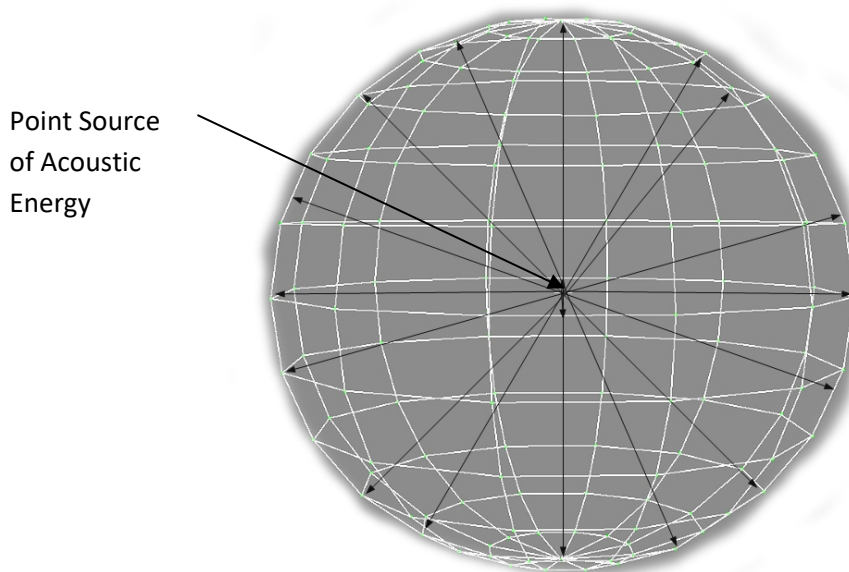


Figure 180: Concept of Spherical Spreading

#### 12.3.1.2 Cylindrical Spreading

In reality, the acoustic energy cannot propagate in all directions due to boundaries such as the sea floor and the water surface; this gives rise to Cylindrical Spreading. Cylindrical spreading is when the acoustic energy encounters upper and lower boundaries and is 'trapped' within these boundaries; the sound energy begins to radiate more horizontally away from the source. With Cylindrical spreading the acoustic energy level decreases more slowly than with Spherical spreading. With Cylindrical spreading, the transmission loss is given as: **TL = 10log(R)**, where R is range.

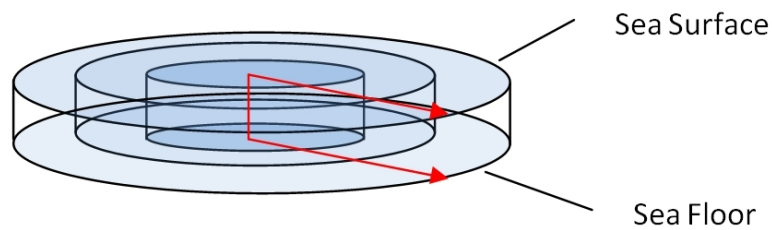


Figure 181: Concept of Cylindrical Spreading

### 12.3.2 Absorption

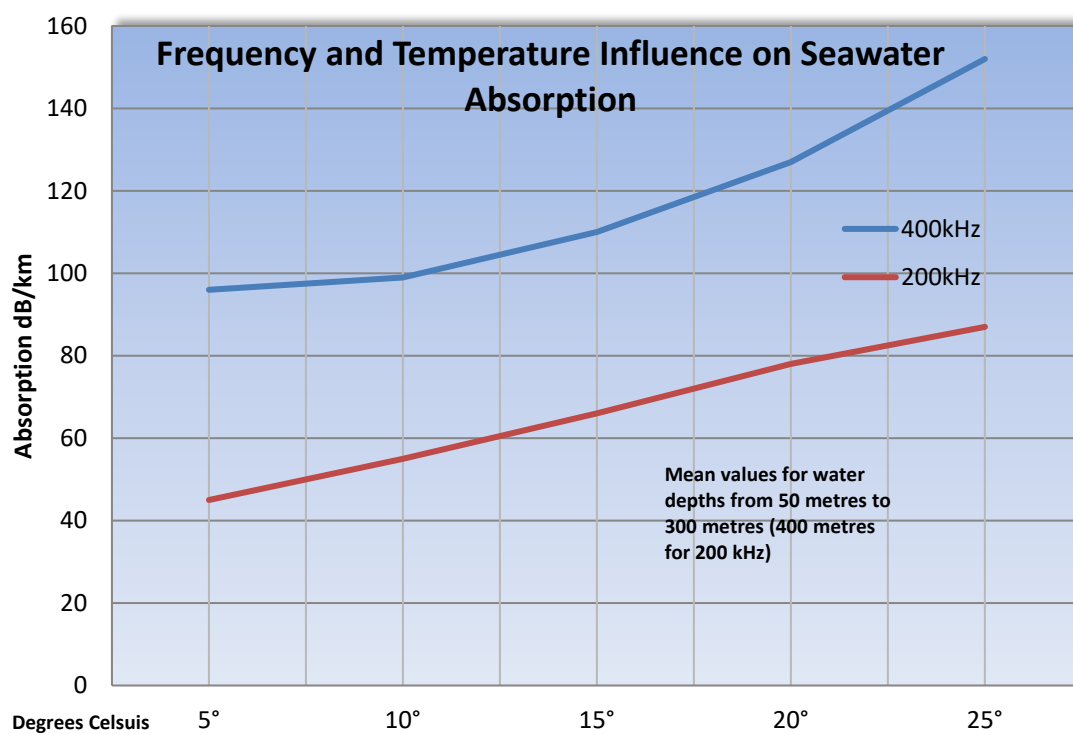
Absorption is frequency dependent and refers to the conversion of acoustic energy to heat when it strikes chemically distinct molecules in the water column. Magnesium Sulphate  $\text{MgSO}_4$  predominates, with Boric Acid  $\text{B(OH)}_3$  playing a major part at lower frequencies. Temperature is also an influence on absorption. Absorption is one of the key factors in the attenuation of the acoustic energy based on frequency; the higher the frequency, the greater the absorption. The higher the sonar operating frequency, the more rapid the vibration (or excitement) of the particles in the water and this leads to the greater transference of acoustic energy; thus, the attenuation of the acoustic wave. This is the reason why lower frequencies are used to obtain deeper data. At 400 kHz, the normal seawater absorption is approximately 100 dB/km, whereas at 200kHz the absorption is approximately 50 dB/km. These are values for normal seawater (with a salinity of 35 ppt). Freshwater has little, if any salinity (<0.5ppt), so absorption is considerably less.

The below table and charts illustrate how frequency, water temperature, and salinity affect absorption

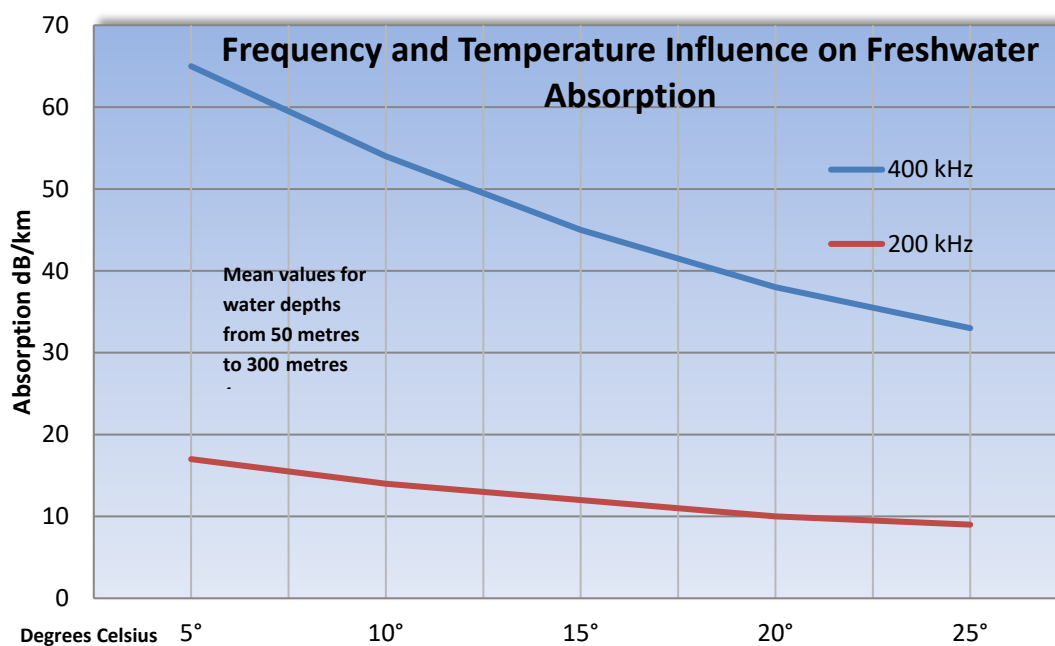
| Seawater Absorption Values: Salinity = 35ppt, pH=8 <sup>2</sup> |    |     |     |     |     |        |    |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| dB/km                                                           |    |     |     |     |     |        |    |     |     |     |     |
| 400kHz                                                          |    |     |     |     |     | 200kHz |    |     |     |     |     |
| Temp (C)                                                        | 5° | 10° | 15° | 20° | 25° |        | 5° | 10° | 15° | 20° | 25° |
| Depth (m)                                                       |    |     |     |     |     |        |    |     |     |     |     |
| 50                                                              | 97 | 100 | 111 | 130 | 154 |        | 46 | 56  | 68  | 80  | 89  |
| 100                                                             | 96 | 100 | 110 | 128 | 153 |        | 46 | 55  | 67  | 79  | 88  |
| 150                                                             | 96 | 99  | 110 | 128 | 152 |        | 46 | 55  | 66  | 78  | 88  |
| 200                                                             | 95 | 99  | 109 | 127 | 151 |        | 45 | 55  | 66  | 78  | 87  |
| 250                                                             | 95 | 98  | 109 | 126 | 150 |        | 45 | 54  | 66  | 77  | 86  |
| 300                                                             | 95 | 98  | 108 | 125 | 149 |        | 45 | 54  | 65  | 77  | 86  |
|                                                                 |    |     |     |     |     | 400m   | 44 | 53  | 64  | 76  | 84  |
| Mean Value                                                      | 96 | 99  | 110 | 127 | 152 |        | 45 | 55  | 66  | 78  | 87  |
| Freshwater Absorption Values: Salinity = 0.5ppt, pH=7           |    |     |     |     |     |        |    |     |     |     |     |
| dB/km                                                           |    |     |     |     |     |        |    |     |     |     |     |
| 400kHz                                                          |    |     |     |     |     | 200kHz |    |     |     |     |     |
| Temp (C)                                                        | 5° | 10° | 15° | 20° | 25° |        | 5° | 10° | 15° | 20° | 25° |
| Depth (m)                                                       |    |     |     |     |     |        |    |     |     |     |     |
| 50                                                              | 65 | 55  | 46  | 39  | 33  |        | 17 | 14  | 12  | 10  | 9   |
| 100                                                             | 65 | 54  | 46  | 38  | 33  |        | 17 | 14  | 12  | 10  | 9   |
| 150                                                             | 65 | 54  | 45  | 38  | 33  |        | 17 | 14  | 12  | 10  | 9   |
| 200                                                             | 65 | 54  | 45  | 38  | 32  |        | 17 | 14  | 12  | 10  | 9   |
| 250                                                             | 65 | 54  | 45  | 38  | 32  |        | 16 | 14  | 12  | 10  | 9   |
| 300                                                             | 64 | 54  | 45  | 38  | 32  |        | 16 | 14  | 12  | 10  | 9   |
|                                                                 |    |     |     |     |     |        |    |     |     |     |     |
| Mean Value                                                      | 65 | 54  | 45  | 38  | 33  |        | 17 | 14  | 12  | 10  | 9   |

Table 17: Absorption Values for Seawater and Freshwater at 400 kHz and 200 kHz

<sup>2</sup> Equation used for computation is from: Ainslie M.A., McColm J.G., "A simplified formula for viscous and chemical absorption in sea water", Journal of the Acoustic Society of America, 103(3), 1671-1672 as employed on the NPL website, op cit.

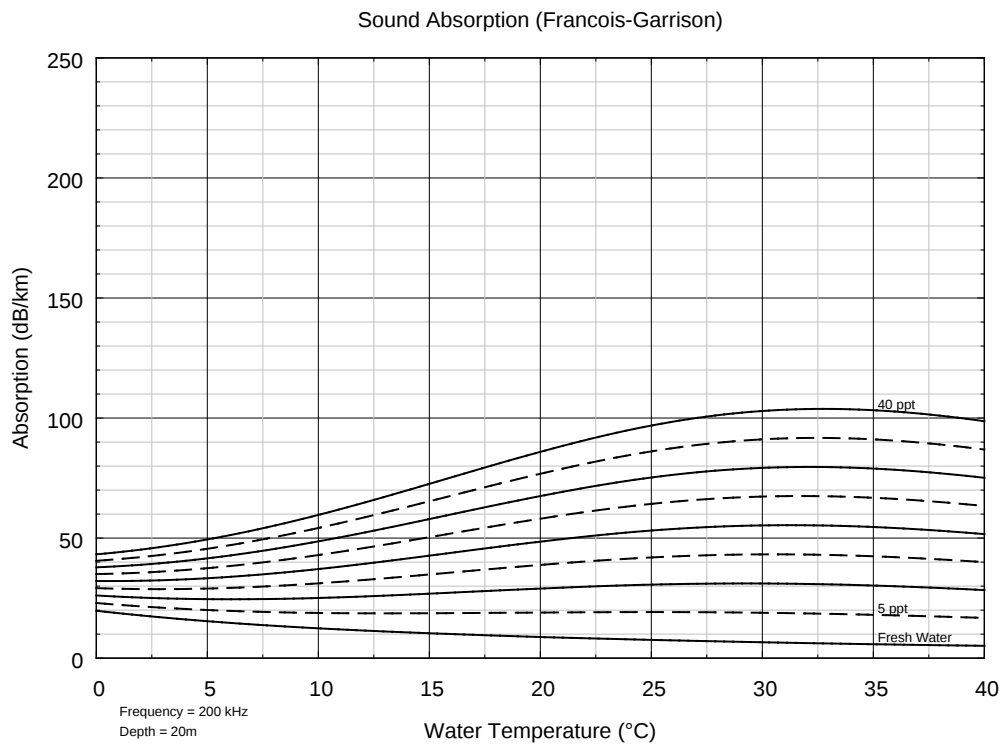


Graph 5: Seawater Absorption (Salinity 35ppt)

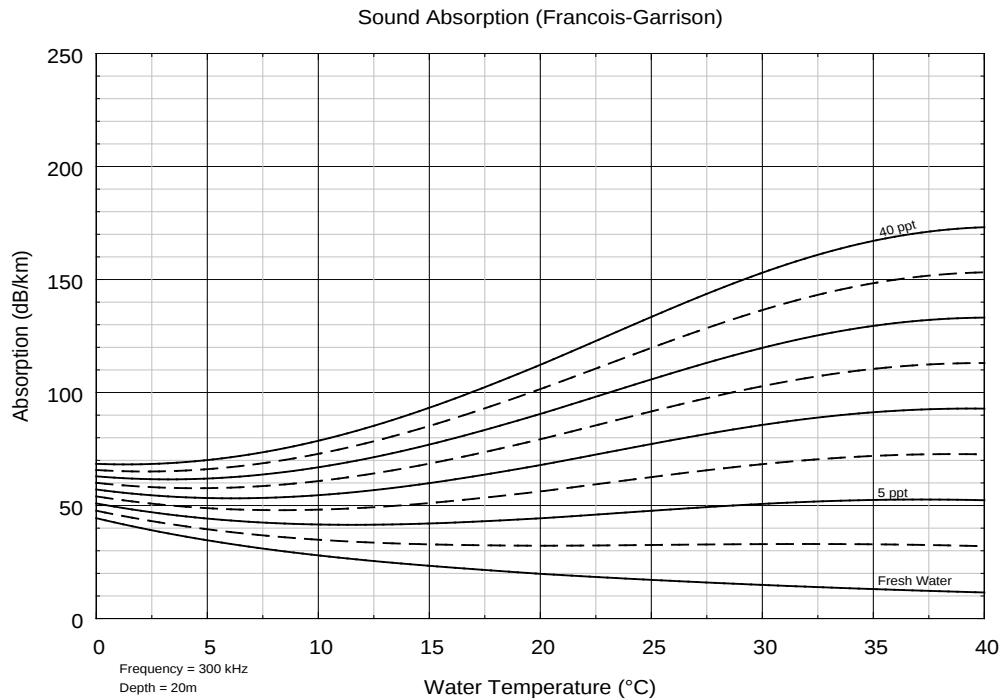


Graph 6: Freshwater Absorption

### 12.3.3 Sound Absorption Graphs at Select Frequencies

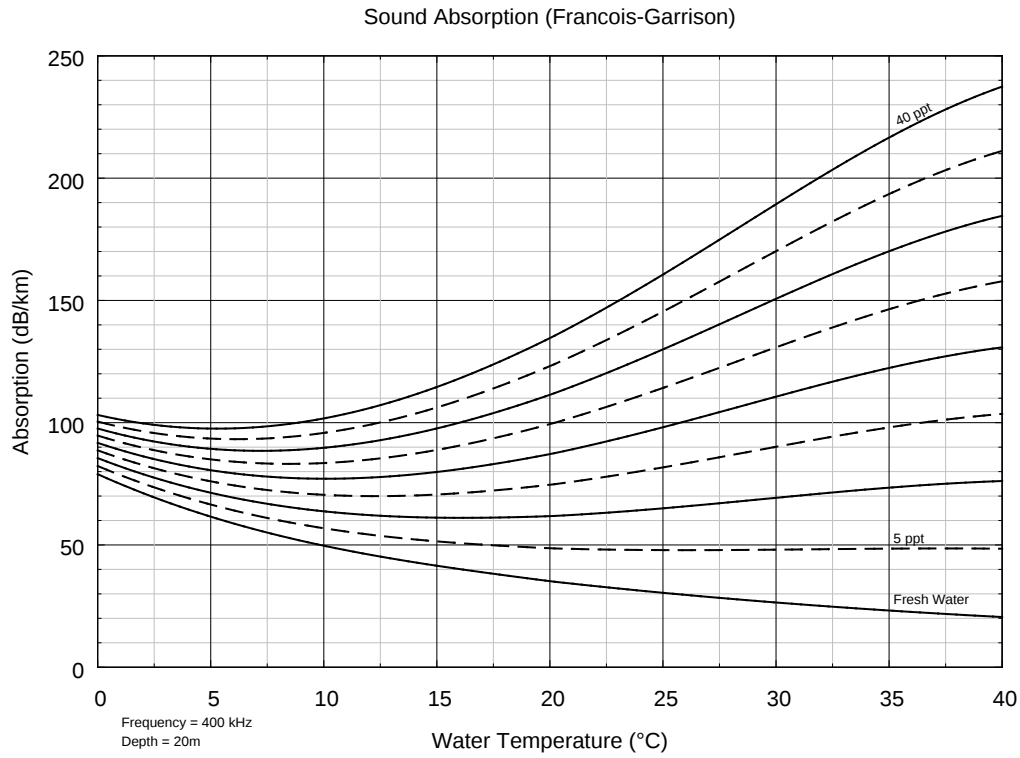


**Graph 7: 200 kHz Sound Absorption**

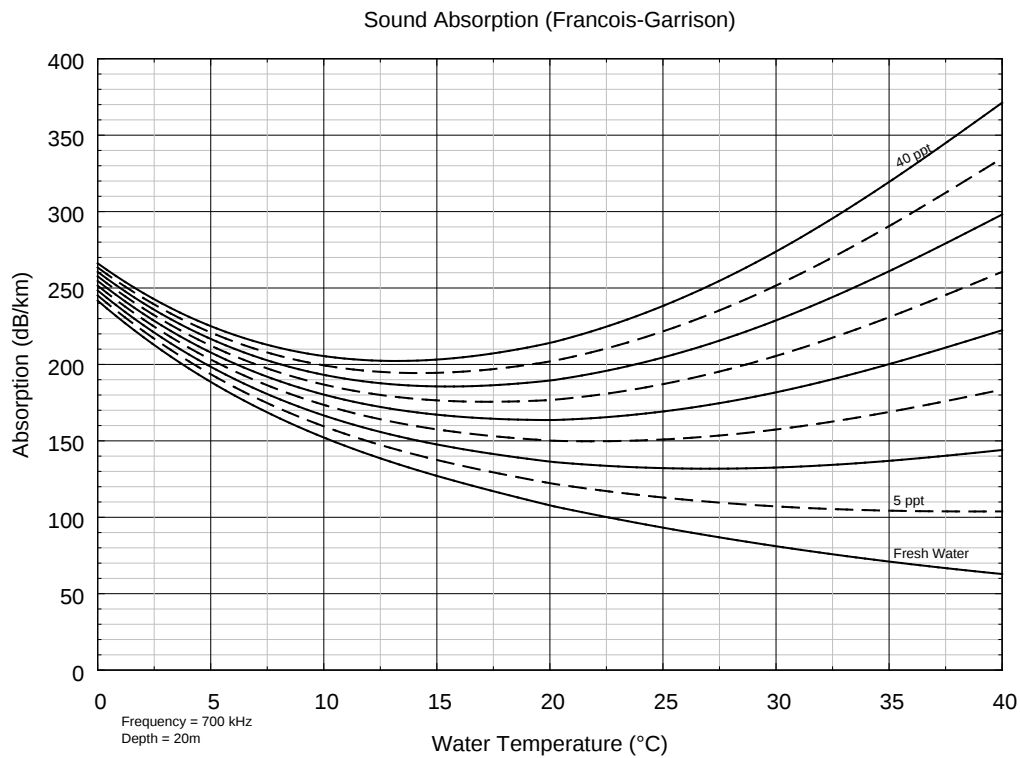


**Graph 8: 300 kHz Sound Absorption**

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



**Graph 9: 400 kHz Sound Absorption**



**Graph 10: 700 kHz Sound Absorption**

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

| Seawater Absorption dB/km |      |                  |      |      |      |
|---------------------------|------|------------------|------|------|------|
| Freq.                     | 10°C | 15°C             | 20°C | 25°C | 30°C |
| 100                       | 54   | 65               | 77   | 86   | 91   |
| 200                       | 55   | 67               | 80   | 89   | 92   |
| 210                       | 57   | 69               | 82   | 94   | 98   |
| 220                       | 59   | 71               | 85   | 97   | 104  |
| 230                       | 61   | 74               | 88   | 101  | 109  |
| 240                       | 63   | 76               | 91   | 105  | 115  |
| 250                       | 65   | 78               | 94   | 109  | 120  |
| 260                       | 67   | 80               | 96   | 113  | 125  |
| 270                       | 69   | 82               | 99   | 116  | 130  |
| 280                       | 71   | 84               | 101  | 120  | 134  |
| 290                       | 73   | 86               | 104  | 123  | 139  |
| 300                       | 75   | 88               | 106  | 126  | 143  |
| 310                       | 78   | 91               | 108  | 129  | 148  |
| 320                       | 80   | 93               | 111  | 132  | 152  |
| 330                       | 82   | 95               | 113  | 135  | 156  |
| 340                       | 85   | 97               | 115  | 138  | 160  |
| 350                       | 87   | 99               | 118  | 141  | 164  |
| 360                       | 90   | 102              | 120  | 143  | 168  |
| 370                       | 92   | 104              | 122  | 146  | 171  |
| 380                       | 95   | 106              | 125  | 149  | 175  |
| 390                       | 98   | 109              | 127  | 152  | 179  |
| 400                       | 100  | 111              | 129  | 154  | 182  |
| 700                       | 213  | 207 <sup>3</sup> | 214  | 235  | 270  |

Table 18: Operating Frequency - water temperature – absorption (@50m)

<sup>3</sup> At 700 kHz, there is an absorption dip, in this temperature range

#### 12.3.4 Reverberation and Scattering

The sea is not homogenous in nature. Everything from suspended dust particles to fish, from the sea surface to the seafloor will scatter, that is reradiate the acoustic energy. All of the effects of individual scattering can be termed reverberation. The effect of reverberation is to lessen the acoustic energy, and this leads to transmission losses.

Reverberation is divided into three main areas: sea surface reverberation, bottom reverberation, and volume reverberation (the body of water that the energy is passing through).

Both the sea surface and the sea bottom will reflect and scatter sound, thus affecting the propagation of sound. Sea surface scattering is influenced by how rough the sea is (which is related to wind velocity) and also the trapped air bubbles in the near surface region. The sea surface is also a good reflector of acoustic energy; this can lead to second and even tertiary bottom returns as the bottom return acoustic energy is reflected by the sea surface and is then reflected once more by the sea bottom.

In the case of the sea floor, the strength of the scattering depends on the type of bottom (composition and roughness), the grazing angle of the acoustic pulse and the operating frequency of the sonar.

There is also bottom absorption based on the sea floor terrain and composition. Bottom absorption is also dependent on the operating frequency of the sonar and the angle of incidence. Bottom absorption will be greater for a higher frequency and large angle of incidence. It is more or less intuitive that a mud bottom will absorb more of the acoustic energy than a rocky bottom. When the acoustic energy is absorbed, it means there is less that will be reflected back to the receivers. The surveyor must be aware of the bottom composition as adjustments can be made to the Sonic Multibeam Echosounder's operating parameters to help compensate for the bottom absorption.

In waters with a large sediment load, the suspended particles will scatter the sound wave, thus leading to transmission loss. In the scattering process, there is also a degree of energy that it is reflected (backscatter); this can be a cause for 'noise' in the sonar data. Again, the surveyor should be aware of this condition and, if need be, change the operating parameters of the Sonic MBES. When discussing the changing of the operating parameters, it is generally a matter of increasing transmit power or pulse length to get more total power into the water. In some circumstances, increasing the Absorption value will allow the system to rapidly increase the gain to capture the reflected energy that has been dissipated by seafloor absorption or scattering in the water column.

As noted above many of the effects of absorption, scattering, and bottom absorption are frequency dependent. With the Sonic MBES, the operator can adjust the sonar frequency to optimise the system for the survey conditions. This will take some trial and error; however, lower frequencies tend to do best in areas of an absorbent bottom and high sediment load (scatter).

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

# Appendix VII ROV and AUV Installation

## 13 APPENDIX VII: Sonic MBES Mounting: Sub-Surface (ROV/AUV)

### 13.1 Installation Considerations

- A 1000BASE-T link (best time sync accuracy) is preferred; however, with bathymetry only information, 100BASE-T will work. 10BASE-T will also work but is not recommended. Bathymetry data requires 2 Mb/s data rate at a maximum ping rate of 60 pings/sec. For future compatibility, please use 100BASE-T at a minimum, Snippets will not work with 10BASE-T; however, Snippets will work over a 100BASE-T link.
- Average power, for a Sonic 2024 is 50W (1A), peak is 100W (2A); for a Sonic 2022 it is 35W (0.73A), peak is 75W (1.5A). The peak power of 100W (75W) occurs just after transmit and typically lasts for a few msecs (depends on transmitter power setting). If you use a separate power supply for the sonar, we recommend using a 120 to 150W power source to supply the head, but less if installing a Sonic 2022.
- The sonar up/downlink is all done through the Ethernet channel. Thus, no other hardware is required except for the Ethernet media converters (copper to fibre, fibre to copper). As a precaution, placing additional filtering on the output of the 48V supply to the sonar head is a good idea to prevent vehicle electronic noise from getting into the sonar head. A common mode choke, on the 48V line, is recommended. The Bourns (JW Miller) PM3700-50-RC common mode choke works well (surface mount part). A Bourns 8102-RC choke, which is easier to install (non-surface mount) can also be used.
- R2 Sonic supplies two types of deck cables. Only the Ø14mm deck cable (Part # 16000002) is rated to 3000 meters water depth. **Do not substitute this cable, as the Ethernet data pairs need to meet certain important specifications.** When terminating the Ethernet connections to your connector, **the Ethernet twisted pairs need to terminate right at the connector pins**, maintaining the twist on the wires as close to the connector pins as possible. On the bulkhead connector, **use CAT5, or better** Ethernet cable, from the connector to the Ethernet media converter. Use adjacent pins for each wire pair. If 100BASE (or 10BASE) Ethernet is used, only the green and orange pairs are required. All four pairs, including blue and brown, are only required when using gigabit Ethernet.
- **Using a connector with a pigtail spliced on to the deck leads' Ethernet pairs has a low probability of working.** If the deck lead must be terminated to a pigtail, the pigtail length must be as short as possible, probably no more than 7-8cm. There are no special considerations for the power conductors other than the connector being able to handle 48VDC and 2 amperes. The drain (shield) wire does not need to be terminated.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

### 13.1.1 Ethernet wiring considerations

The sonar head and SIM use Gigabit Ethernet ports. There are rules regarding the number of twisted pairs, between different Ethernet ports, these rules are:

- **Gigabit to Gigabit**

Need all four pairs. If only two pairs used, in an attempt to force the ports to 100BASE-T, the ports will not negotiate, and the result will be no connection. (As of the 16Nov2013 head firmware, two pairs can be used; this will put the head in a 100BASE-T connection.) Sometimes it's not obvious if a port is Gigabit-enabled; the Status display shows the Ethernet connection speed for the head. This is useful for troubleshooting connection issues.

- **Gigabit to 100BASE-T**

Two pairs (green and orange on TIA/EIA-568-B wiring) can be used. Be sure to test this with a modified patch cable (cut the brown and blue pairs) before committing to the chosen Ethernet equipment as there may be surprises hidden in the equipment.

- **100BASE-T to 100BASE-T:**

You can use two pairs (green and orange, T568B).

When connecting to the SIM, use either of the AUX Ethernet ports for the sonar head Ethernet connection.

## 13.2 Data Rates

**Bathy:** ≈800 kb/s max (bathy data is sent twice, to GUI and data acquisition computer)

**Snippets:** ≈11Mb/s max

**TruePix™:** ≈ 5.5 Mb/s (magnitude +angle) max  
≈ 3.5 Mb/s (magnitude) max

**Water Column:** ≈280 Mb/s max for magnitude only  
≈560 Mb/s max for magnitude + phase

**AI(FLS):** ≈ 20Mb/s to 120Mb/s depending on GUI wedge size

The data rate, for water column data, can be significantly reduced by increasing the pulse width. At certain pulse widths, the receiver sampling rate halves, which will make the water column data rate halve.

As an example:

Pulse width 15μsec - 30μsec: 65 kHz sample rate = Ethernet: 35 Mb/sec (amplitude) 280 Mb/s (amplitude and phase)

Pulse width 35μsec - 70μsec: 32.5 kHz sample rate = Ethernet: 17.5 Mb/s (amplitude), 140 Mb/s (amplitude and phase)

### 13.3 ROV Installation Examples

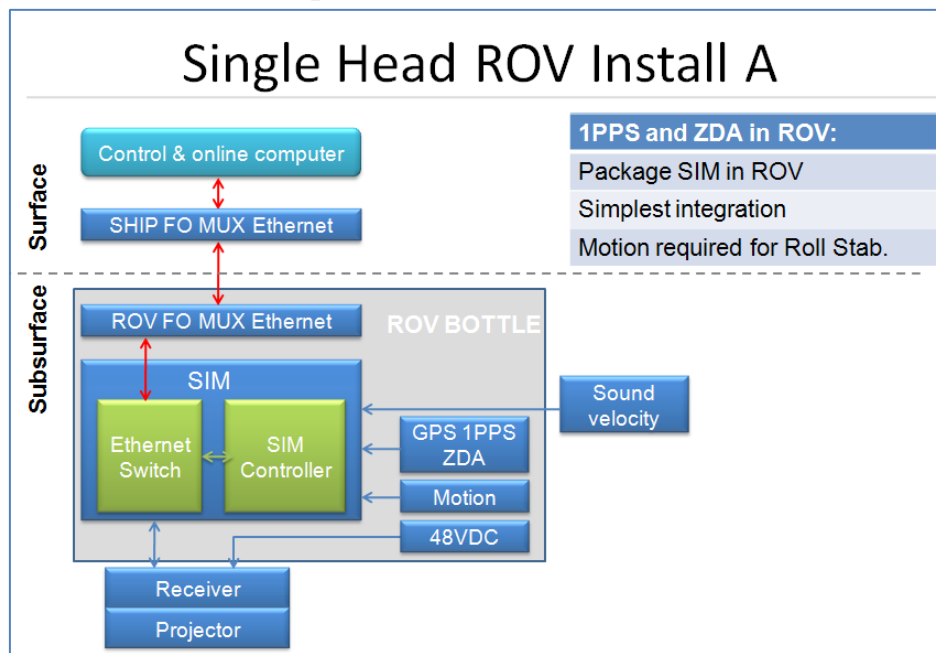


Figure 182: Single Head ROV Installation scheme A

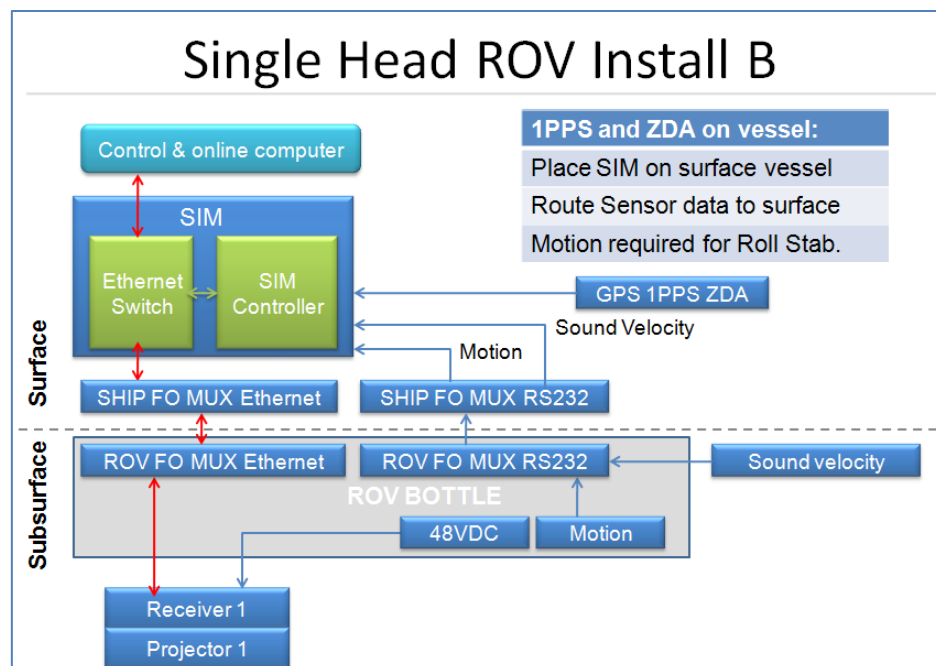


Figure 183: Single Head ROV Installation scheme B (Preferred)

## Dual Head ROV Install A

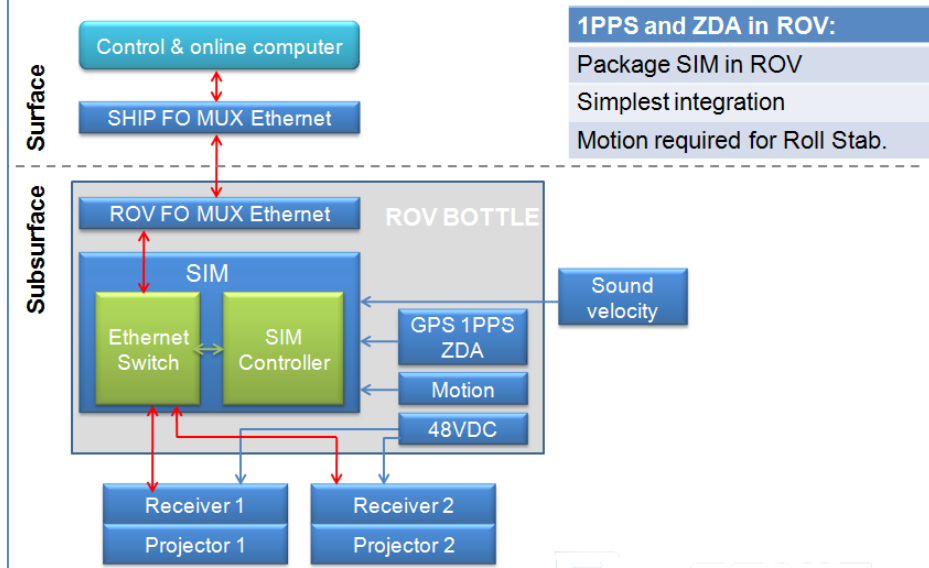


Figure 184: Dual Head ROV Installation scheme A

## Dual Head ROV Install B

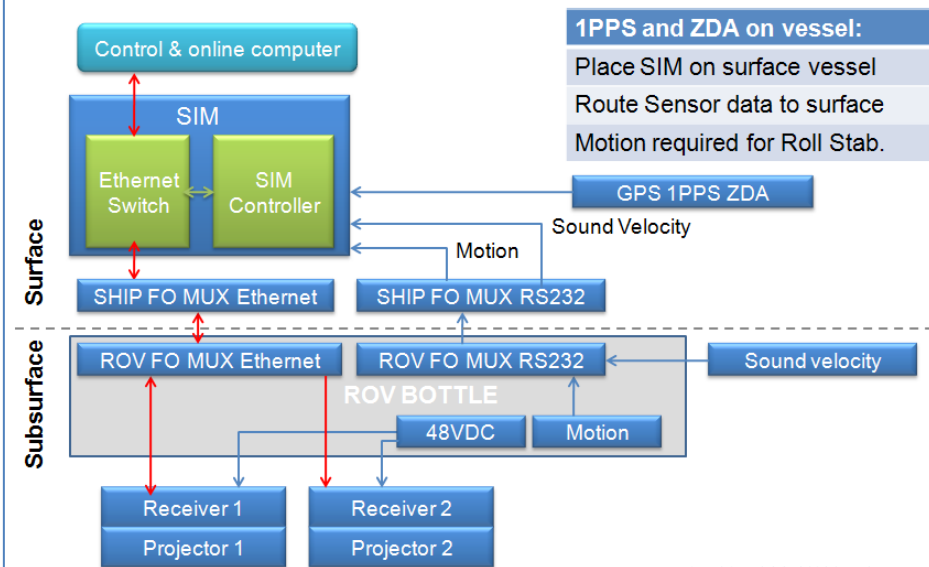


Figure 185: Dual Head ROV Installation scheme B (Preferred)

## 13.4 Power Requirements

The basic over the side installation of the Sonic MBES systems consists of the sonar head, projector, SIM box, sound velocity probe, and interconnecting cables. The sonar head, SIM, and computer(s) communicate via 100BASE-T or 1000BASE-T (Gigabit) full-duplex Ethernet.

Installation in an ROV requires an Ethernet media converter to convert copper to fibre optic and back to copper media to accommodate long tethers. On shorter ROV tethers (less than 1000 metres), using impedance controlled twisted-pair copper wire and a DSL modem may be possible.

Remote or autonomous vehicles typically supply the 48-volt power to the sonar head, and if required, the SIM Controller board.

| Device            | Power                                                  | Conditions                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2024 with SIM     | 95 to 260VAC, 75 W                                     | 2024 head connected to SIM, equivalent to over the side installation.<br><u>Conditions:</u> 30m range, Tx power = 215 dB, pulse width = 50us. |
| 2022 with SIM     | 95 to 260VAC, 54 W                                     | 2022 head connected to SIM, equivalent to over the side installation.<br><u>Conditions:</u> 30m range, Tx power = 215 dB, pulse width = 50us. |
| SIM               | 95 to 260VAC, 16.5 W                                   | No connections to SIM                                                                                                                         |
| 2024 head         | at 48V<br>1.05 A average<br>1.77 A peak after transmit | 30m range, Tx power = 215 dB, pulse width = 50us.                                                                                             |
| 2022 head         | at 48V<br>0.70 A average<br>1.34 A peak                | 30m range, Tx power = 215 dB, pulse width = 50us.                                                                                             |
| SIM control board | 48V, 78mA (gigabit)<br>48V, 51mA (100BASE-T)           | No connections except Ethernet.                                                                                                               |

Table 19: Systems Power Requirements

In an ROV or AUV installation, the sonar head and SIM Controller board require 48VDC which is supplied by the vehicle power system. The average power required is 50 watts for the 2024, 35 watts for the 2022. Just after transmit, an additional 50 watts is required to charge the transmit capacitor bank for a brief period. See below figures for current waveforms. If a separate power supply for the sonar is required, it should be rated for 120 to 150 watts or higher.

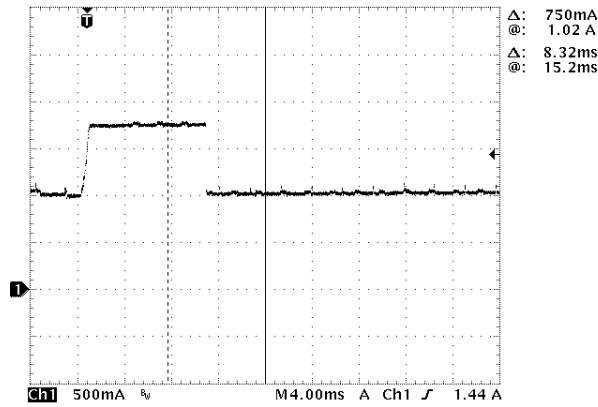


Figure 186: Sonic 2024 power supply current waveform.

Peak current is 1.770A at 48V. Sonar settings: pulse width = 100us, Tx Power = 221dB, Freq = 400 kHz.

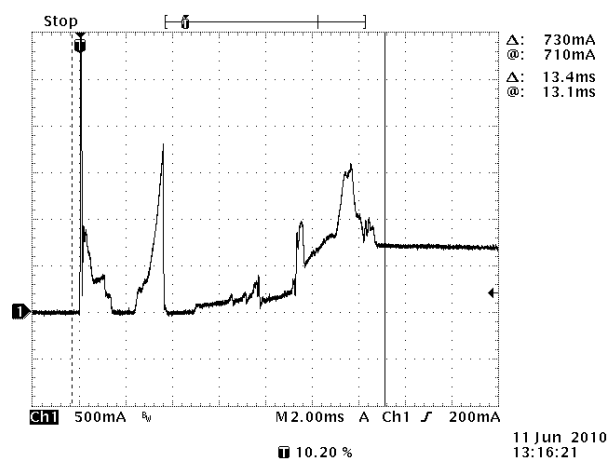
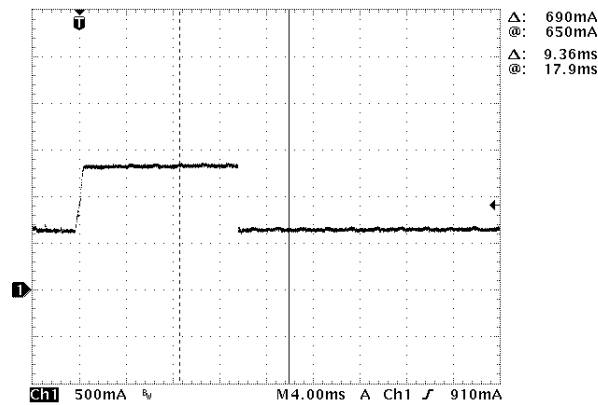


Figure 187: Inrush current to 2024 head during power-up, 20 ms window.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

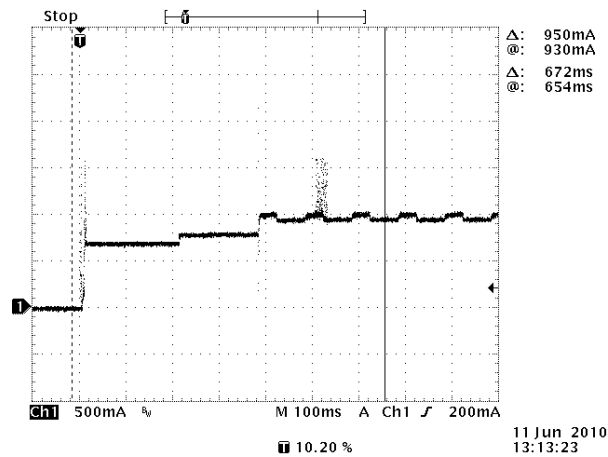


Figure 188: Inrush current to the 2024 head during power-up, 1-second window.

### 13.4.1 Common mode noise rejection

Common mode noise on the 48VDC power line to the sonar head should be minimized. The SIM Controller board has a common mode choke on the power line to the sonar head. If sonar head power is not supplied by the SIM Controller board, install a common mode choke on the sonar head 48VDC power line. A suitable common mode choke is JW Miller (Bourns) 8102-RC. This is available from Digi-Key. See below figure for wiring details.

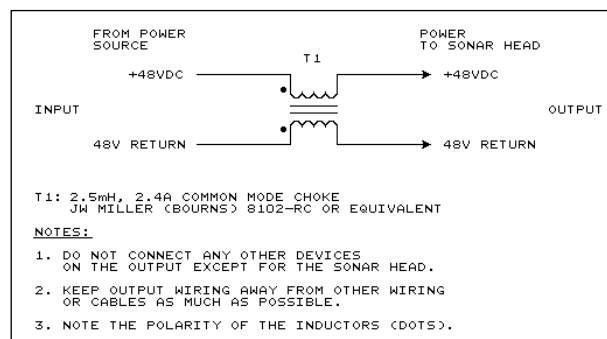


Figure 189: Power supply choke installation on 48VDC power

## 13.4.2 SIM Power connections

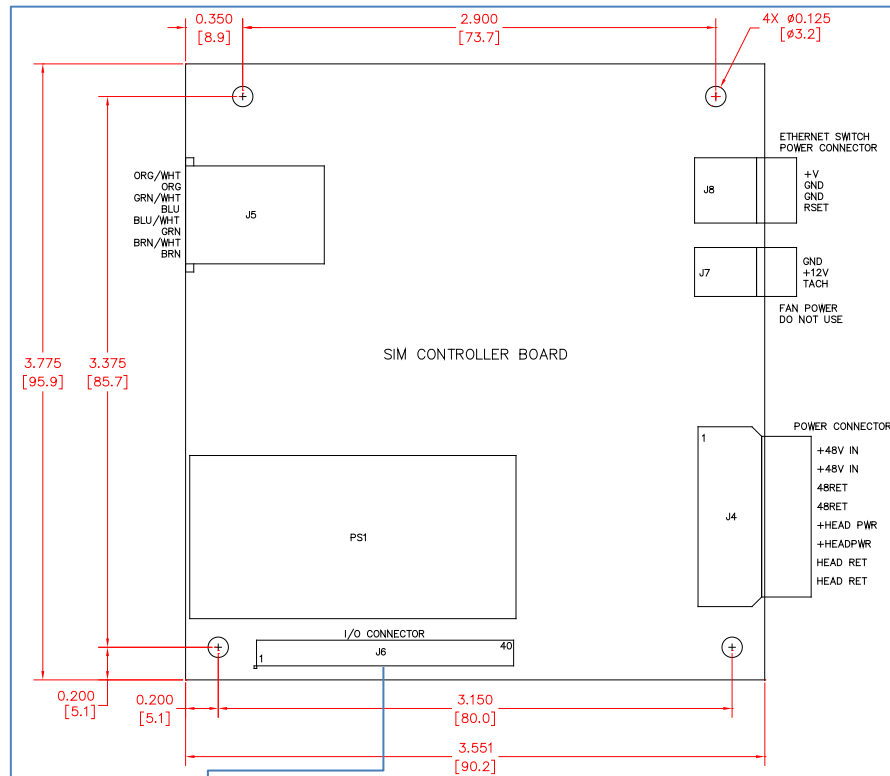


Figure 190: SIM Controller Board

| J6                   |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| +3.3V OUT            | 1 2   |
| GND                  | 3 4   |
| GND                  | 5 6   |
| GND                  | 7 8   |
| GND                  | 9 10  |
| GND                  | 11 12 |
| GND                  | 13 14 |
| GND                  | 15 16 |
| GND                  | 17 18 |
| TxD1 (GPS)           | 19 20 |
| TxD2 (MOTION)        | 21 22 |
| TxD3 (HEADING)       | 23 24 |
| TxD4 (SVP)           | 25 26 |
| +12V OUT             | 27 28 |
| n/c                  | 29 30 |
| GND                  | 31 32 |
| GND                  | 33 34 |
| GND                  | 35 36 |
| GND                  | 37 38 |
| GND                  | 39 40 |
| 2x20 PIN, 2mm HEADER |       |

Figure 191: J6 Connector on SIM Controller board

**The mating connector for J4:**  
Molex 43645-0800 (8-way Micro-FIT 3.0)  
Molex 43030-0009 (socket contacts)  
Molex 63819-0000 or 63811-2800 (crimping tool for socket contacts)

**The mating connector for J6:**  
Amp 2-111623-4  
Any 2mm 2x20 header connector may be used for this part.  
1mm pitch ribbon cable is also required



### 13.6 SIM Installation – AUV

The circuit boards, inside the SIM, can be supplied separately as a SIM Stack (see below images). The three boards use a PC/104 size format, but do not use the PC/104 bus. The three boards are the I/O board where the customer connects time, motion and sound velocity sensors; SIM Controller board; and a gigabit Ethernet switch.

It's best that the SIM Controller board supply power to the sonar head as the controller board has a common mode choke for the 48 VDC power to the sonar head and the SIM Controller board can control power to sonar head. If the customer uses their own custom data acquisition software, a list of commands for the sonar head and SIM are in [Appendix VIII](#). The uplink data format is provided in [Appendix IX](#).

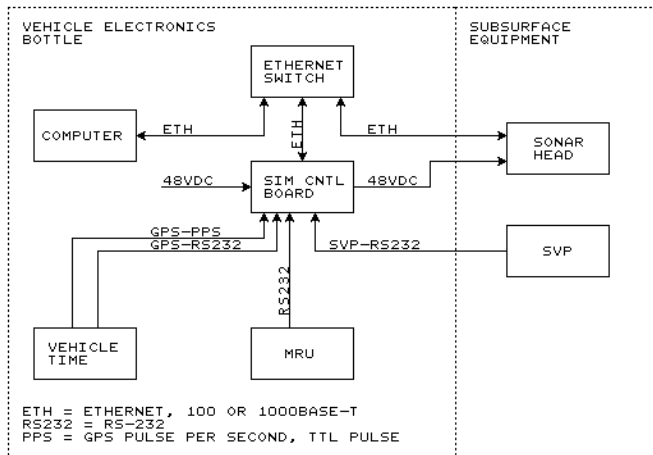


Figure 195: GPS (ZDA or UTC formats) and PPS signals supplied by the vehicle time system

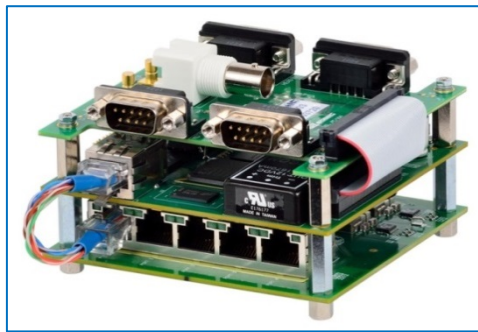


Figure 196: SIM Board Stack

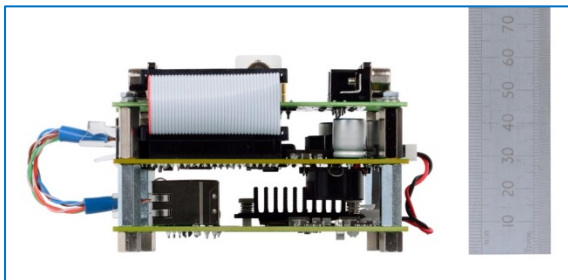


Figure 197: SIM Stack height

**SIM board stacks:**  
 Top board: I/O  
 Middle board: SIM controller  
 Bottom board: Gigabit, 5-Port, Ethernet switch

BNC connector: GPS PPS input  
 SMB connectors: sync in and out

## 13.7 SIM Board Physical Installation

1. Power requirements: 48VDC, 50 watts average, 100 watts peak.
2. **36VDC is absolute minimum working voltage; 52VDC is an absolute maximum working voltage**
3. All boards are static sensitive. People handling the boards should be properly grounded.
4. The user has the option to use the I/O board or not. The I/O board is connected to the SIM Controller Board via a ribbon connector (SIM Controller J6 and I/O board J14).
5. For an AUV setup, the Ethernet connections are not used on the I/O board. The Ethernet connections are made directly to the Ethernet Switch board.
6. If the I/O board is not used, direct connections to J6, on the SIM Controller, can be made. One level of static protection is removed if the I/O Board is not used; however, there is enough protection for small static events on J6.

## 13.8 SIM Stack LED Status Indicators

On the I/O board (top board) with nothing connected except for power:

- On power-up, all the LEDs will first glow red for 0.5 seconds, then green for 0.5 seconds
- Then, they will indicate the activity level of each input.
- With no inputs, PPS, GPS, Motion, SVP LEDs will glow red.
- Trigger (sync) out will glow green.
- Heading and trigger (sync) in will be off.
- Power will be orange (red and green on) if no head is connected.

On the SIM Controller board (middle board):

- The first LED should be glowing red (not blinking). This indicates the 3.3V power supply is working.
- The fifth LED will blink a Morse code message. This indicates that the FPGA code is running.
- All other LEDs are off.

The Gigabit switch board Ethernet Speed (bottom board):

| Left LED | Right LED | Status     |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| OFF      | OFF       | No Link    |
| ON       | OFF       | 10Base-T   |
| ON       | ON        | 100Base-T  |
| OFF      | ON        | 1000Base-T |

Table 20: SIM Gigabit switch speed indicators



## 13.8.2 SIM Board Images

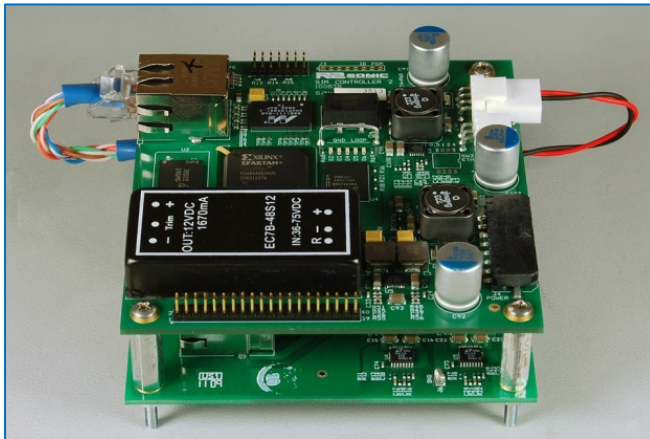
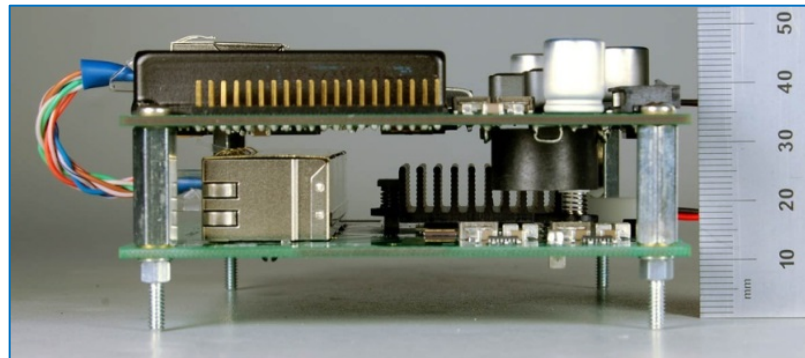


Figure 200: Assembled SIM Boards

Figure 201: SIM Boards height



|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

## 13.9 Dual Sonar Head

### 13.9.1 Dual Head Installation

The R2Sonic family of multibeam can be installed in a dual head configuration, either pointing inwards or directed outwardly, depending on the customer's survey task. In dual head mode, the individual sonar heads can either ping simultaneously (with frequency offset) or alternate pings (same frequency). The dual head configuration is comprised of two sonar heads and either one or two SIM boxes and one Sonic Control 2000. **The same exact head firmware must be installed on the sonar heads in order for Sonic Control to operate the sonar heads.**

### 13.9.2 Operation

#### 13.9.2.1 Load Dual Head Factory Default Settings

The factory default settings, for dual head mode, will populate the default IP addresses and UDP ports for all systems. Go to File | Load Settings; there will be three .ini files; load the desired DefaultSettingsDualHead initialisation file (Dual SIM or Single SIM).

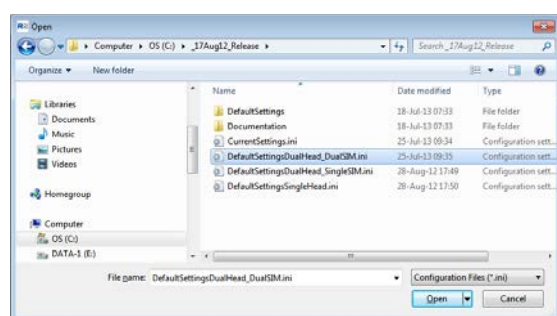
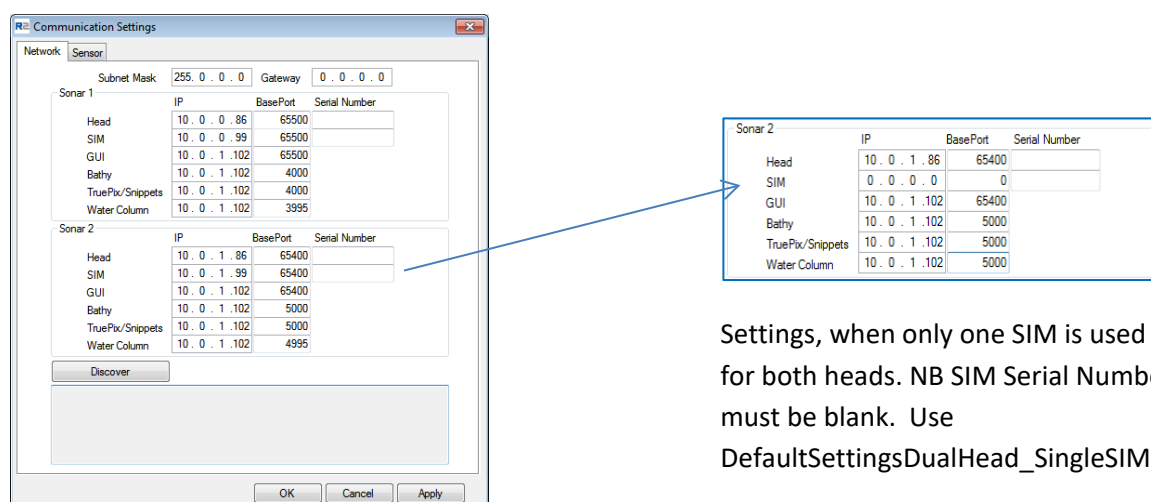


Figure 202: Default .ini settings file

Go to Settings | Network settings to enter the serial numbers for the dual head system. If only one SIM is used for both sonar heads, in Sonar 2 SIM network settings, set the IP and UDP BasePort to 0.



Settings, when only one SIM is used for both heads. NB SIM Serial Number must be blank. Use DefaultSettingsDualHead\_SingleSIM.in

Figure 203: Dual head IP and UDP defaults

### 13.9.2.2 Dual Head – Same Frequency – Alternating ping

To operate the dual sonar heads on the same frequency, it is necessary to coordinate the transmit and receive periods, so there is no interference. Operating in the ‘Ping-Pong’ mode will halve the ping rate for each head, but the user gains identical acoustic resolution (such as backscatter) for both sonar heads. Please see [Section 5.5.10](#) for head synchronisation settings.

### 13.9.2.3 Dual Head – Dual Frequency – Simultaneous ping

Offsetting the operating frequencies, of both heads, allows the user to ping both heads simultaneously. The amount of frequency separation depends mostly on how the sonar heads have been installed and, to a lesser extent, environmental factors. Usually, the maximum separation required is 40 – 80 kHz and can be less.

| Sonic 2024            | Sonar 1                               | Sonar 2                  |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Frequency (kHz)       | 400                                   | 400                      |
| Ping Rate Limit (Hz)  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 |                          |
| Sector Coverage (Deg) | 124                                   | 120                      |
| Sector Rotate (Deg)   | 0                                     | 0                        |
| Min Range Gate (m)    | 0                                     | 0                        |
| Bottom Sampling       | Equiangle quad                        |                          |
| Mission Mode          | Down, Bathy Normal                    |                          |
| Roll Stabilize        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |                          |
| Pitch Stabilize       | <input type="checkbox"/>              |                          |
| Dual Head Mode        | Single head                           |                          |
| TruePix Enable        | Single head                           |                          |
| Snippets Enable       | Simultaneous ping                     |                          |
| Water Column Enable   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Intensity Enable      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Figure 204: Dual-sonar head ping modes

### 13.9.2.4 Dual Head with Two SIM Boxes

If two SIM boxes are used, only one is the master or primary (SIM1). SIM1 will be the SIM to take in all of the serial data as well as the PPS; SIM2 only provides power to the second sonar head. SIM2 is connected to SIM1 via an Ethernet cable to one of the RJ45 ports on SIM1. In the figure, below, the bottom SIM is the primary SIM1, which takes in all of the serial data as well as timing data. The upper SIM is the secondary SIM2 that provides power to the sonar head and passes data to the primary SIM.

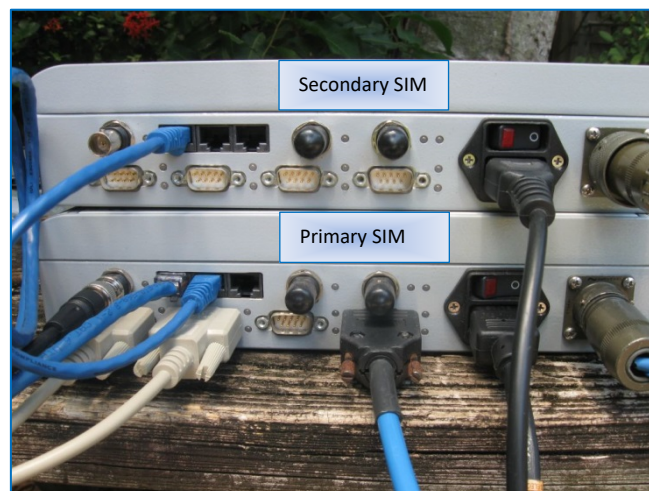


Figure 205: Dual Head - Dual SIM external interfacing

# Appendix VIII Sonic Control Commands

## 14 APPENDIX VIII: R2Sonic Control Commands

### 14.1 Introduction

This describes the commands sent from the user interface to the sonar head and SIM.

Head firmware version 14-Mar-2011 and SIM firmware version 08-Apr-2010 utilize the commands in this document. Future versions of firmware will adhere to this format and may include additional commands.

Older versions of head and SIM firmware are **not** compatible with this format.

### 14.2 General Notes

1. These formats are designed for easy 4-byte alignment. Be sure your compiler/linker does not insert any extra padding between values. If necessary, use your compiler's "packed" directive.
2. All values have big-endian byte order. Your compiler may provide conversion functions such as htonl, htons, ntohl, ntohs, however those assume integers so you'll need to be very careful with floats.
3. u32 means unsigned integer, 32 bits.  
f32 means IEEE-754 32-bit floating point.
4. All packets are UDP/IP datagrams.
5. It's recommended that all commands be sent periodically, at a 1 to 0.5 Hz rate. This ensures that the sonar head and SIM always have the proper settings should a power interruption occur.

#### 14.2.1 Ethernet Port Numbers

Head & SIM status & command port = Baseport +2  
 GUI command port = 53810 (fixed port number)  
 GUI remote command input port = gui baseport + 7

#### 14.2.2 Type Definitions

```
typedef unsigned int u32;
typedef float f32;
```

#### 14.2.3 Command Packet Format

Pseudo C format for commands:

```
// *** BEGIN PACKET: COMMAND FORMAT 0 ***
u32 PacketName;      // 'CMD0'

// Command (for network efficiency, the packet can contain multiple commands,
// but ensure the IP datagram reaches the sonar unfragmented).

u32 CommandName;      // example 'RNG0' to set range
x32 CommandValue;     // a 4-byte value such as u32 or f32

// *** END PACKET: COMMAND FORMAT 0 ***
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 14.3 Head Commands, Binary Format

| Cmd                                  | Format | Units   | Values                                                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ABS0<br>ABS1<br>ABS2<br>ABS3<br>ABS4 | f32    | dB/km   | 0 to 200                                                                                                                                                                      | Absorption<br>ABS1-ABS4 are used for MultiMode selections                                                                                                                                 |
| AIB0                                 | f32    | dB      | 0 to 60                                                                                                                                                                       | Acoustic image brightness                                                                                                                                                                 |
| AIH0                                 | u32    | lines   | 0 = off<br>wedge radius in pixels                                                                                                                                             | Acoustic imagery height. Set to display wedge radius in pixels. Head will return requested lines or less, usually less. Larger values will increase Ethernet data rate.                   |
| AUT0                                 | u32    |         | Flag bits<br>0x00010000 = auto range on                                                                                                                                       | [23:16] auto range<br>[31:24] spare                                                                                                                                                       |
| BIE0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                                                                                                                                             | Bathy intensity enable                                                                                                                                                                    |
| BOS0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = Equiangle<br>1 = Equidistant                                                                                                                                              | Bottom sampling                                                                                                                                                                           |
| DGA0                                 | f32    | metres  | 0 to 1200                                                                                                                                                                     | depth gate min                                                                                                                                                                            |
| DGB0                                 | f32    | metres  | 0 to 1200                                                                                                                                                                     | depth gate max                                                                                                                                                                            |
| DGO0                                 | u32    |         | 0x00000000 = gates off<br>0x00000001 = manual gates<br>0x0000ww02 = auto gates<br>0x0000ww03 = auto gate/slope<br>where ww = gate width in $\pm$ percent of depth (5% to 90%) | Depth gates control. Manual gates mode require DGA0, DGB0, DGS0 to be set. In auto gates mode, a peak percentage value for gate width must be supplied in bits [15:8] in this command.    |
| DGS0                                 | f32    | radians | $-\pi/2$ to $+\pi/2$                                                                                                                                                          | depth gate slope                                                                                                                                                                          |
| DHM0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = single head<br>1 = master simultaneous, dual<br>2 = master alternating, dual<br>3 = slave simultaneous, dual<br>4 = slave alternating, dual                               | Head sync mode<br>(single and dual head modes)                                                                                                                                            |
| DYNA                                 | u32    |         | 0xaabbbccc<br>aa = spare<br>bbb = slope control<br>ccc = depth control<br><br>ex: 0x003d0523 shows a bottom at 5m depth which wobbles.                                        | Generates a moving simulated bottom for testing auto gate features.<br>Three control bits:<br>[0:0] = magnitude (0-f)<br>[1:1] = $\Delta$ magnitude (0-f)<br>[2:2] = rate of change (0-f) |
| FIL0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = single<br>1 = double<br>2 = quad                                                                                                                                          | Bottom fill enhancement (High Density mode.)                                                                                                                                              |
| FRQ0<br>FRQ1<br>FRQ2<br>FRQ3<br>FRQ4 | f32    | Hz      | 170000 to 450000<br>700000 for UHR<br>90000, 100000 for 2026 LF Option                                                                                                        | Frequency<br>FRQ1 – FRQ4 are used for MultiMode selections.                                                                                                                               |
| GAN0<br>GAN1<br>GAN2<br>GAN3<br>GAN4 | f32    |         | 1 to 45                                                                                                                                                                       | Rcvr gain. gain in dB = setting * 2<br>GAN1 – GAN4 are used for MultiMode selections                                                                                                      |
| IDCO                                 | U32    |         | 1 = Bathy+FLS proj. (model 1004)<br>2 = UHR proj. (model 1006)                                                                                                                | Projector ID override, use for emergency                                                                                                                                                  |
| PNG0                                 | u32    |         | 1 = emit one ping only                                                                                                                                                        | Manual ping. Each time this command is sent, sonar will emit one ping.                                                                                                                    |

| Cmd                                  | Format | Units   | Values                                                                               | Description                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------|--------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRL0                                 | f32    | Hz      | 0.1 to 60                                                                            | Ping rate limit user-value                                                                              |
| PRO0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = projector forward<br>1 = projector aft                                           | Projector orientation                                                                                   |
| PROJ                                 | u32    |         | 0 = none<br>1 = narrow (1°)<br>2 = wide (20°) (only in FLS mode)                     | Projector type selector                                                                                 |
| PRU0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                                                    | Ping rate limit user-enable                                                                             |
| PRX0                                 | f32    | metres  | -0.5 to +0.5                                                                         | Projector mounting X offset (call support before using)                                                 |
| PRY0                                 | f32    | metres  | -0.5 to +0.5                                                                         | Projector mounting Y offset (call support before using)                                                 |
| PRZ0                                 | f32    | metres  | -1.0 to +1.0                                                                         | Projector mounting Z offset<br>Default = 0.119                                                          |
| PTS0                                 | U32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                                                    | Pitch Stabilization                                                                                     |
| RET0                                 | f32    | radians | -45° to +45°                                                                         | Receiver tilt                                                                                           |
| RGAO                                 | f32    | metres  | 0 to 500                                                                             | Min range filter<br>Head default = 0                                                                    |
| RGB0                                 | f32    | metres  | 0 to 999                                                                             | Max range filter<br>Head default = 999                                                                  |
| RGO0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = range gates off<br>1 = range gates on                                            | Range gate enable                                                                                       |
| RNG0                                 | f32    | metres  | 2 to 1200                                                                            | Range                                                                                                   |
| ROS0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                                                    | Roll stabilization enable                                                                               |
| SER0<br>SER1<br>SER2<br>SER3<br>SER4 | f32    | radians | -70° to +70°                                                                         | Sector rotate.<br>Wedge edges must not go beyond ±80°<br>SER1 to SER4 are used for MultiMode selections |
| SEW0<br>SEW1<br>SEW2<br>SEW3<br>SEW4 | f32    | radians | 10° to 160°                                                                          | Sector width<br>SEW1 to SEW4 are used for MultiMode selections                                          |
| SNIP                                 | u32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                                                    | Snippets enable                                                                                         |
| SPR0<br>SPR1<br>SPR2<br>SPR3<br>SPR4 | f32    |         | 0 to 60<br>typically 20                                                              | Spreading loss<br><br>SPR1-SPR4 are used for MultiMode selections-                                      |
| STM0                                 | U32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = on, normal mode                                                       | Status display                                                                                          |
| SVL0                                 | f32    | m/s     | 1250 to 1600                                                                         | Sound velocity user-value                                                                               |
| SVU0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = use SVP<br>1 = user value                                                        | Sound velocity user-enable                                                                              |
| TPG0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = disable TruePix gates<br>1 = use bathy gate max<br>2 = use bathy gates min & max | TruePix gates                                                                                           |
| TPM0                                 | u32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = mag only<br>2 = mag & angle                                           | TruePix mode.                                                                                           |

| Cmd  | Format | Units    | Values                                                                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                               |
|------|--------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TRG0 | u32    |          | 0 = free running<br>1 = external trigger, SIM sync in<br>2 = standby, wait for PNG0 cmd.                                           | Ping trigger source. Required, SIM command SYI0.                                                                                                                          |
| TWIX | u32    |          | 0 = flat bottom<br>1 = vertical features                                                                                           | Bottom type                                                                                                                                                               |
| TXF0 | f32    | metres   | 0 = infinity (no focusing)<br>-1 = set focus to nadir depth<br>-2 = set focus to halfway between depth gates<br>n =                | Projector focus                                                                                                                                                           |
| TXL0 | f32    | seconds  | 0 to 1115µs for 2020, 2022 and 2024<br>0,140µs to 2000µs for 2026                                                                  | Pulse length                                                                                                                                                              |
| TXP0 | f32    | dB//1µPa | 0, 191 to 221                                                                                                                      | Transmitter power                                                                                                                                                         |
| TXW0 | u32    |          | 0 = rectangular weighting<br>1 = Kaiser weighting (≈ -2.3 dB SL)<br>0xn0 = number of tx staves where<br>n=number of staves (1 to f | Along-track apodization and size of tx array. 0xn0 command only works on 2020 and 2026. 0xn0: proportional to number of staves, see list in manual. Only works if PROJ=2. |
| UHD0 | u32    |          | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                                                                                                  | UHD mode enable. Fancy bottom detect giving 1024 bottom detect dots using two independent bottom detect methods.                                                          |
| WCM0 | u32    |          | 0 = off<br>1 = mag only<br>2 = mag & phase                                                                                         | Water column data. warning, high speed data, up to 70MB/s.                                                                                                                |

Changes:

12 Dec 2011

Added: AIB0, AIH0, SYNC, TRG0, PNG0, RGA0, RGB0, RGO0, STM0  
 Deprecated: BMIN, BMAX  
 Removed: FILT, MIM0

09 Mar 2012 added TPM0, TPG0

08 Aug 2012 corrected fixed port number in section 3, added IDCO command

23 Dec 2012 added /instance=n command line switch to gui for multiple gui instances.

05 Feb 2013 added FILO

25 Mar 2015 added PTS0, TXF0, TXW0

10 Jul 2015 added number of staves control to TXW0.

27 Oct 2015 added TXS0. FRQ0 range changed.

07 Apr 2017 added ABS1-4, FRQ1-4, GAN1-4, SER1-4, SEW1-4, SPR1-4

13 Nov 2018 added PRX0, PRY0

## 14.4 SIM Commands, Binary Format

| Cmd  | Format | Units | Values                                                         | Description                                                                           |
|------|--------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BDG0 | u32    | bps   | standard baud rates<br>300 to 115200                           | GPS baud                                                                              |
| BDH0 | u32    | bps   | standard baud rates<br>300 to 115200                           | Heading baud                                                                          |
| BDM0 | u32    | bps   | standard baud rates<br>300 to 115200                           | Motion baud                                                                           |
| BDS0 | u32    | bps   | standard baud rates<br>300 to 115200                           | SVP baud                                                                              |
| DBG0 | u32    |       | 7 or 8                                                         | GPS data bits                                                                         |
| DBH0 | u32    |       | 7 or 8                                                         | Heading data bits                                                                     |
| DBM0 | u32    |       | 7 or 8                                                         | Motion data bits                                                                      |
| DBS0 | u32    |       | 7 or 8                                                         | SVP data bits                                                                         |
| DRG0 | u32    |       | 0 = RS-232<br>1 = Ethernet<br>2 = off                          | GPS interface                                                                         |
| DRH0 | u32    |       | 0 = RS232<br>1 = Ethernet<br>2 = off                           | Heading interface(not implemented)                                                    |
| DRM0 | u32    |       | 0 = RS-232<br>1 = Ethernet<br>2 = off                          | Motion interface                                                                      |
| DRS0 | u32    |       | 0 = RS-232<br>1 = Ethernet<br>2 = off                          | SVP interface                                                                         |
| ENG0 | u32    |       | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                              | GPS enable                                                                            |
| ENH0 | u32    |       | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                              | Heading enable<br>Heading data not used                                               |
| ENM0 | u32    |       | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                              | Motion enable                                                                         |
| ENS0 | u32    |       | 0 = off<br>1 = on                                              | SVP enable                                                                            |
| IPG0 | u32    |       |                                                                | GPS IP Address                                                                        |
| IPM0 | u32    |       |                                                                | Motion sensor IP Address                                                              |
| PAG0 | u32    |       | 0 = none<br>1 = odd<br>2 = even                                | GPS parity                                                                            |
| PAH0 | u32    |       | 0 = none<br>1 = odd<br>2 = even                                | Heading parity                                                                        |
| PAM0 | u32    |       | 0 = none<br>1 = odd<br>2 = even                                | Motion parity                                                                         |
| PAS0 | u32    |       | 0 = none<br>1 = odd<br>2 = even                                | SVP parity                                                                            |
| POG0 | u32    |       | 0 = rising<br>1 = falling<br>2 = sync on time message (no PPS) | PPS edge. Sync on time message will sync to the RS232 message; PPS pulse is not used. |
| PTG0 | u32    |       | 0 TO 65535                                                     | GPS Ethernet port number                                                              |

| Cmd  | Format | Units | Values                                                                                                                  | Description                                                                                                 |
|------|--------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PTM0 | u32    |       | 0 TO 65535                                                                                                              | Motion sensor Ethernet port number.                                                                         |
| SBG0 | u32    |       | 1,2                                                                                                                     | GPS stop bits                                                                                               |
| SBH0 | u32    |       | 1,2                                                                                                                     | Heading stop bits                                                                                           |
| SBM0 | u32    |       | 1,2                                                                                                                     | Motion stop bits                                                                                            |
| SBS0 | u32    |       | 1,2                                                                                                                     | SVP stop bits                                                                                               |
| SPO0 | u32    |       | 0 = head power off<br>1 = head power on                                                                                 | Sonar head power                                                                                            |
| STM0 | u32    |       | 0 = off<br>1 = on, normal mode                                                                                          | Status data                                                                                                 |
| SYI0 | u32    |       | 0 = off<br>1 = rising edge trigger<br>2 = falling edge trigger                                                          | Trigger in mode. Middle of transmit pulse is offset by +10ms from trigger edge. Required, Head TRG) command |
| SYO0 | u32    |       | 0 = rises at center of tx pulse, falls at end of rcv<br>1 = falls at center of tx pulse, rises at end of rcv<br>2 = off | Trigger out mode                                                                                            |

12 Dec 2011

Added: SYI0, SYO0, STM0

31 Oct 2013

Changed: DRG0, DRH0, DRM0, DRS0, POM0 to PTM0

Added: IPG0, IPS0, PTG0, PTS0

07 Apr 2014

Amended: DRG0, DRH0, DRM0, DRS0 ('off' value was omitted)  
Update: DGA0, DGB0, RNG0 values changed from 2-500 to 2-1200

## 14.5 GUI Commands, Binary Format

These commands are provided to control various GUI functions remotely. Commands are sent to GUI Baseport + 7

| Cmd  | Format | Units   | Values                                                            | Description                                                                        |
|------|--------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ABS0 | f32    | dB/km   | 0 to 200                                                          | Absorption                                                                         |
| DGA0 | f32    | metres  | 0 to 1200                                                         | Depth gate minimum                                                                 |
| DGB0 | f32    | metres  | 0 to 1200                                                         | Depth gate maximum                                                                 |
| DGS0 | f32    | degrees | -90° to +90°                                                      | Depth gate slope                                                                   |
| GAN0 | f32    |         | 1 to 45                                                           | Rcvr gain. Gain in dB = setting * 2                                                |
| PNG0 | u32    |         | 1 = emit one ping only                                            | Manual ping. Each time this command is sent, sonar emit one ping. See TRG0 command |
| RNG0 | f32    | metres  | 2 to 1200                                                         | Range                                                                              |
| SER0 | f32    | degrees | -70° to +70°                                                      | Sector rotate. Wedge edges must not go beyond ±80°                                 |
| SEW0 | f32    | radians | 10° to 160°                                                       | Sector width                                                                       |
| SPR0 | f32    |         | 0 to 60<br>typically 20                                           | Spreading loss                                                                     |
| TXL0 | f32    | seconds | 0 to 1115µs for 2020, 2022 and 2024<br>0,140µs to 2000µs for 2026 | Transmitter pulse length                                                           |

| Cmd  | Format | Units   | Values            | Description                                                                                 |
|------|--------|---------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TXP0 | f32    | dB/1μPa | 0, 191 to 221     | Transmitter power                                                                           |
| WCR0 | u32    |         | 0 = off<br>1 = on | Water column enable, head 1.<br>Equivalent to setting the water column check box in the GUI |
| WCR1 | u32    |         |                   | Water column enable, head 2.<br>Equivalent to setting the water column check box in the GUI |

Note the commands which set angle values are in degrees. This is different from angular commands sent to the head which are in radians.

Changes:

09 March 2012: added GUI commands (this section)

31 Oct 2013: added ABS0 and SPRO

10 Jul 2015 added TXL0

### 14.5.1 GUI Command Line Switches

**/custffmpeg** Allows user to define video recording commands for ffmpeg. The command line options are in the CurrentSettings.ini file. Use at your own risk as ffmpeg is a difficult program to comprehend.

**/instance=n** Multiple gui instances, where **n** is the gui instance. **n** = 1 to 9. Need CurrentSettings**n**.ini file.

**/sector160** Sector coverage override for 2020. Normally, 2020 sector coverage is 130°. This switch allows 2020 sector coverage to 160°.

NB. The commands which set angle values are in degrees. This is different from angular commands sent to the head, which are in radians

## 14.6 Command Examples Sent to the Sonar Head and SIM

Example of commands sent to the sonar head every two seconds. Columns after the command are hex, integer, and floating point representations of the data sent for each command

|                          |            |               |
|--------------------------|------------|---------------|
| PacketName: CMD0         |            |               |
| Command: ABS0 0x42a00000 | 1117782016 | 80.000000     |
| Command: SPR0 0x41a00000 | 1101004800 | 20.000000     |
| Command: SVL0 0x44b00000 | 1153105920 | 1496.000000   |
| Command: SVU0 0x00000001 | 1          | 0.000000      |
| Command: RGO0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: AUT0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: RNG0 0x41c80000 | 1103626240 | 25.000000     |
| Command: GAN0 0x41600000 | 1096810496 | 14.000000     |
| Command: FRQ0 0x48435000 | 1212370944 | 200000.000000 |
| Command: TXP0 0x433f0000 | 1128202240 | 191.000000    |
| Command: TXL0 0x37d1b717 | 936490775  | 0.000025      |
| Command: SEW0 0x40060a92 | 1074137746 | 2.094395      |
| Command: DGA0 0x40d9999a | 1088002458 | 6.800000      |
| Command: DGB0 0x41266666 | 1093035622 | 10.400000     |
| Command: DGS0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: DGO0 0x00000001 | 1          | 0.000000      |
| Command: PRL0 0x3f800000 | 1065353216 | 1.000000      |
| Command: PRU0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: RET0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: PRO0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: PRZ0 0x3df3b646 | 1039382086 | 0.119000      |
| Command: SER0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: BOS0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: FIL0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: TWIX 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: PROJ 0x00000001 | 1          | 0.000000      |
| Command: ROS0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: PTS0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: DHM0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: SNIP 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: AIH0 0x00000118 | 280        | 0.000000      |
| Command: AIB0 0x41f00000 | 1106247680 | 30.000000     |
| Command: WCM0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: BIE0 0x00000001 | 1          | 0.000000      |
| Command: TPM0 0x00000001 | 1          | 0.000000      |
| Command: TPG0 0x00000000 | 0          | 0.000000      |
| Command: STM0 0x00000002 | 2          | 0.000000      |

Example of commands sent to the SIM every two seconds. Columns after the command are hex, integer, and floating point representations of the data sent for each command

|                          |           |          |
|--------------------------|-----------|----------|
| PacketName: CMD0         |           |          |
| Command: ENG0 0x00000001 | 1         | 0.000000 |
| Command: DRG0 0x00000001 | 1         | 0.000000 |
| Command: IPG0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: PTG0 0x000015e6 | 5606      | 0.000000 |
| Command: BDG0 0x00002580 | 9600      | 0.000000 |
| Command: DBG0 0x00000008 | 8         | 0.000000 |
| Command: PAG0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: SBG0 0x00000001 | 1         | 0.000000 |
| Command: POG0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: SYI0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: SYO0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: ENH0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: DRH0 0x00000002 | 2         | 0.000000 |
| Command: ENM0 0x00000001 | 1         | 0.000000 |
| Command: DRM0 0x00000001 | 1         | 0.000000 |
| Command: IPM0 0x0a00002d | 167772205 | 0.000000 |
| Command: PTM0 0x000015e6 | 5606      | 0.000000 |
| Command: BDM0 0x00004b00 | 19200     | 0.000000 |
| Command: DBM0 0x00000008 | 8         | 0.000000 |
| Command: PAM0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: SBM0 0x00000001 | 1         | 0.000000 |
| Command: ENS0 0x00000001 | 1         | 0.000000 |
| Command: DRS0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: IPS0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: PTS0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |
| Command: BDS0 0x00002580 | 9600      | 0.000000 |
| Command: DBS0 0x00000008 | 8         | 0.000000 |
| Command: PAS0 0x00000000 | 0         | 0.000000 |

|                          |   |          |
|--------------------------|---|----------|
| Command: SBS0 0x00000001 | 1 | 0.000000 |
| Command: SPO0 0x00000001 | 1 | 0.000000 |
| Command: STM0 0x00000002 | 2 | 0.000000 |

Example of UDP/IP Ethernet packet of commands sent to the sonar head.

First 42 characters are Ethernet header information. Characters after 29h are commands

|      |                                                 |                   |
|------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 0000 | 00 50 c2 90 44 a3 00 1b 21 40 04 84 08 00 45 00 | .P..D...!@....E.  |
| 0010 | 01 48 09 8b 40 00 80 11 00 00 0a 00 01 66 0a 00 | .H..@.....f..     |
| 0020 | 00 56 f6 31 ff de 01 34 17 01 43 4d 44 30 41 42 | .V.1...4..CMD0AB  |
| 0030 | 53 30 42 a0 00 00 53 50 52 30 41 a0 00 00 53 56 | S0B...SPR0A...SV  |
| 0040 | 4c 30 44 bb 00 00 53 56 55 30 00 00 00 01 52 47 | L0D...SVU0....RG  |
| 0050 | 4f 30 00 00 00 00 41 55 54 30 00 00 00 00 52 4e | O0....AUT0....RN  |
| 0060 | 47 30 41 c8 00 00 47 41 4e 30 41 60 00 00 46 52 | G0A...GAN0A`..FR  |
| 0070 | 51 30 48 43 50 00 54 58 50 30 43 3f 00 00 54 58 | Q0HCP.TXPOC?..TX  |
| 0080 | 4c 30 37 d1 b7 17 53 45 57 30 40 06 0a 92 44 47 | L07...SEW0@...DG  |
| 0090 | 41 30 40 d9 99 9a 44 47 42 30 41 26 66 66 44 47 | A0@...DGB0A&ffDG  |
| 00a0 | 53 30 00 00 00 00 44 47 4f 30 00 00 00 01 50 52 | S0....DGO0....PR  |
| 00b0 | 4c 30 3f 80 00 00 50 52 55 30 00 00 00 00 52 45 | LO?...PRU0....RE  |
| 00c0 | 54 30 00 00 00 00 50 52 4f 30 00 00 00 00 50 52 | T0....PRO0....PR  |
| 00d0 | 5a 30 3d f3 b6 46 53 45 52 30 00 00 00 00 42 4f | Z0=...FSER0....BO |
| 00e0 | 53 30 00 00 00 00 46 49 4c 30 00 00 00 00 54 57 | S0....FILO....TW  |
| 00f0 | 49 58 00 00 00 00 50 52 4f 4a 00 00 00 01 52 4f | IX....PROJ....RO  |
| 0100 | 53 30 00 00 00 00 50 54 53 30 00 00 00 00 44 48 | S0....PTS0....DH  |
| 0110 | 4d 30 00 00 00 00 53 4e 49 50 00 00 00 00 41 49 | M0....SNIP....AI  |
| 0120 | 48 30 00 00 01 18 41 49 42 30 41 f0 00 00 57 43 | H0....AIB0A...WC  |
| 0130 | 4d 30 00 00 00 00 42 49 45 30 00 00 00 01 54 50 | M0....BIE0....TP  |
| 0140 | 4d 30 00 00 00 01 54 50 47 30 00 00 00 00 53 54 | M0....TPG0....ST  |
| 0150 | 4d 30 00 00 00 02                               | M0....            |

Example of UDP/IP Ethernet packet of commands sent to the SIM.

First 42 characters are Ethernet header information. Characters after 29h are commands.

|      |                                                 |                   |
|------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 0000 | 00 50 c2 90 41 26 00 1b 21 40 04 84 08 00 45 00 | .P..A&...!@....E. |
| 0010 | 01 18 0c 0e 40 00 80 11 00 00 0a 00 01 66 0a 00 | ....@.....f..     |
| 0020 | 00 63 d6 ad ff de 01 04 16 de 43 4d 44 30 45 4e | .c.....CMD0EN     |
| 0030 | 47 30 00 00 00 01 44 52 47 30 00 00 00 01 49 50 | G0....DRG0....IP  |
| 0040 | 47 30 00 00 00 00 50 54 47 30 00 00 01 5e 42 44 | G0....PTG0....BD  |
| 0050 | 47 30 00 00 25 80 44 42 47 30 00 00 00 08 50 41 | G0...%.DBG0....PA |
| 0060 | 47 30 00 00 00 00 53 42 47 30 00 00 00 01 50 4f | G0....SBG0....PO  |
| 0070 | 47 30 00 00 00 00 53 59 49 30 00 00 00 00 53 59 | G0....SYI0....SY  |
| 0080 | 4f 30 00 00 00 00 45 4e 48 30 00 00 00 00 44 52 | O0....ENH0....DR  |
| 0090 | 48 30 00 00 00 02 45 4e 4d 30 00 00 00 01 44 52 | H0....ENM0....DR  |
| 00a0 | 4d 30 00 00 00 01 49 50 4d 30 0a 00 00 2d 50 54 | M0....IPM0...-PT  |
| 00b0 | 4d 30 00 00 15 e6 42 44 4d 30 00 00 4b 00 44 42 | M0....BDM0...K.DB |
| 00c0 | 4d 30 00 00 00 08 50 41 4d 30 00 00 00 00 53 42 | M0....PAM0....SB  |
| 00d0 | 4d 30 00 00 00 01 45 4e 53 30 00 00 00 01 44 52 | M0....ENS0....DR  |
| 00e0 | 53 30 00 00 00 00 49 50 53 30 00 00 00 00 50 54 | S0....IPSO....PT  |
| 00f0 | 53 30 00 00 00 00 42 44 53 30 00 00 25 80 44 42 | S0....BDS0...%.DB |
| 0100 | 53 30 00 00 00 08 50 41 53 30 00 00 00 00 53 42 | S0....PAS0....SB  |
| 0110 | 53 30 00 00 00 01 53 50 4f 30 00 00 00 01 53 54 | S0....SPO0....ST  |
| 0120 | 4d 30 00 00 00 02                               | M0....            |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

# Appendix IX: R2Sonic Data Format

---

## 15 APPENDIX IX: R2Sonic Uplink Data Formats

### 15.1 Introduction

This describes the data formats sent from the sonar head and SIM. Unless noted, the data packets are sent from the sonar head. The formats are given in pseudo C.

Head firmware versions 13-Dec-2011, and newer, utilise the data formats in this document.

Previous head firmware versions back to 25-Mar-2010 only utilise data formats from sections 15.5 and 15.6 in this document. Future versions of firmware will adhere to this format and may include additional information.

The data format, in older versions of sonar head firmware, is different than the format described in this document and is unsupported.

### 15.2 General Notes

1. Each info or data section includes a name/size mini-header to allow the parser to easily skip unneeded or unrecognized sections. These formats are designed for easy 4-byte alignment. Be sure your compiler/linker doesn't insert any extra padding between values. If necessary, use your compiler's "packed" directive.
2. All values have big-endian byte order. Your compiler may provide conversion functions such as htonl, htons, ntohl, ntohs, however those assume integers so you'll need to be very careful with floats.
3. u8, u16, u32 means unsigned integers of 8, 16, 32 bits.  
s8, s16, s32 means signed integers of 8, 16, 32 bits.  
f32 means IEEE-754 32-bit floating point.
4. All packets are UDP/IP datagrams

### 15.3 Port Numbers

|                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| Bathymetry data port     | = gui.Baseport + 0 |
| TruePix data port        | = tpd.Baseport + 1 |
| Device status port       | = gui.Baseport + 2 |
| Acoustic Image data port | = gui.Baseport + 3 |
| Water Column data port   | = wcd.Baseport + 5 |
| Snippets data port       | = tpd.Baseport + 6 |

### 15.4 Type Definitions

```
typedef unsigned char u8;
typedef unsigned short u16;
typedef unsigned int u32;
typedef signed char s8;
typedef signed short s16;
typedef signed int s32;
typedef float f32;
```

## 15.5 Ethernet Data Rates

Bathymetry:     ≈ 800 kb/s max (bathy data is sent twice, to GUI and data acquisition computer)

TruePix:         ≈ 5.5 Mb/s (magnitude + angle) max  
                    ≈ 3.5 Mb/s (magnitude) max

Water Column: ≈ 560 Mb/s (magnitude + phase) max  
                    ≈ 280 Mb/s (magnitude) max

Snippets:        ≈ 11 Mb/s max

Where Mb/s = megabits per second.

## 15.6 Bathymetry Packet Format

```
// *** BEGIN PACKET: BATHY DATA FORMAT 0 ***
```

```
u32 PacketName;      // 'BTH0'
u32 PacketSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire packet
u32 DataStreamID;    // reserved for future use
```

```
// section H0: header
```

```
u16 H0_SectionName;    // 'H0'
u16 H0_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
u8  H0_ModelNumber[12]; // example "2024", unused chars are nulls
u8  H0_SerialNumber[12]; // example "100017", unused chars are nulls
u32 H0_TimeSeconds;    // [seconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, integer part
u32 H0_TimeNanoseconds; // [nanoseconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, fraction part
u32 H0_PingNumber;     // pings since power-up or reboot
f32 H0_PingPeriod;     // [seconds] time between most recent two pings
f32 H0_SoundSpeed;     // [meters per second]
f32 H0_Frequency;     // [hertz] sonar center frequency
f32 H0_TxPower;       // [dB re 1 uPa at 1 meter]
f32 H0_TxPulseWidth;   // [seconds]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthVert; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthHoriz; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringVert; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringHoriz; // [radians]
u16 H0_2026ProjTemp;   // [hundredths of a degree Kelvin] 2026 projector temperature (divide value by 100, subtract 273.15 to get °C)
s16 H0_VTX+Offset;     // [hundredths of a dB] transmit voltage offset at time of ping (divide value by 100 to get dB)
f32 H0_RxBandwidth;    // [hertz]
f32 H0_RxSampleRate;   // [hertz] sample rate of data acquisition and signal processing
f32 H0_RxRange;       // [meters] sonar range setting
f32 H0_RxGain;        // [multiply by two for relative dB]
f32 H0_RxSpreading;    // [dB (times log range in meters)]
f32 H0_RxAbsorption;   // [dB per kilometer]
f32 H0_RxMountTilt;    // [radians]
u32 H0_RxMiscInfo;     // reserved for future use
u16 H0_reserved;      // reserved for future use
u16 H0_Points;        // number of bathy points
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | REV | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

// section R0: 16-bit bathy point ranges

```
u16 R0_SectionName;    // 'R0'
u16 R0_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 R0_ScalingFactor;
u16 R0_Range[H0_Points]; // [seconds two-way] = R0_Range * R0_ScalingFactor
u16 R0_unused[H0_Points & 1]; // ensure 32-bit section size
```

// section A0: bathy point angles, equally-spaced (present only during "equi-angle" spacing mode)

```
u16 A0_SectionName;    // 'A0'
u16 A0_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 A0_AngleFirst;     // [radians] angle of first (port side) bathy point, relative to array centerline, AngleFirst < AngleLast
f32 A0_AngleLast;      // [radians] angle of last (starboard side) bathy point
f32 A0_MoreInfo_0;     // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_1;     // Z-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_2;     // Y-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_3;     // X-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_4;     // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_5;     // 0 (reserved for future use)
```

// section A2: 16-bit bathy point angles, arbitrarily-spaced (present only during "equi-distant" spacing mode)

```
u16 A2_SectionName;    // 'A2'
u16 A2_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 A2_AngleFirst;     // [radians] angle of first (port side) bathy point, relative to array centerline, AngleFirst < AngleLast
f32 A2_ScalingFactor;
f32 A0_MoreInfo_0;     // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_1;     // Z-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_2;     // Y-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_3;     // X-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_4;     // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_5;     // 0 (reserved for future use)
u16 A2_AngleStep[H0_Points]; // [radians] angle[n] = A2_AngleFirst + (32-bit sum of A2_AngleStep[0] through A2_AngleStep[n]) * A2_ScalingFactor
u16 A2_unused[H0_Points & 1]; // ensure 32-bit section size
```

// section I1: 16-bit bathy intensity (present only if enabled)

```
u16 I1_SectionName;    // 'I1'
u16 I1_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 I1_ScalingFactor;
u16 I1_Intensity[H0_Points]; // [micropascals] intensity[n] = I1_Intensity[n] * I1_ScalingFactor
u16 I1_unused[H0_Points & 1]; // ensure 32-bit section size
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

```
// section G0: simple straight-line depth gates

u16 G0_SectionName;      // 'G0'
u16 G0_SectionSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 G0_DepthGateMin;     // [seconds two-way]
f32 G0_DepthGateMax;     // [seconds two-way]
f32 G0_DepthGateSlope;   // [radians]

// section G1: 8-bit gate positions, arbitrary paths (present only during "verbose" gate description mode)

u16 G1_SectionName;      // 'G1'
u16 G1_SectionSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 G1_ScalingFactor;
struct
{
    u8 RangeMin;          // [seconds two-way] = RangeMin * G1_ScalingFactor
    u8 RangeMax;          // [seconds two-way] = RangeMax * G1_ScalingFactor
} G1_Gate[H0_Points];
u16 G1_unused[H0_Points & 1]; // ensure 32-bit section size

// section Q0: 4-bit quality flags

u16 Q0_SectionName;      // 'Q0' quality, 4-bit
u16 Q0_SectionSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire section
u32 Q0_Quality[(H0_Points+7)/8]; // 8 groups of 4 flags bits (phase detect, magnitude detect, reserved, reserved), packed left-to-right

// *** END PACKET: BATHY FORMAT 0 ***
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 15.7 Snippet Format

```
// *** BEGIN PACKET: SNIPPET DATA FORMAT 0 ***
```

```
u32 PacketName;      // 'SNIO'
u32 PacketSize;      // may be zero in UDP, otherwise: [bytes] size of this entire packet
u32 DataStreamID;    // reserved for future use
```

```
// section H0: header (present only in first snippet packet of each ping)
```

```
u16 H0_SectionName;    // 'H0'
u16 H0_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
u8  H0_ModelNumber[12]; // example "2024", unused chars are nulls
u8  H0_SerialNumber[12]; // example "100017", unused chars are nulls
u32 H0_TimeSeconds;    // [seconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, integer part
u32 H0_TimeNanoseconds; // [nanoseconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, fraction part
u32 H0_PingNumber;     // pings since power-up or reboot
f32 H0_PingPeriod;     // [seconds] time between most recent two pings
f32 H0_SoundSpeed;     // [meters per second]
f32 H0_Frequency;      // [hertz] sonar center frequency
f32 H0_TxPower;        // [dB re 1 uPa at 1 meter]
f32 H0_TxPulseWidth;   // [seconds]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthVert; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthHoriz; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringVert; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringHoriz; // [radians]
u16 H0_2026ProjTemp;   // [hundredths of a degree Kelvin] 2026 projector temperature (divide value by 100, subtract 273.15 to get °C)
s16 H0_VTX+Offset;     // [hundredths of a dB] transmit voltage offset at time of ping (divide value by 100 to get dB)
f32 H0_RxBandwidth;     // [hertz]
f32 H0_RxSampleRate;    // [hertz] sample rate of data acquisition and signal processing
f32 H0_RxRange;        // [meters] sonar range setting
f32 H0_RxGain;         // [multiply by two for relative dB]
f32 H0_RxSpreading;     // [dB (times log range in meters)]
f32 H0_RxAbsorption;    // [dB per kilometer]
f32 H0_RxMountTilt;     // [radians]
u32 H0_RxMiscInfo;      // reserved for future use
u16 H0_reserved;        // reserved for future use
u16 H0_Snippets;        // number of snippets
f32 A0_MoreInfo_0;      // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_1;      // Z-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_2;      // Y-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_3;      // X-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_4;      // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_5;      // 0 (reserved for future use)
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

```
// section S1: 16-bit snippet data (for network efficiency packet may contain several of these sections) (supports snippets up to 32K samples by fragmenting
// at the IP level rather than by the application like 81xx)
```

```
u16 S1_SectionName;      // 'S1'
u16 S1_SectionSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire section
u32 S1_PingNumber;       // pings since power-up or reboot
u16 S1_SnippetNumber;    // snippet number, 0 to H0_Snippets-1
u16 S1_Samples;          // number of samples in this snippet, sample rate is H0_RxSampleRate
u32 S1_FirstSample;      // first sample of this snippet relative to zero range, sample rate is H0_RxSampleRate
f32 S1_Angle;           // [radians] angle of this snippet, relative to array centerline
f32 S1_ScalingFactorFirst; // scaling factor at start of snippet, 0=ignore, use linear interpolation to get other values
f32 S1_ScalingFactorLast; // scaling factor at end of snippet, 0=ignore
u32 S1_reserved;         // reserved for future use
u16 S1_Magnitude[S1_Samples]; // [micropascals] = S1_Magnitude[n] * (linear interpolate between S1_ScalingFactorFirst and S1_ScalingFactorLast)
u16 S1_unused[S1_Samples & 1]; // ensure 32-bit section size
```

```
// *** END PACKET: SNIPPET DATA FORMAT 0 ***
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 15.8 Water Column (WC) Data Format

```
// *** BEGIN PACKET: WATER COLUMN (WC) DATA FORMAT 0 ***
```

```
// The water column data contains real-time beamformer 16-bit magnitude data
// (beam amplitude) and optional 16-bit split-array phase data (intra-beam
// direction). Maximum data rate is about 70 megabytes per second (assuming
// 256 beams, 68.4 kHz sample rate, and phase data enabled). The sample rate
// (and signal bandwidth) varies with transmit pulse width and range setting.
// Maximum ping data size is about 32 megabytes (assuming 256 beams of 32768
// samples, and phase data enabled), but max size may change in the future.
// The number of beamformed data samples normally extends somewhat further
// than the user's range setting.
//
// When the operator enables water column mode, each sonar ping outputs
// numerous 'WCD0' packets containing: one H0 header section, one A1 beam
// angle section, and many M1 or M2 data sections. The section order may
// change in the future, so plan for that in your data acquisition.
//
// Each M1 or M2 section contains a subset of the ping data. Its header
// indicates its size position to help you assemble the full ping array.
//
// You may wish to detect missing M1 or M2 data sections (perhaps a lost
// DP packet), and then fill the gap with zeros or perhaps data from the
// previous ping (to reduce visual disturbances), and then increment an
// error counter for network health monitoring purposes.
//
// The water column data is basically in polar coordinates, so you may
// wish to geometrically warp it into the familiar wedge shape for display.
// Consider using OpenGL or Direct3D texture mapping.
```

```
u32 PacketName;      // 'WCD0'
u32 PacketSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire packet
u32 DataStreamID;    // reserved for future use
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

// section H0: header (only one per ping)

```

u16 H0_SectionName;    // 'H0'
u16 H0_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
    u8 H0_ModelNumber[12];    // example "2024", unused chars are nulls
u8 H0_SerialNumber[12];    // example "100017", unused chars are nulls
u32 H0_TimeSeconds;      // [seconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, integer part
u32 H0_TimeNanoseconds;  // [nanoseconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, fraction part
u32 H0_PingNumber;       // pings since power-up or reboot
    f32 H0_PingPeriod;       // [seconds] time between most recent two pings
f32 H0_SoundSpeed;       // [meters per second]
f32 H0_Frequency;        // [hertz] sonar center frequency
f32 H0_TxPower;          // [dB re 1 uPa at 1 meter]
f32 H0_TxPulseWidth;     // [seconds]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthVert;  // [radians]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthHoriz; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringVert;   // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringHoriz;  // [radians]
u16 H0_TxMiscInfo;       // reserved for future use
s16 H0_VTX+Offset;       // [hundredths of a dB] transmit voltage offset at time of ping (divide value by 100 to get dB)
f32 H0_RxBandwidth;      // [hertz]
f32 H0_RxSampleRate;     // [hertz] sample rate of data acquisition and signal processing
f32 H0_RxRange;          // [meters] sonar range setting
f32 H0_RxGain;           // [multiply by two for relative dB]
f32 H0_RxSpreading;      // [dB (times log range in meters)]
f32 H0_RxAbsorption;     // [dB per kilometer]
f32 H0_RxMountTilt;      // [radians]
u32 H0_RxMiscInfo;       // reserved for future use
u16 H0_reserved;         // reserved for future use
u16 H0_Beams;            // number of beams
  
```

// section A1: float beam angles, arbitrarily-spaced (only one per ping)

```

u16 A1_SectionName;    // 'A1'
u16 A1_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 A0_MoreInfo_0;      // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_1;      // Z-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_2;      // Y-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_3;      // X-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_4;      // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_5;      // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A1_BeamAngle[H0_Beams]; // [radians] angle of beam relative to array centerline, ordered from port to starboard, first angle < last angle
  
```

// section M1: 16-bit magnitude data (present only during "magnitude-only" water column data mode, many per ping, you assemble them into complete ping data)

```

u16 M1_SectionName;    // 'M1'
u16 M1_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section
u32 M1_PingNumber;     // pings since power-up or reboot
  
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

```

f32 M1_ScalingFactor;    // reserved for future use
u32 M1_TotalSamples;    // range samples in entire ping, sample rate is H0_RxSampleRate
u32 M1_FirstSample;     // first sample of this section
u16 M1_Samples;         // number of samples in this section
u16 M1_TotalBeams;      // beams (always a multiple of 2) (typically columns in your memory buffer)
u16 M1_FirstBeam;       // first beam of this section (always a multiple of 2)
u16 M1_Beams;           // number of beams in this section (always a multiple of 2)
u32 M1_reserved0;       // reserved for future use
u32 M1_reserved1;       // reserved for future use
struct
{
    u16 magnitude;       // values 0 to 65535 map non-linearly (due to TVG scaling and possible gain compression) to signal amplitude
} M1_Data[M1_Beams][M1_Samples]; // magnitude data (typical example: 256 beams each containing 36 two-byte structs, 16 kilobytes)

// section M2: 16-bit magnitude and phase data (present only during "magnitude and phase" water column data mode, many per ping, you assemble them into
// complete ping data)

u16 M2_SectionName;     // 'M2'
u16 M2_SectionSize;     // [bytes] size of this entire section
u32 M2_PingNumber;      // pings since power-up or reboot
f32 M2_ScalingFactor;   // reserved for future use
u32 M2_TotalSamples;    // range samples in entire ping, sample rate is H0_RxSampleRate
u32 M2_FirstSample;     // first sample of this section
u16 M2_Samples;         // number of samples in this section
u16 M2_TotalBeams;      // beams (always a multiple of 2) (typically columns in your memory buffer)
u16 M2_FirstBeam;       // first beam of this section (always a multiple of 2)
u16 M2_Beams;           // number of beams in this section (always a multiple of 2)
u32 M2_reserved0;       // reserved for future use
u32 M2_reserved1;       // reserved for future use
struct
{
    u16 magnitude;       // values 0 to 65535 map non-linearly (due to TVG scaling and possible gain compression) to signal amplitude
    s16 phase;           // values -32768 to +32767 map non-linearly (due to complex transfer function) to target angle within the beamwidth
} M2_Data[M2_Beams][M2_Samples]; // magnitude and phase data (typical example: 256 beams each containing 36 four-byte structs, 36 kilobytes)

// *** END PACKET: WATER COLUMN (WC) DATA FORMAT 0 ***

```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 15.9 Acoustic Image (AI) Data Format

```
// *** BEGIN PACKET: ACOUSTIC IMAGE (AI) DATA FORMAT 0 ***
// The acoustic image data contains real-time beamformer 8-bit magnitude data
// (beam amplitude) that has been scaled to 8-bits by a user-selected
// brightness value, and compressed in range by an adjustable amount to
// reduce network bandwidth and processing. The data is called "samples"
// before compression and "bins" after compression. For example, 7200 samples
// of beamformer data (M0_TotalSamples) may be compressed to 600 bins
// (M0_TotalBins). The number of beamformed data samples normally extends
// somewhat further than the user's range setting. The AIH0 sonar command
// sets an upper limit to the number of compressed output bins. It's not a
// precise compression factor, so the number of bins is usually somewhat less
// than the AIH0 value. The maximum data rate with no compression is about
// 17.5 megabytes per second (assuming 256 beams).
//
// When the operator enables acoustic image mode, each sonar ping outputs
// numerous 'AID0' packets containing: one H0 header section, one A1 beam
// angle section, and many M0 data sections. The section order may change in
// the future, so plan for that in your data acquisition.
//
// Each M0 section contains a subset of the ping data. Its header indicates
// its size position to help you assemble the full ping array.
//
// You may wish to detect missing M0 data sections (perhaps a lost UDP
// packet), and then fill the gap with zeros or perhaps data from the
// previous ping (to reduce visual disturbances), and then increment an error
// counter for network health monitoring purposes.
//
// The acoustic image data is basically in polar coordinates, so you may wish
// to geometrically warp it into the familiar wedge shape for display.
// Consider using OpenGL or Direct3D texture mapping.
```

```
u32 PacketName;      // 'AID0'
u32 PacketSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire packet
u32 DataStreamID;    // reserved for future use
```

```
// section H0: header (only one per ping)
```

```
u16 H0_SectionName;  // 'H0'
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

```

u16 H0_SectionSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire section
u8  H0_ModelNumber[12];  // example "2024", unused chars are nulls
u8  H0_SerialNumber[12]; // example "100017", unused chars are nulls
u32 H0_TimeSeconds;      // [seconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, integer part
u32 H0_TimeNanoseconds;  // [nanoseconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, fraction part
u32 H0_PingNumber;       // pings since power-up or reboot
f32 H0_PingPeriod;       // [seconds] time between most recent two pings
f32 H0_SoundSpeed;       // [meters per second]
f32 H0_Frequency;        // [hertz] sonar center frequency
f32 H0_TxPower;          // [dB re 1 uPa at 1 meter]
f32 H0_TxPulseWidth;     // [seconds]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthVert;  // [radians]
f32 H0_TxBeamwidthHoriz; // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringVert;   // [radians]
f32 H0_TxSteeringHoriz;  // [radians]
u16 H0_2026ProjTemp;     // [hundredths of a degree Kelvin] 2026 projector temperature (divide value by 100, subtract 273.15 to get °C)
s16 H0_VTX+Offset;       // [hundredths of a dB] transmit voltage offset at time of ping (divide value by 100 to get dB)
f32 H0_RxBandwidth;       // [hertz]
f32 H0_RxSampleRate;     // [hertz] sample rate of data acquisition and signal processing
f32 H0_RxRange;          // [meters]
f32 H0_RxGain;           // [multiply by two for relative dB]
f32 H0_RxSpreading;      // [dB (times log range in meters)]
f32 H0_RxAbsorption;     // [dB per kilometer]
f32 H0_RxMountTilt;      // [radians]
u32 H0_RxMiscInfo;       // reserved for future use
u16 H0_reserved;         // reserved for future use
u16 H0_Beams;            // number of beams beams

```

// section A1: float beam angles, arbitrarily-spaced (only one per ping)

```

u16 A1_SectionName;      // 'A1'
u16 A1_SectionSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire section
f32 A0_MoreInfo_0;       // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_1;       // Z-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_2;       // Y-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_3;       // X-offset, proj [metres]
f32 A0_MoreInfo_4;       // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32 A0_MoreInfo_5;       // 0 (reserved for future use) f32 A1_BeamAngle[H0_Beams]; // [radians] angle of beam relative to array centerline, ordered from port to starboard, first angle < last angle

```

// section M0: 8-bit magnitude data (many per ping, you assemble them into complete ping data)

```

u16 M0_SectionName;      // 'M0'
u16 M0_SectionSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire section
u32 M0_PingNumber;       // pings since power-up or reboot
f32 M0_ScalingFactor;     // reserved for future use
u32 M0_TotalSamples;      // range samples (before compression) in entire ping, sample rate is H0_RxSampleRate
u32 M0_TotalBins;        // range bins (after compression) in entire ping (M0_TotalBins <= M0_TotalSamples)
u32 M0_FirstBin;         // first bin of this section
u16 M0_Bins;             // number of bins in this section
u16 M0_TotalBeams;       // beams (always a multiple of 4) (typically columns in your memory buffer)

```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

```

u16 MO_FirstBeam;      // first beam of this section (always a multiple of 4)
u16 MO_Beams;          // number of beams in this section (always a multiple of 4)
u32 MO_reserved;       // reserved for future use
struct
{
  u8 magnitude;        // values 0 to 255 map non-linearly (due to TVG scaling and possible gain compression) to signal amplitude
} MO_Data[MO_Beams][MO_Bins]; // magnitude data (typical example: 256 beams each containing 21 one-byte structs, 5376 bytes)

```

```
// *** END PACKET: ACOUSTIC IMAGE (AI) DATA FORMAT 0 ***
```

## 15.10 TruePix™ Data Format

```

// *** BEGIN TRUEPIX DATA FORMAT 0 ***
// TruePix is like sidescan with 3D relief. Each sonar ping produces a port
// and starboard time-series of data samples at the sonar's sample rate. Each
// sample contains the signal's magnitude (like sidescan) and across-track
// target direction angle (like bathymetry). After collecting many pings of
// data along a survey line, you now have a large array of data points with
// range, direction, and brightness. Apply noise reduction, and render the
// data as a textured 3D surface.
//
// Two data formats are available: D0 provides magnitudes only, D1 provides
// magnitudes and direction angles. The GUI allows the user to choose the
// desired format.
//
// The sonar generates one TruePix data set per ping. Each data set is
// usually split into multiple UDP packets. The D0 or D1 header includes
// FirstSample and Samples values to help you reassemble the full data set.
//
// Someday you may be able to convert the 16-bit magnitude values to
// micropascals by applying a to-be-determined function involving the sample
// number and the MagnitudeScaling[] coefficients, but this conversion is not
// yet supported so these coefficients are zero. You can convert the
// direction angles from 16-bit values to radians by multiplying by
// AngleScalingFactor.

u32 PacketName;        // 'TPX0'
u32 PacketSize;        // may be zero in UDP, otherwise: [bytes] size of this entire packet
u32 DataStreamID;      // reserved for future use

// section H0: header (present only in first packet of each ping)
u16 H0_SectionName;    // 'H0'
u16 H0_SectionSize;    // [bytes] size of this entire section

```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

```

u8  H0_ModelNumber[12];    // example "2024", unused chars are nulls
u8  H0_SerialNumber[12];   // example "100017", unused chars are nulls
u32  H0_TimeSeconds;       // [seconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, integer part
u32  H0_TimeNanoseconds;   // [nanoseconds] ping time relative to 0000 hours 1-Jan-1970, fraction part
u32  H0_PingNumber;        // pings since power-up or reboot
f32  H0_PingPeriod;        // [seconds] time between most recent two pings
f32  H0_SoundSpeed;        // [meters per second]
f32  H0_Frequency;         // [hertz] sonar center frequency
f32  H0_TxPower;           // [dB re 1 uPa at 1 meter]
f32  H0_TxPulseWidth;      // [seconds]
f32  H0_TxBeamwidthVert;   // [radians]
f32  H0_TxBeamwidthHoriz;  // [radians]
f32  H0_TxSteeringVert;    // [radians]
f32  H0_TxSteeringHoriz;   // [radians]
u16  H0_2026ProjTemp;      // [hundredths of a degree Kelvin] 2026 projector temperature (divide value by 100, subtract 273.15 to get °C)
s16  H0_VTX+Offset;        // [hundredths of a dB] transmit voltage offset at time of ping (divide value by 100 to get dB)
f32  H0_RxBandwidth;       // [hertz]
f32  H0_RxSampleRate;      // [hertz] sample rate of data acquisition and signal processing
f32  H0_RxRange;           // user setting [meters]
f32  H0_RxGain;            // user setting [multiply by 2 for dB]
f32  H0_RxSpreading;       // [dB (times log range in meters)]
f32  H0_RxAbsorption;      // [dB per kilometer]
f32  H0_RxMountTilt;       // [radians]
u32  H0_RxMiscInfo;        // reserved for future use
u32  H0_reserved;          // reserved for future use
f32  A0_MoreInfo_0;         // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32  A0_MoreInfo_1;        // Z-offset, proj [metres]
f32  A0_MoreInfo_2;        // Y-offset, proj [metres]
f32  A0_MoreInfo_3;        // X-offset, proj [metres]
f32  A0_MoreInfo_4;        // 0 (reserved for future use)
f32  A0_MoreInfo_5;        // 0 (reserved for future use)

```

// section D0: 16-bit magnitude data (present only during "magnitude only" mode)

```

u16  D0_SectionName;       // 'D0'
u16  D0_SectionSize;       // [bytes] size of this entire section
u32  D0_PingNumber;        // pings since power-up or reboot
u32  D0_TotalSamples;      // number of samples in entire time series (sample rate is H0_RxSampleRate)
u32  D0_FirstSample;       // first sample of this section relative to zero range
u16  D0_Samples;          // number of samples in this section
u16  D0_reserved;          // reserved for future use
f32  D0_MagnitudeScaling[8]; // to be determined, 0=ignore
struct
{
    u16 PortMagnitude;       // [micropascals] = PortMagnitude * (tbd function of sample number and D0_MagnitudeScaling[8])
    u16 StbdMagnitude;       // similar but starboard side
} D0_Data[D0_Samples];

```

// section D1: 16-bit magnitude and direction data (present only during "magnitude+direction" mode)

```

u16  D1_SectionName;       // 'D1'
u16  D1_SectionSize;       // [bytes] size of this entire section

```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

```

u32 D1_PingNumber;      // pings since power-up or reboot
u32 D1_TotalSamples;    // number of samples in entire time series (sample rate is H0_RxSampleRate)
u32 D1_FirstSample;     // first sample of this section relative to zero range
u16 D1_Samples;        // number of samples in this section
u16 D1_reserved;       // reserved for future use
f32 D1_MagnitudeScaling[8]; // to be determined, 0=ignore
f32 D1_AngleScalingFactor;
struct
{
    u16 PortMagnitude;    // [micropascals] = PortMagnitude * (tbd function of sample number and D1_MagnitudeScaling[8])
    s16 PortAngle;       // [radians from array centerline (positive towards starboard)] = PortAngle * D1_AngleScalingFactor
    u16 StbdMagnitude;    // similar but starboard side
    s16 StbdAngle;       // similar but starboard side
} D1_Data[D1_Samples];

// *** END TRUEPIX DATA FORMAT 0 ***

```

## 15.11 Head Status Format

```

// *** BEGIN PACKET: HEAD STATUS DATA FORMAT 0 ***
// Head Status data reports the status of the sonar head. This data is
// useful for troubleshooting. Data is sent to gui baseport + 2.
//
// Each section name consists of 4 characters. The fourth character
// indicates the number of 32-bit words following each section name.
// The forth character can be 1-9, A-Z; allowing up to 35 32-bit words.
// The number of words in each section may change at a later date. Be
// sure your program can parse the number of words.
// The order of the sections is not fixed.

```

```

u32 PacketName;        // 'STHO'
u32 PacketSize;        // [bytes] size of this entire packet
u32 DataStreamID;      // reserved for future use

```

// section SER3: serial number

```

u32 SER3_SectionName;  // 'SER3'
u32 serial_number[3];  // example "100117", unused chars are nuls

```

// section PRT3: part number

```

u32 PRT3_SectionName;  // 'PRT3'
u32 part_number[3];    // example "15000001", unused chars are nuls

```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

// section MDL3: model number

```
u32 MDL3_SectionName;    // 'MDL3'
u32 model_number[3];     // example "2024", unused chars are nuls
```

// section FWV6: main controller firmware version

```
u32 'FWV6';             // main ctrl firmware version string
u32 version.i[6];       // example "19-Dec-2011-17:19:29", unused chars are nuls
```

// section FWT6: internal transmitter firmware version

```
u32 FWT6_SectionName;    // 'FWT6'
u32 tinytx.i[6];        // example "16-Aug-2011-17:19:29", unused chars are nuls
```

// section PRJ9: projector

```
u32 PRJ9_SectionName;    // 'PRJ9'
u32 serial_number[3];     // example "800456", unused chars are nuls
u32 part_number[3];      // example "15000004", unused chars are nuls
u32 model_number[3];     // example "1004", unused chars are nuls
```

// section OPT1: option settings

```
u32 OPT1_SectionName     // 'OPT1'
u32 options               // truepix_snippets[0:0] 0=off, 1=on
                        // depth_rating[1:1] 0=100m, 1=3km
                        // forward_looking[2:2] 0=off, 1=on
                        // water_column[3:3] 0=off, 1=on
                        // ultra-high resolution[4:4] 0=off, 1=on
                        // water column rx chan [5:5] 0=off, 1=on
                        // 2026 low freq option [6:6] 0=off, 1=90 & 100kHz enabled, 2026 only
```

// section CFG8: configuration parameters

```
u32 CFG8_SectionName;    // 'CFG8'
f32 pdepth_cutout;       // [meters] pressure cutout depth (no bathy detect below this depth)
f32 pdepth_export_depth; // [meters] pressure trigger for export control (limits lowest freq and range)
f32 pdepth_export_bathyrange; // [meters] max bathy range when pressure trigger is exceeded
f32 pdepth_export_minfreq; // [Hz] min freq when pressure trigger is exceeded
f32 option_lowfreq;      // [Hz] low-frequency option
f32 pdepth_export_bathydepth; // [meters] max bathy depth allowed
f32 spare0;              // spare
f32 spare1;              // spare
```

// section OPR4: operational parameters so GUI can configure its menus

```
u32 OPR4_SectionName;    // 'OPR4'
f32 opr_minfreq;         // [Hz] current minimum selectable frequency (zero means ignore me and use GUI default)
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

```

f32 opr_maxfreq;      // [Hz] current maximum selectable frequency (zero means ignore me and use 400kHz default)
f32 spare0;           // spare
f32 spare1;           // spare

// section SENa: sensor data received from SIM

u32 SENa_SectionName; // 'SENa'
u32 gps.time.sec;      // [seconds] unix time
u32 gps.time.nsec;     // [seconds = gps.time.nsec/(2^32)] unix time
f32 sensor.pitch;     // [radians] mru pitch
f32 sensor.roll;      // [radians] mru roll
f32 sensor.heave;     // [meters] mru heave
f32 sensor.heading;   // heading (not implemented)
f32 sensor.velocity;  // [m/s] sound velocity
f32 sensor.pdepth.uncal; // [meters] depth uncalibrated
f32 sensor.pdepth.cal; // [meters] depth calibrated
f32 sensor.fpgatemp;  // [°C] FPGA temperature

// section ADC3: a/d converter

u32 ADC3_SectionName; // 'ADC3'
f32 adc.chan0;         // [volts] 48VDC power supply voltage
f32 adc.chan1;         // [amperes] 48V current
f32 adc.chan8;         // [volts] transmitter power supply voltage


// section ETH6; ethernet registers

u32 ETH6_SectionName; // 'ETH6'
u32 ethernet.speed;   // [megabits/sec] link connect speed
u32 erxpackets;       // [counts] ethernet receive packets
u32 etxpackets;       // [counts] ethernet transmit packets
u32 erxoverflows;     // [counts] ethernet receive buffer overflows
u8  mac.addr[8]       // mac address, use last 6 bytes, first 2 bytes are not used


// section TIM2; timers

u32 TIM2_SectionName; // 'TIM2'
f32 time.check;       // [seconds] head to sim roundtrip time response (must be less than 3ms for dual head or ext. trigger modes)
f32 time.spare;       // [seconds] spare// *** END PACKET: HEAD STATUS DATA FORMAT 0 ***

```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 15.12 SIM Status Data Format

```
// *** BEGIN PACKET: SIM STATUS DATA FORMAT 0 ***
// SIM Status data reports misc info from the SIM box. This data is
// useful for troubleshooting. Data is sent to gui baseport+2.
//
// Each section name consists of 4 characters. The fourth character
// indicates the number of 32-bit words following each section name.
// The forth character can be 1-9, A-Z; allowing up to 35 32-bit words.
// The number of words in each section may change at a later date. Be
// sure your program can parse the number of words.
// The order of the sections is not fixed.

u32 PacketName;      // 'STS0'
u32 PacketSize;      // [bytes] size of this entire packet
u32 DataStreamID;    // reserved for future use

// section SER3: serial number

u32 SER3_SectionName; // 'SER3'
u32 serial_number[3]; // example "100117", unused chars are nulls

// section PRT3: part number

u32 PRT3_SectionName; // 'PRT3'
u32 part_number[3];   // example "15000002", unused chars are nulls

// section MDL3: model number

u32 MDL3_SectionName; // 'MDL3'
u32 model_number[3];  // example "2024", unused chars are nulls

// section FWV6: firmware version

u32 FWV6_SectionName; // 'FWV6'
u32 version[6];       // example "15-Dec-2011-14:00:42", unused chars are nulls
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

```
// section LED1: SIM front panel LED status
```

```
u32 LED1_SectionName;    // 'LED1'
u32 led_status;          // [00=off 01=undef 10=bad 11=good] flags for status LEDs
                        // gps[1:0]
                        // motion[3:2]
                        // heading[5:4], not implemented
                        // svp[7:6]
                        // alt-gps[9:8], not implemented
                        // alt-motion[11:10], not implemented
                        // alt-heading[13:12], not implemented
                        // alt-svp[15:14], not implemented
                        // pps[17:16]
                        // sync in[19:18]
                        // sync out[21:20]
                        // head on[23:22]
                        // reserved[31:24]
```

```
// section SEN7: RS232 sensor values
```

```
u32 SEN7_SectionName;    // 'SEN7'
u32 gps.time.sec;        // [seconds] unix time
u32 gps.time.nsec;       // [seconds = gps.time.nsec/(2^32)] unix time
f32 mru.pitch;           // [radians] mru pitch value
f32 mru.roll;            // [radians] mru roll value
f32 mru.heave;           // [meters] mru heave
f32 0.0;                 // heading (not implemented)
f32 svp.velocity;        // [m/s] sound velocity
```

```
// section ADC2: a/d converter
```

```
u32 ADC2_SectionName;    // 'ADC2'
f32 adc.chan0;           // [volts] 48VDC power supply voltage
f32 adc.chan1;           // [amperes] 48V current to head
```

```
// section ETH6: ethernet registers
```

```
u32 ETH6_SectionName;    // 'ETH6'
u32 ethernet.speed;      // [megabits/sec] link speed
u32 erxpackets;          // [counts] ethernet receive packets
u32 etxpackets;          // [counts] ethernet transmit packets
u32 rxoverflows;         // [counts] ethernet receive buffer overflows
u8 mac.addr[8];          // mac address, use last 6 bytes, first 2 bytes are not used
```

```
// *** END PACKET: SIM STATUS DATA FORMAT 0 ***
```

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 15.13 Device Status Format

The device status packet contains the ConfigID number that was sent to the sonar head and SIM during IP configuration. This packet contains no survey information and is ignored for data collection purposes. The R2DS packet is sent from the sonar head and SIM once per second to the sonar control program IP address. The ConfigID received from the sonar head and SIM should be compared with the ConfigID number sent to the sonar head and SIM during IP configuration. If there is a mismatch, the control program should send IP configuration data to the sonar head and/or SIM to correct the issue.

```
struct R2DS          // R2Sonic Device Status
{
    u32 PacketName;    // 'R2DS'
    u32 SerialNumber[3]; // up to 12 ASCII chars, unused chars are zero
    u32 ConfigID;      // from most recent R2DC packet
    u32 spare;
} pkt;
```

C structure of Device Status packet

Device status Ethernet packet example received from the sonar head

```
0000 00 e0 81 2e be 88 00 50 c2 90 40 58 08 00 45 00 .....P ..@ X..E.
0010 00 34 04 6c 00 00 32 11 6e 92 0a 00 00 56 0a 00 .4.l..2. n....V..
0020 01 66 ff 16 ff de 00 20 00 00 52 32 44 53 31 30 .f..... ..R2DS10
0030 30 31 30 31 00 00 00 00 00 00 46 35 bd 01 00 00 0101..... ;;~...
0040 00 00 ..
```

```
0000 00 e0 81 2e be 88 00 50 c2 90 40 49 08 00 45 00 .....P ..@ l..E.
0010 00 34 02 75 00 00 32 11 70 7c 0a 00 00 63 0a 00 .4.u..2. p|...c..
0020 01 66 ff 7a ff de 00 20 00 00 52 32 44 53 31 30 .f.z... ..R2DS10
0030 30 30 34 34 00 00 00 00 00 00 46 35 bd 01 00 00 0044..... ;;~...
0040 00 00 ..
```

Device status Ethernet packet example received from the SIM

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

## 15.14 Data Playback Using Bit-Twist

### 15.14.1 Introduction

Note, the topics covered in this document require knowledge of Ethernet communication.

To test a data collection system, you can either use the actual hardware (sonar head) or use data captured from the sonar head. Using Wireshark, uplink data from the sonar head can be captured, filtered, and saved. Bit Twist, a console application, allows you to playback data. R2Sonic can supply sample Ethernet captures of the sonar head uplink data. You may need to edit the destination MAC and IP addresses of the captured data with Bit-Twiste, a console application. Wireshark and Bit-Twist both require Winpcap which is included in the Wireshark installation.

In the examples, the following IP addresses are used:

Sonar head: 10.0.0.86

Data collection computer: 10.0.1.102

The following programs are required:

To capture, filter, and save Ethernet data:

Wireshark: <http://www.wireshark.org/>

To playback and edit captured Ethernet data:

Bit-Twist: <http://bittwist.sourceforge.net/>

Using a 32-bit version of Wireshark will allow you to use a packet decoder for the sonar data formats.

If you don't want or need to install Wireshark, get Winpcap at:

Winpcap: <http://www.winpcap.org/>

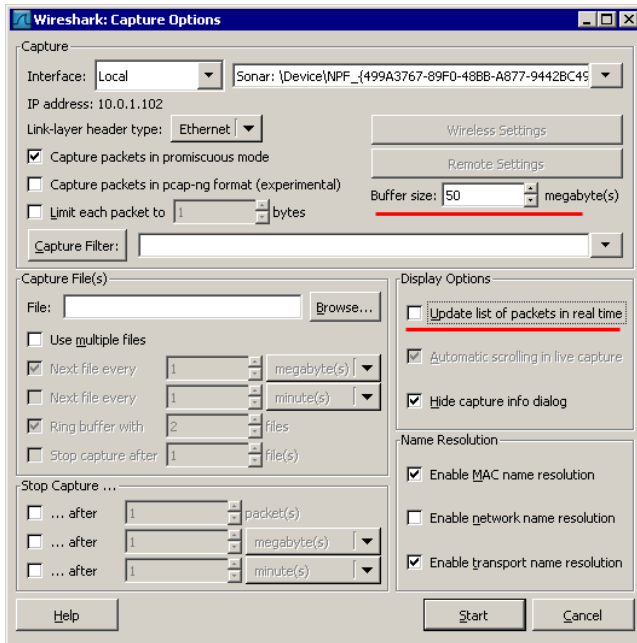
### 15.14.2 Capturing Data

To capture data from the sonar head, use Wireshark. Set the max ping rate of the sonar to 1 to 5 pings per second so you won't create huge capture files.

- Capture sonar data. For high data rate traffic, set the following Wireshark Capture Options. These options are found under the button (usually left most) "List the available capture interfaces...". These setting will remain for the session.

Buffer size: 50 megabytes

Uncheck "Update list of packets in real time"



**Figure 206: Wireshark Capture Options**

This will reduce the processing load on Wireshark significantly.

- After capture, filter the data so only the desired sonar head data is displayed. A filter expression like

`"not icmp.type == 3 or ip.src == 10.0.1.102"`

can be used to filter data coming from the data acquisition computer.

- Save using Save As, data type as "Wireshark/tcpdump/...- libpcap (\*.pcap,\*.cap)" (Wireshark default). Select "Displayed" in Packet Range. You can select a data range in the Packet Range such that the data packets aren't truncated.

### 15.14.3 Editing Data

The MAC and IP addresses in the packets must match the data acquisition computer's MAC and IP addresses assigned to the network interface card (NIC). The data acquisition computer's MAC and IP addresses can be determined using `ipconfig /all` from the command line.

Editing the MAC and IP addresses must be done as separate operations using `bittwiste.exe`. The following examples show the syntax for editing the destination MAC and IP address in the .pcap files created by Wireshark.

Example to change destination MAC address using `bittwiste.exe`:

```
bittwiste -I in.pcap -O out.pcap -T eth -d 00:E0:12:7F:D2:1A
```

Example to change destination IP address using `bittwiste.exe`:

```
bittwiste -I in.pcap -O out.pcap -T ip -d 10.0.1.102
```

Where `in.pcap` is the input file and `out.pcap` is the output file.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

#### 15.14.4 Data Playback

To playback data, use `bittwist.exe`. You can playback data on the same computer that the data collection program resides on by simply connecting the sonar Ethernet port to an Ethernet switch. The Ethernet switch is only to placate the NIC. You can also send data from a remote computer to the data acquisition computer.

The Ethernet interface number needs to be determined. Choose the interface that is connected to the sonar system. To display Ethernet interfaces:

```
bittwist -d
```

To playback data:

```
bittwist -i 2 -l 0 out.pcap
```

This sends `out.pcap` to Ethernet interface 2 (`-i 2`) and loops continuously (`-l 0`). Use `Ctrl-C` to exit the program.

If you don't want to loop, use:

```
bittwist -i 2 out.pcap
```

Note:

Newer Ethernet playback utilities are better than *bittwist*. Ask support about a modified version of *Playcap.exe* (Open Source program modified for looping) and *Wireplay.exe* (R2Sonic program that can play back pcap files at full speed and you don't need to edit pcap files with *bitttwiste*). *Wireplay.exe* is the recommended playback utility. *Wireplay* is available from R2Sonic.

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

# Appendix X – Drawings

---

## 16 APPENDIX X: Drawings

### Drawing Index

|                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 207: Sonic 2024/2022 Projector .....                              | 230 |
| Figure 208: Cable clamp projector dimensions .....                       | 231 |
| Figure 209: Sonic 2026 Projector .....                                   | 232 |
| Figure 210: Sonic 2024/2026 Receive Module .....                         | 233 |
| Figure 211: Receiver outline with penetrator.....                        | 234 |
| Figure 212: Sonic 2022 Receive Module .....                              | 235 |
| Figure 213: Sonic 2022 Receiver / Projector horizontal offset .....      | 236 |
| Figure 214: Sonic 2024 Mounting Bracket Drawing .....                    | 237 |
| Figure 215: Sonic 2022 Mounting Bracket Drawing .....                    | 238 |
| Figure 216: Sonic 2026 Mounting Bracket Drawing .....                    | 239 |
| Figure 217: Sonic 2024/2022 Mounting Bracket Flange.....                 | 240 |
| Figure 218: SIM Box Drawing.....                                         | 241 |
| Figure 219: SIM Stack Outline.....                                       | 242 |
| Figure 220: R2Sonic Deck lead minimum connector passage dimensions ..... | 243 |
| Figure 221: Locking Ring type Deck Lead.....                             | 244 |
| Figure 222: I2NS IMU Dimensions .....                                    | 245 |
| Figure 223: I2NS IMU Cable .....                                         | 246 |
| Figure 224: I2NS SIM Dimensions .....                                    | 247 |
| Figure 225: Dual Head Mount Offsets .....                                | 248 |

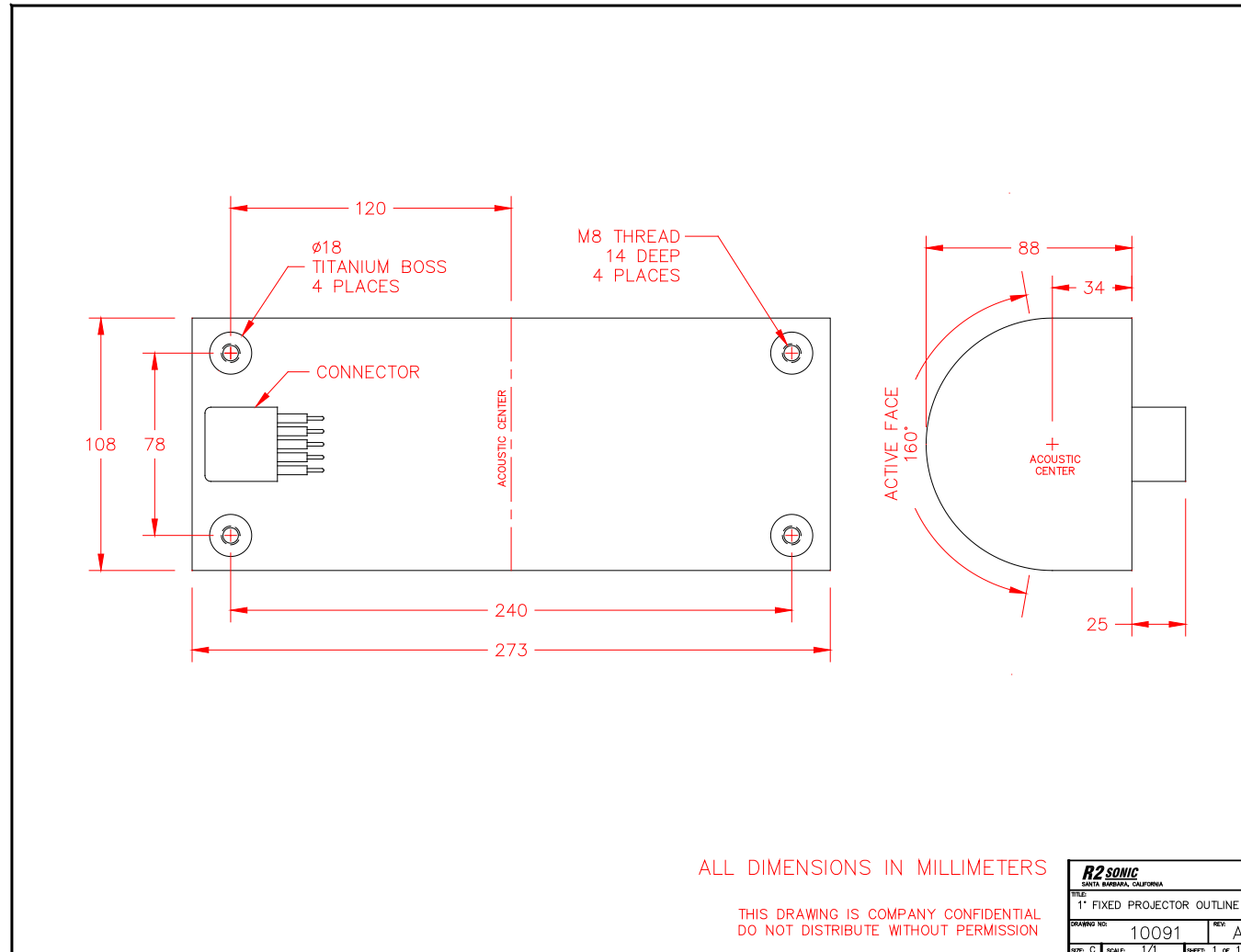
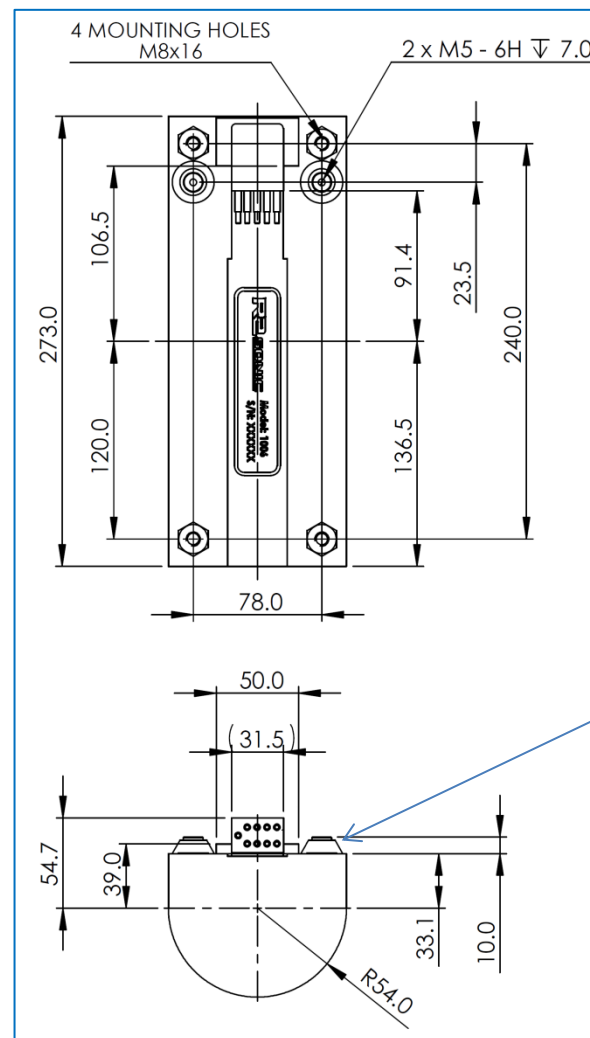


Figure 207: Sonic 2024/2022 Projector

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



All measurements in millimetres

The projector's dimensions are the same as all other projectors except for the added boss that holds the bottom portion of the clamp mechanism.

Figure 208: Cable clamp projector dimensions

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

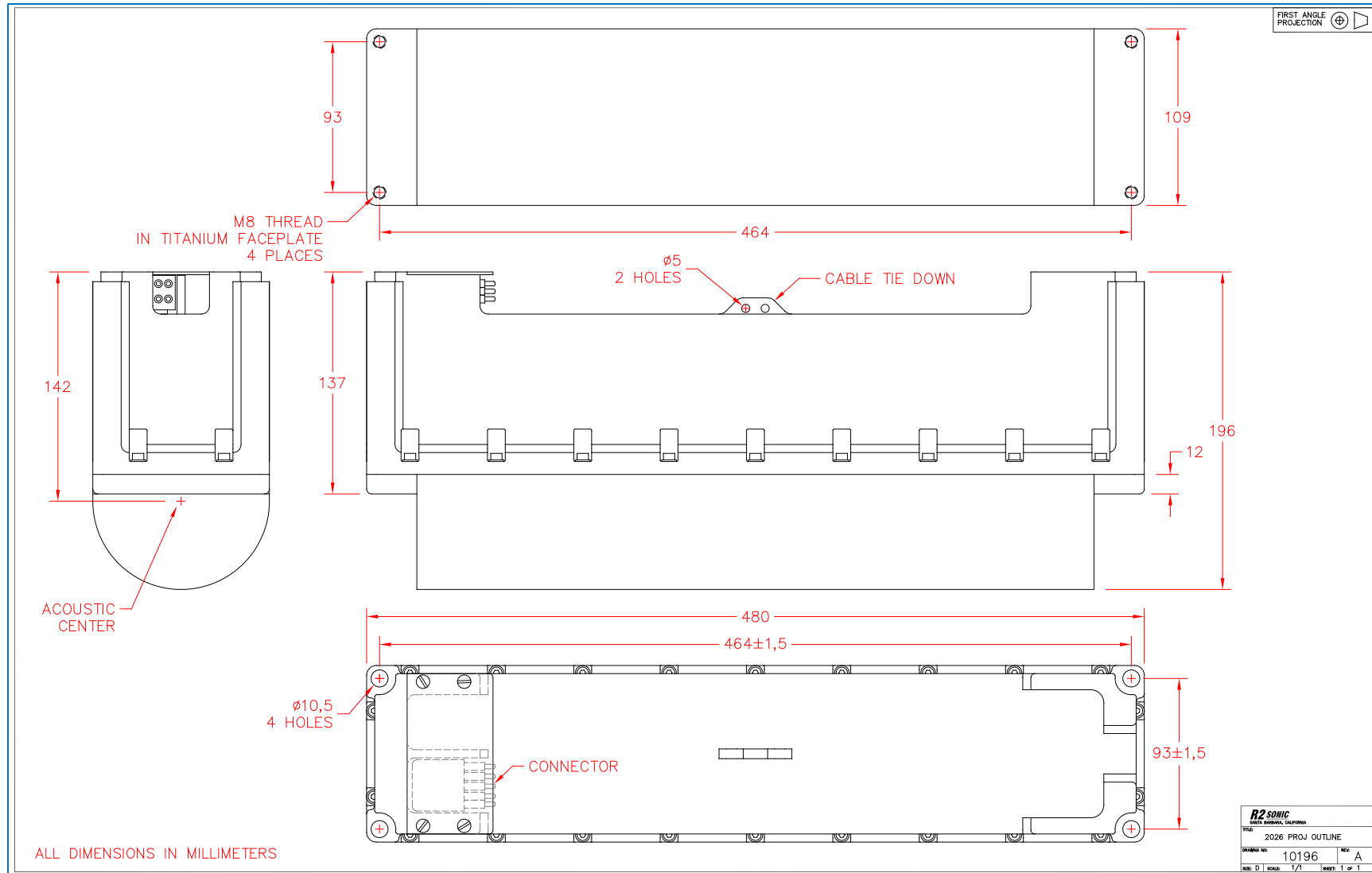


Figure 209: Sonic 2026 Projector

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

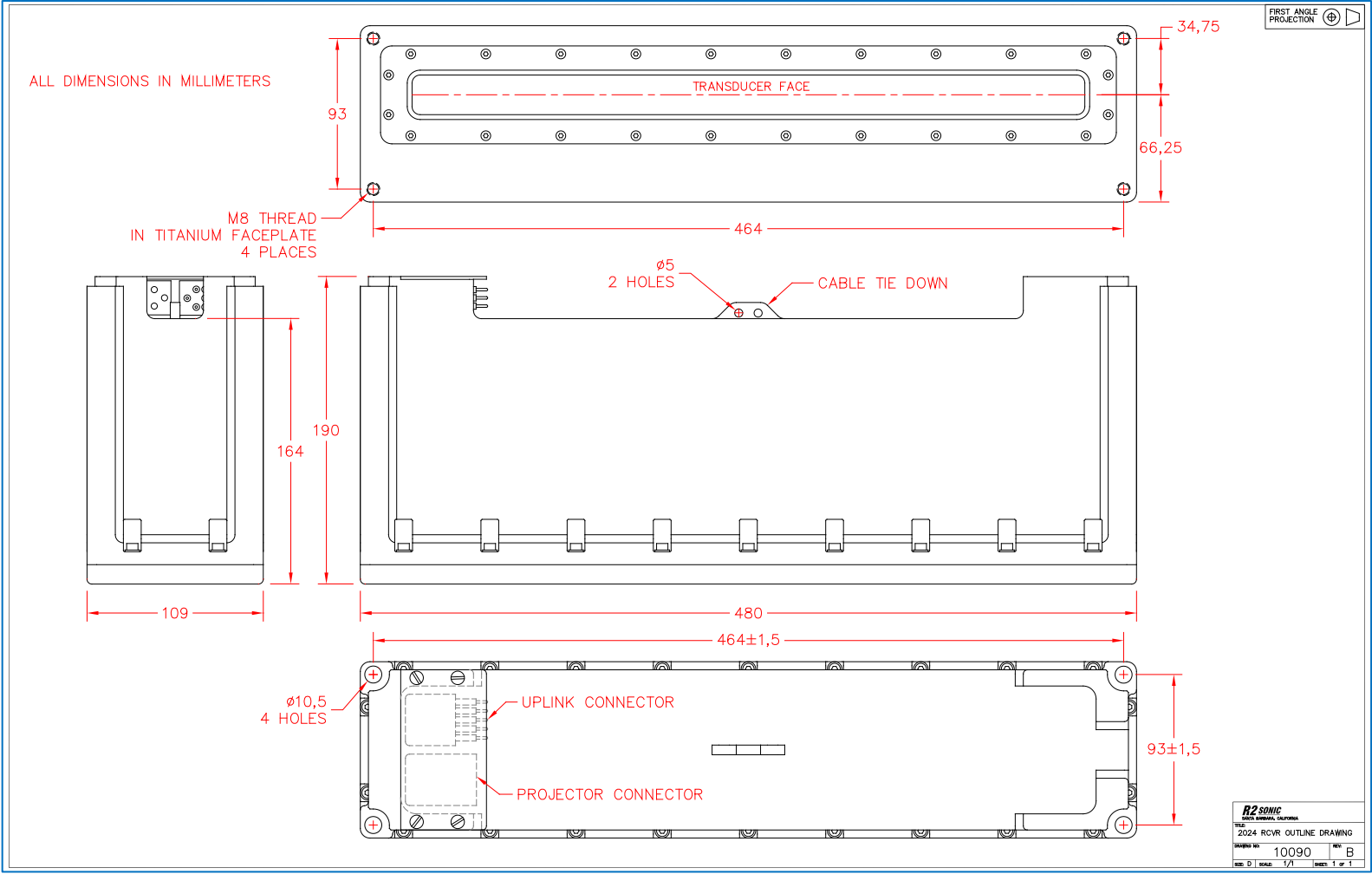


Figure 210: Sonic 2024/2026 Receive Module

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

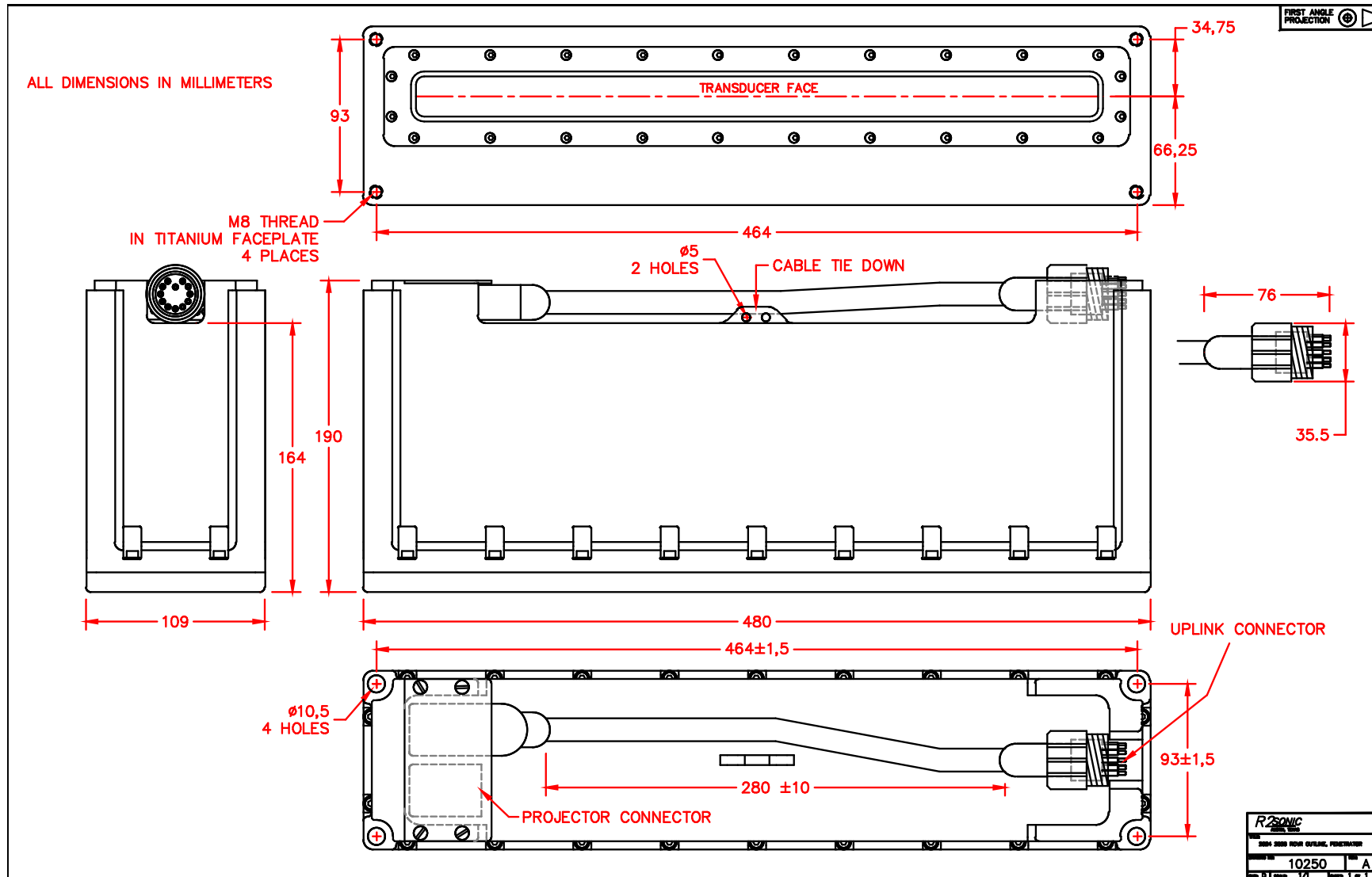


Figure 211: Receiver outline with penetrator

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

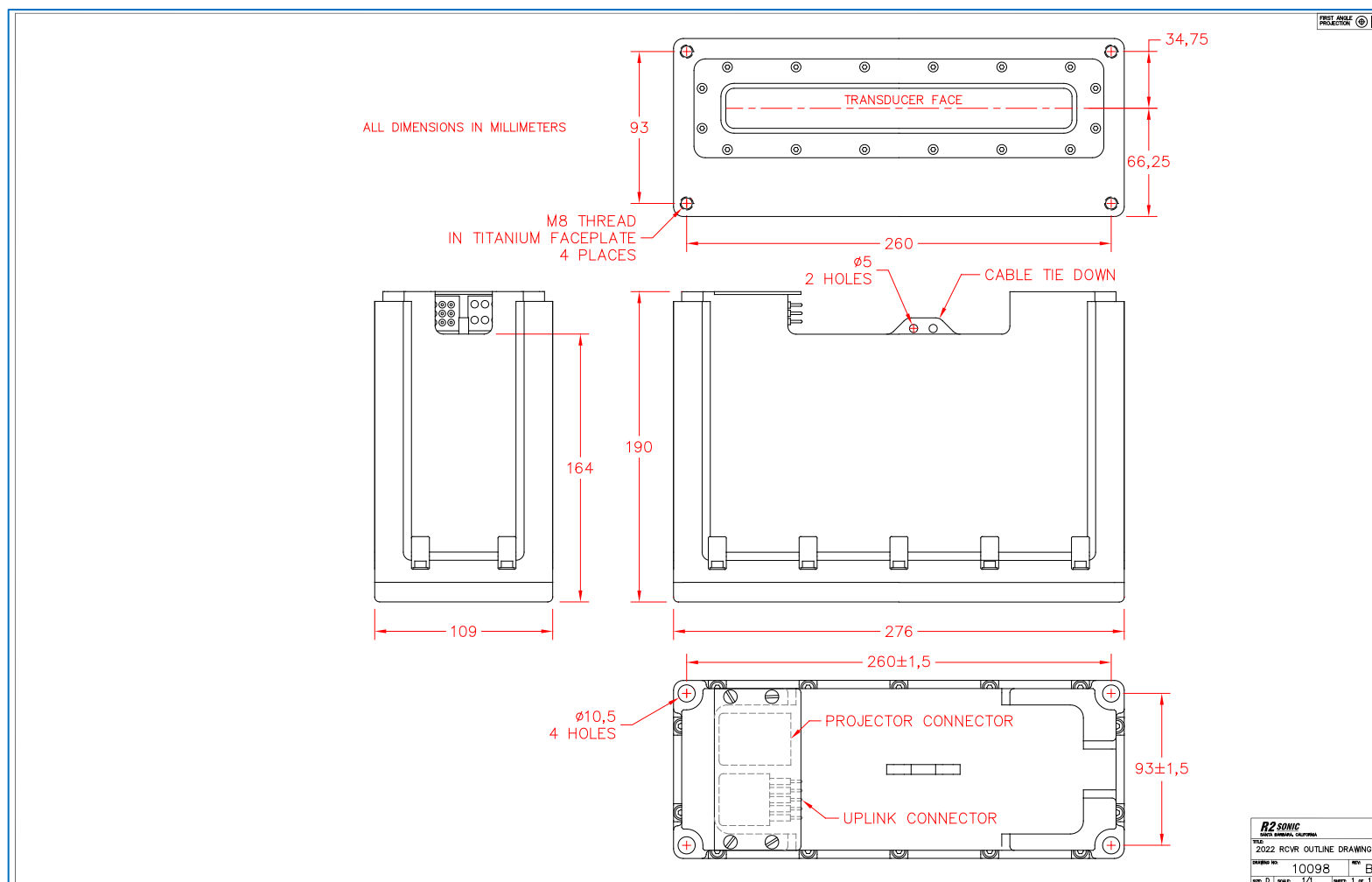


Figure 212: Sonic 2022 Receive Module

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

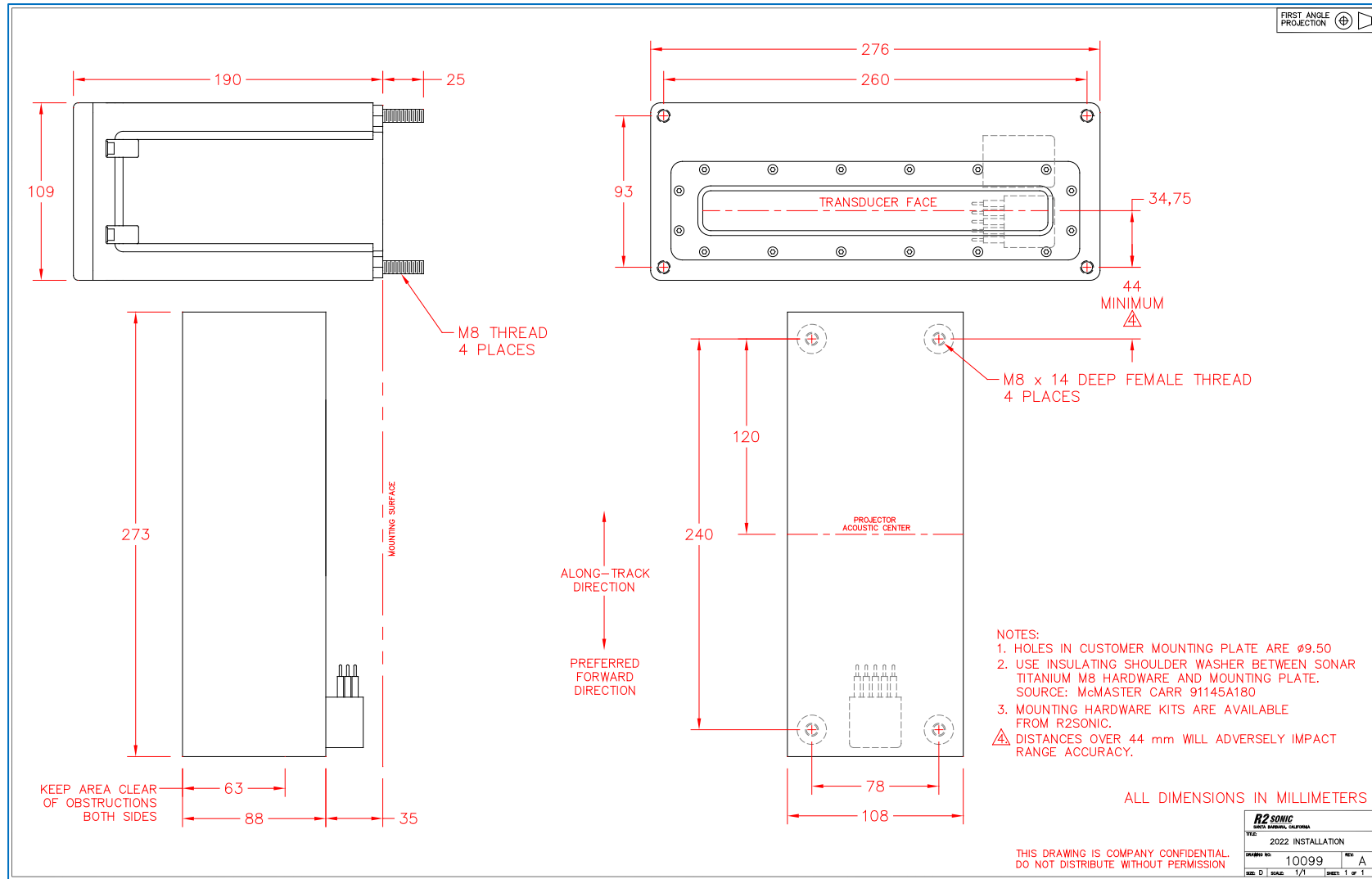


Figure 213: Sonic 2022 Receiver / Projector horizontal offset

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001

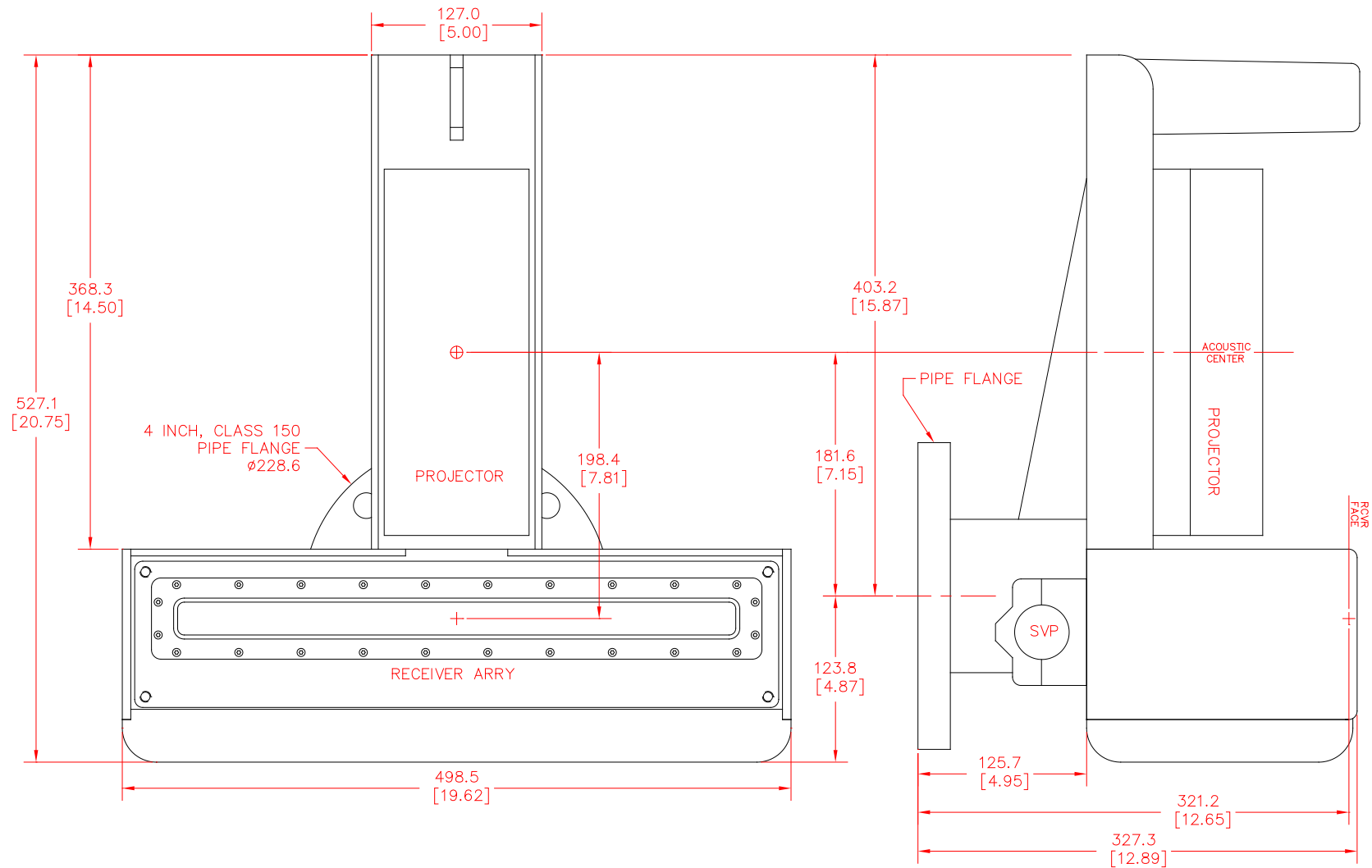


Figure 214: Sonic 2024 Mounting Bracket Drawing

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

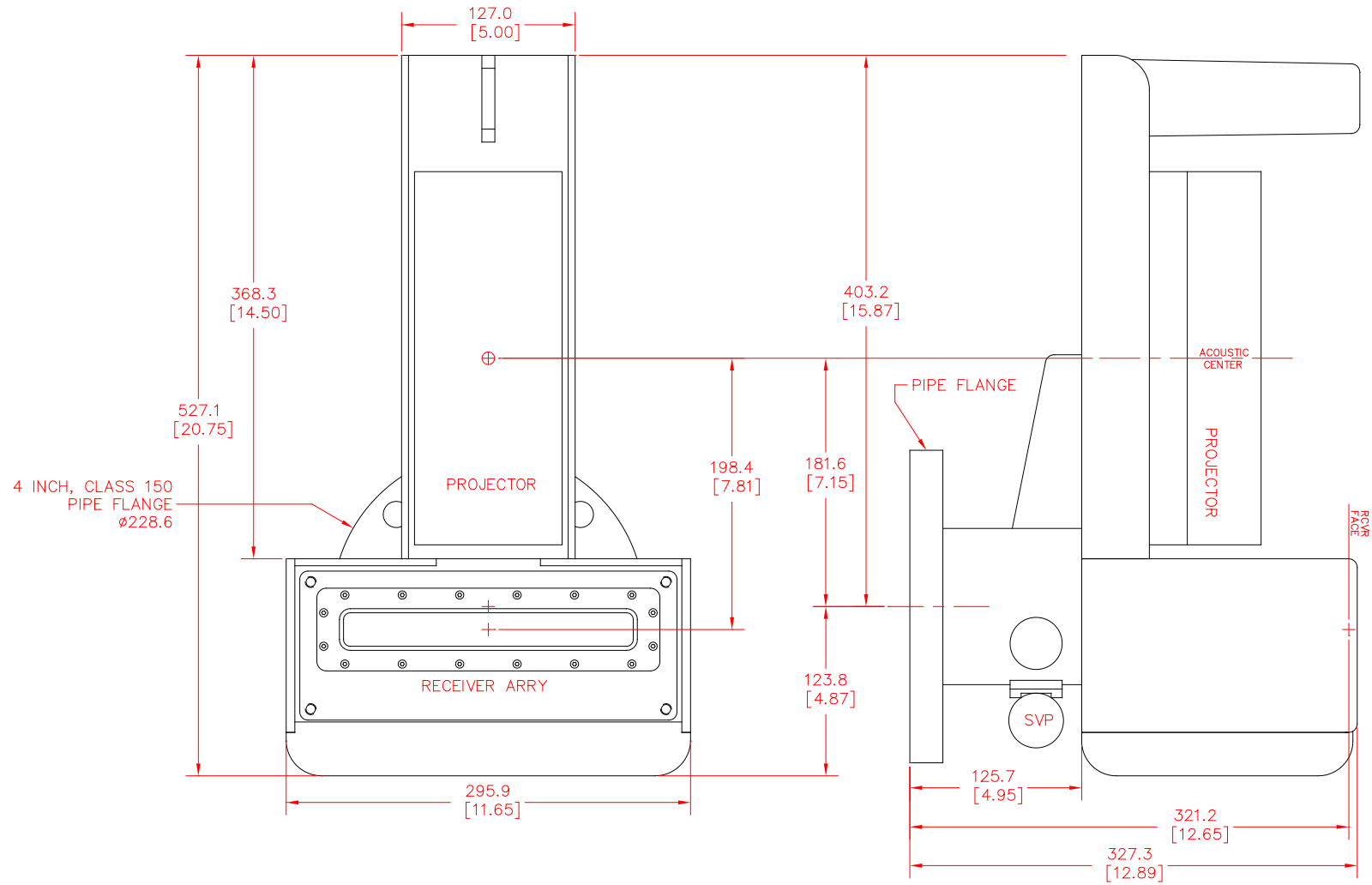
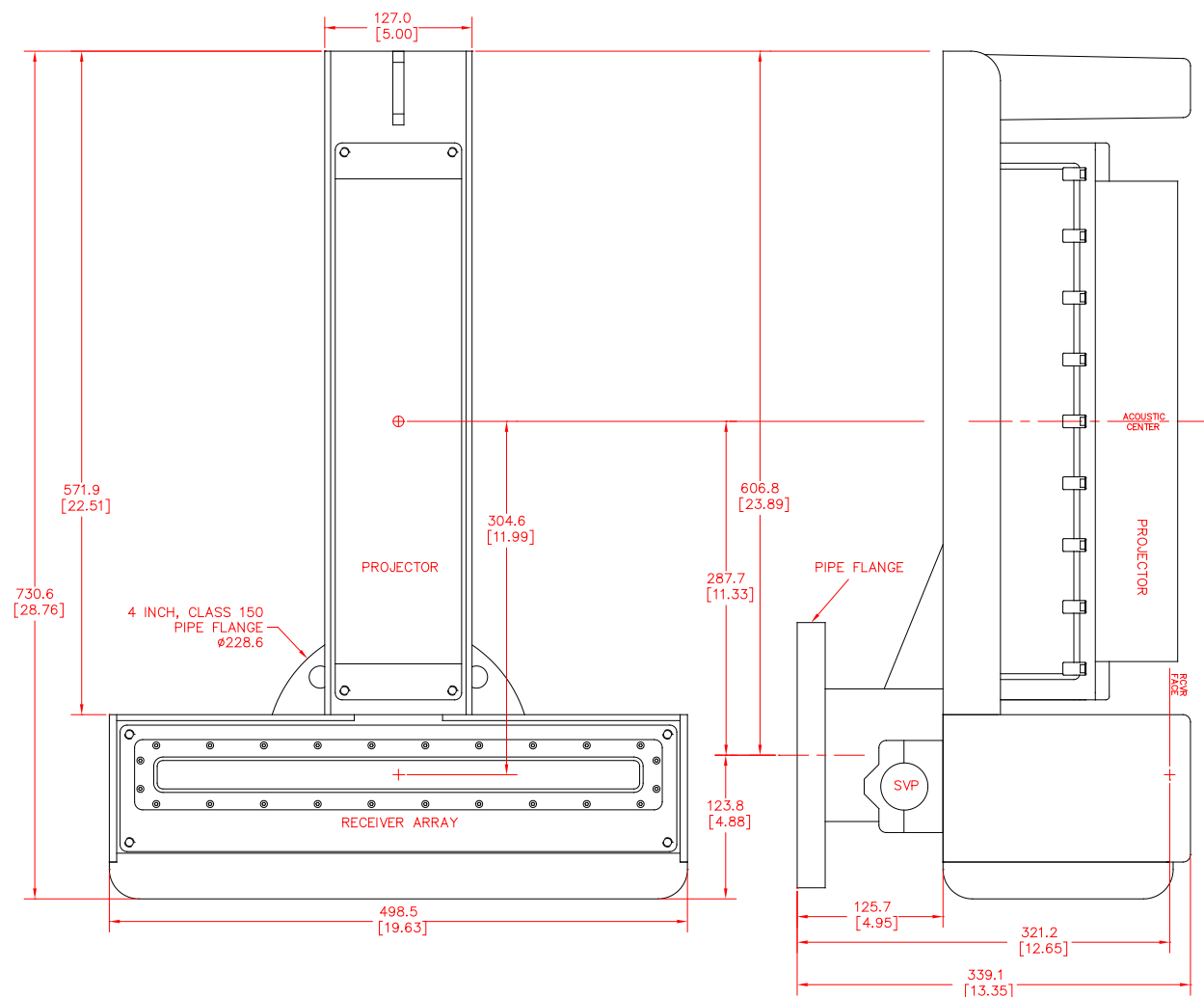


Figure 215: Sonic 2022 Mounting Bracket Drawing

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

Part No. 96000001



**Figure 216: Sonic 2026 Mounting Bracket Drawing**

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

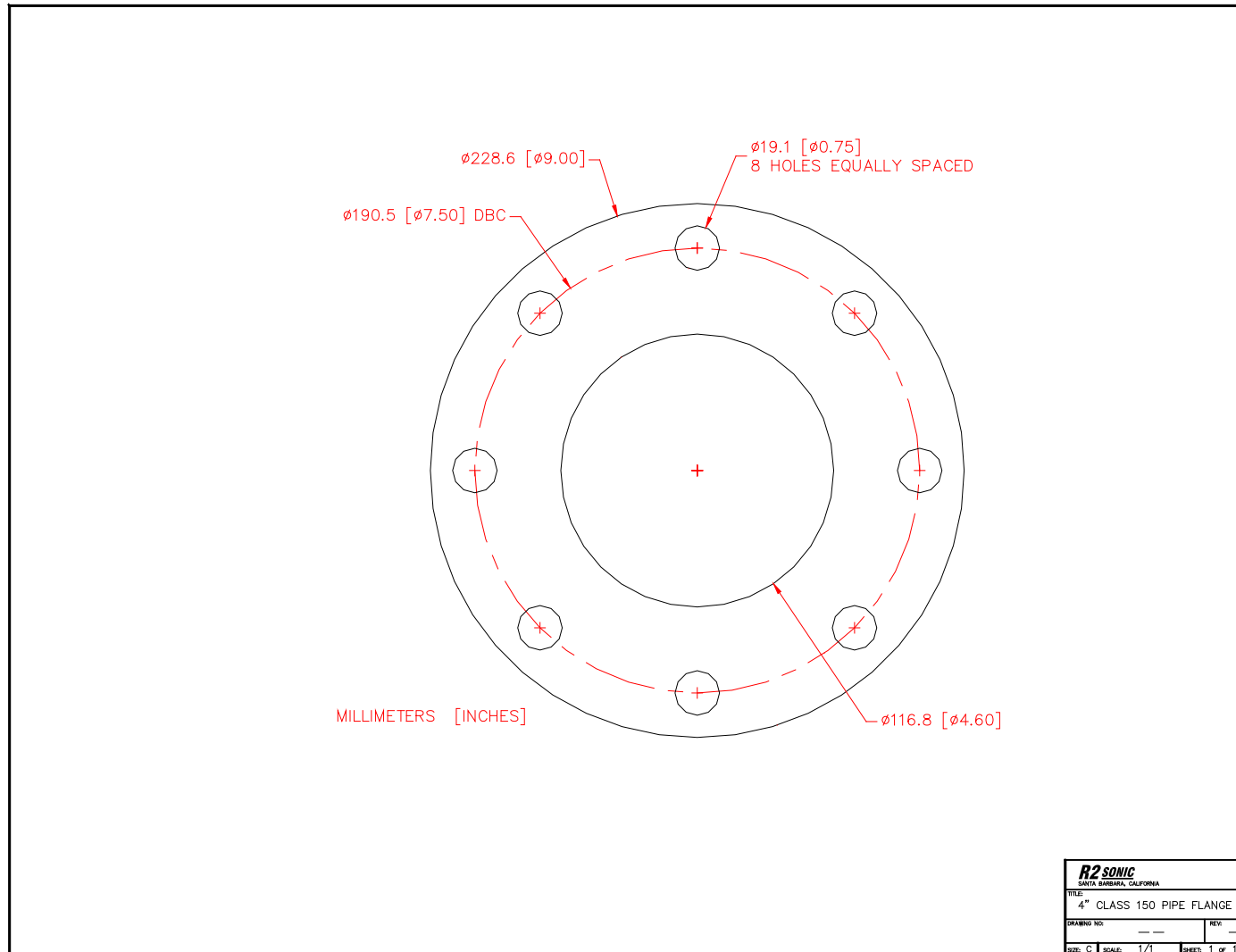


Figure 217: Sonic 2024/2022 Mounting Bracket Flange

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

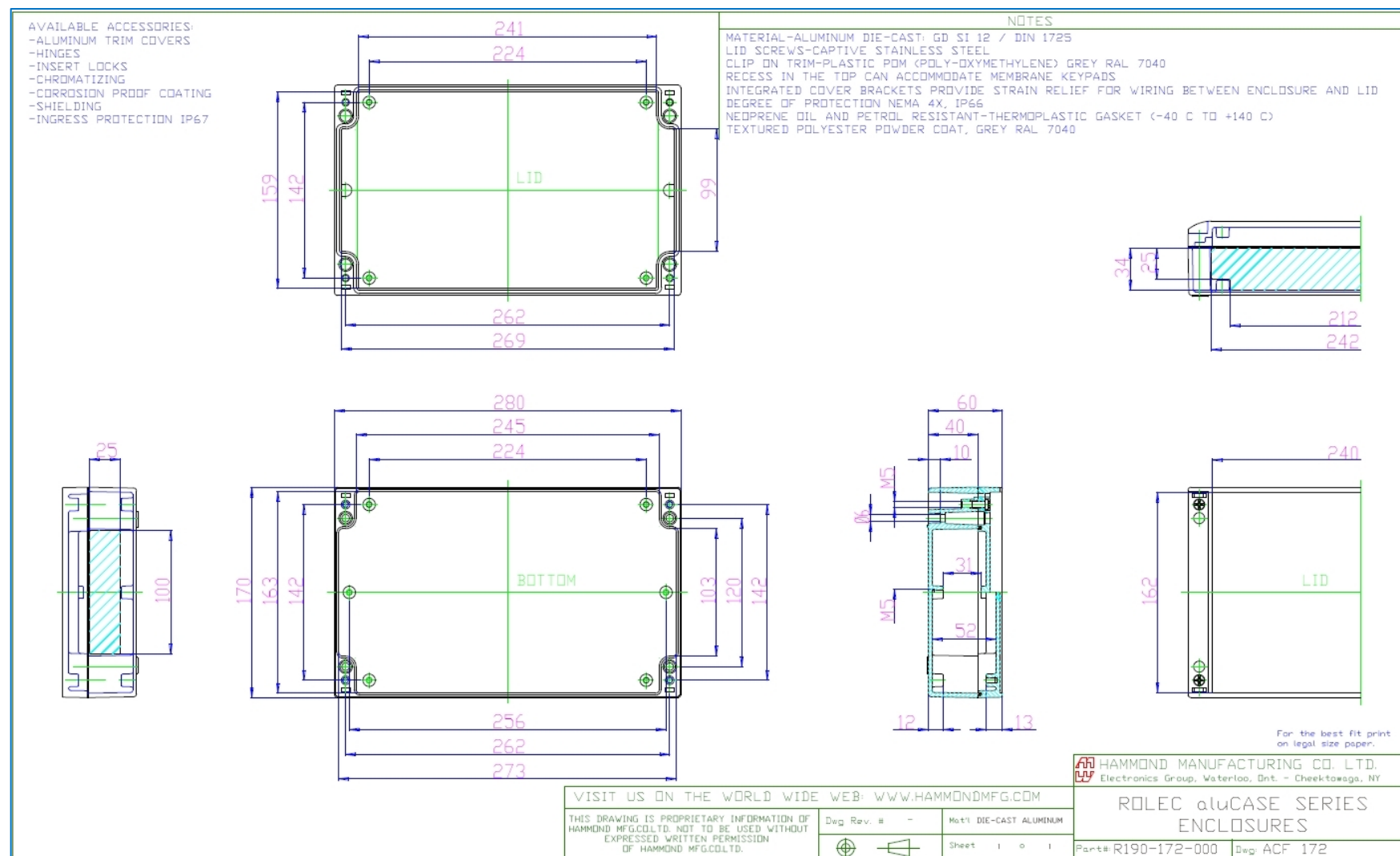
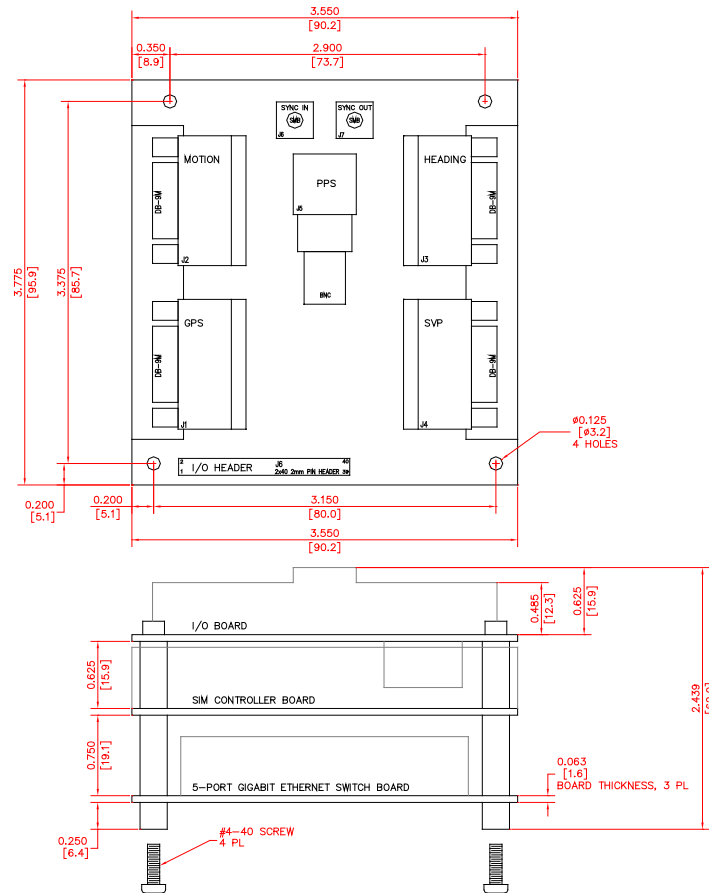


Figure 218: SIM Box Drawing

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

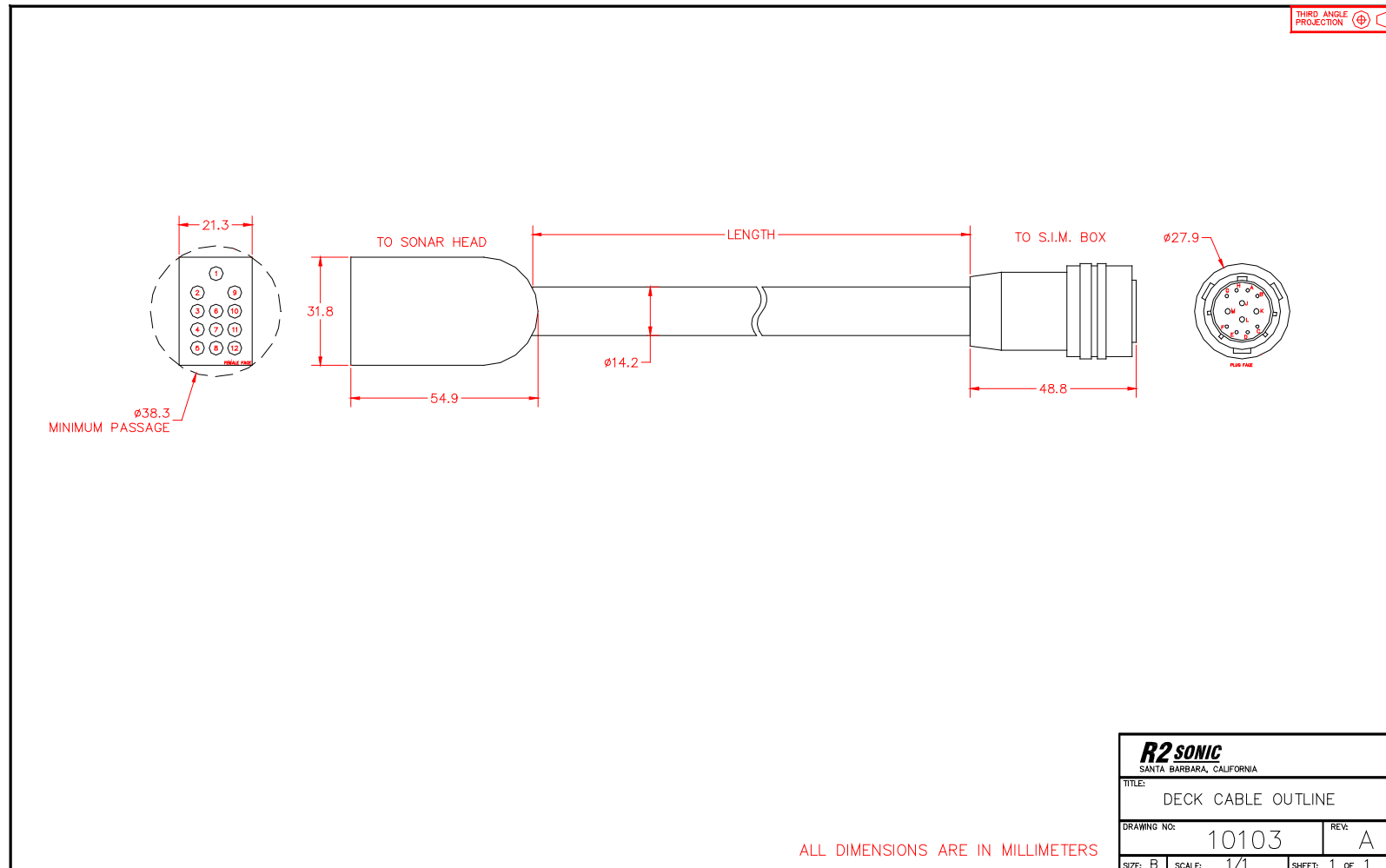


NOTES:  
1. BOARD OUTLINE & MTG CONFORMS TO PC-104 FORMAT.  
BOARDS DO NOT USE PC-104 BUS.

|                                                                                                                                  |                   |                                             |  |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|--|------------|
| UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED<br>DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES<br>DO NOT SCALE DRAWING                                                   | DESIGNED:         | <b>R2SONIC</b><br>SANTA BARBARA, CALIFORNIA |  |            |
|                                                                                                                                  | DATE: 11 Feb 2013 |                                             |  |            |
|                                                                                                                                  | DWN:              | TITLE:<br>SIM STACK OUTLINE DWG             |  |            |
|                                                                                                                                  | DATE: 11 Feb 2013 |                                             |  |            |
| TOLERANCES<br>.XX ±0.03<br>.XXX ±0.010<br>X" 0.5"<br>REMOVE ALL BURRS<br>BREAK CORNERS 0.005/0.010<br>INTERNAL RADII 0.005/0.001 | CHECKED:          | DRAWING NO: 10137                           |  | REV: A     |
|                                                                                                                                  | DATE:             |                                             |  |            |
|                                                                                                                                  | RELEASED:         | SIZE: B                                     |  | SCALE: 1/1 |
|                                                                                                                                  | DATE:             |                                             |  |            |

Figure 219: SIM Stack Outline

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



**Figure 220: R2Sonic Deck lead minimum connector passage dimensions**

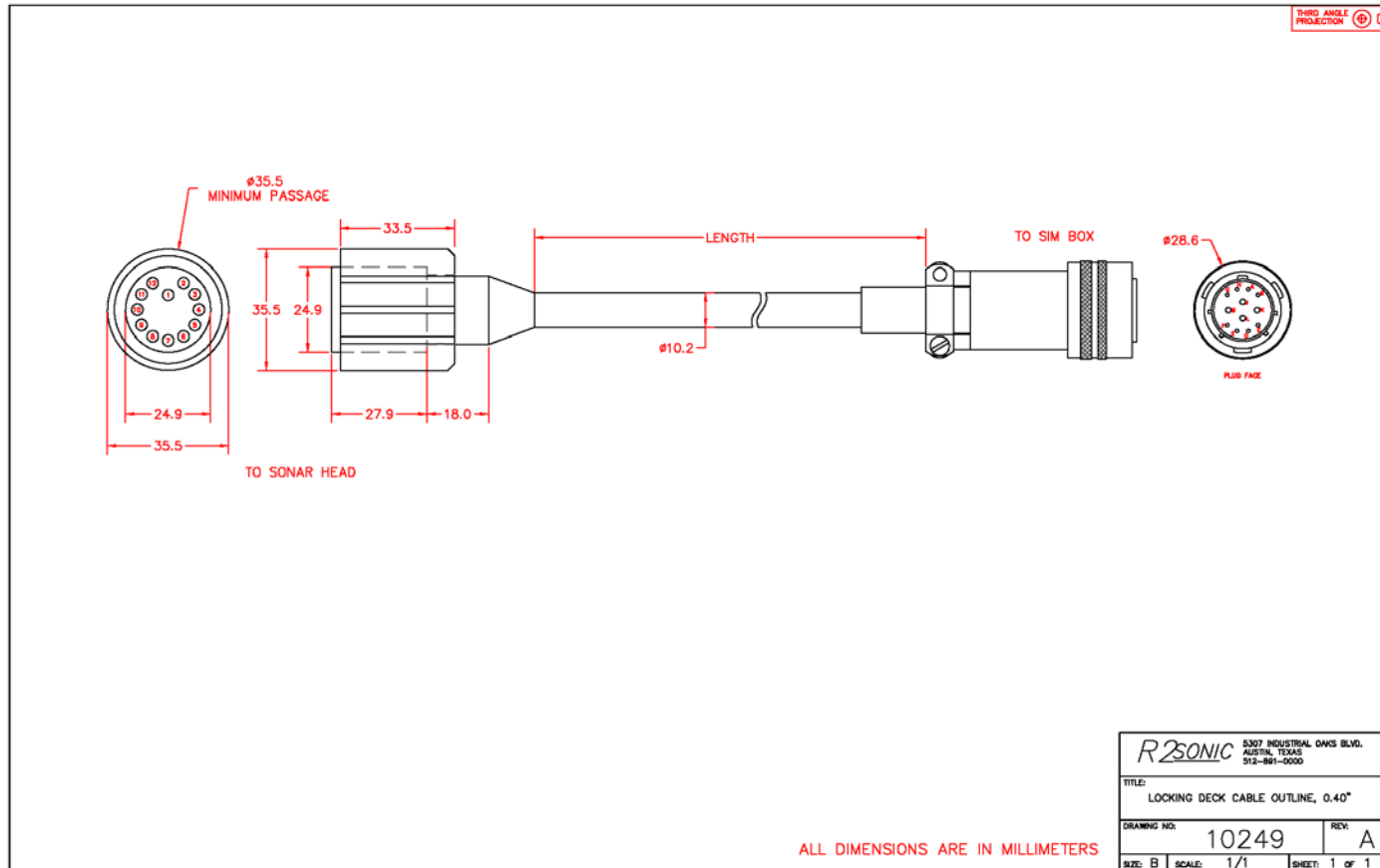


Figure 221: Locking Ring type Deck Lead

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

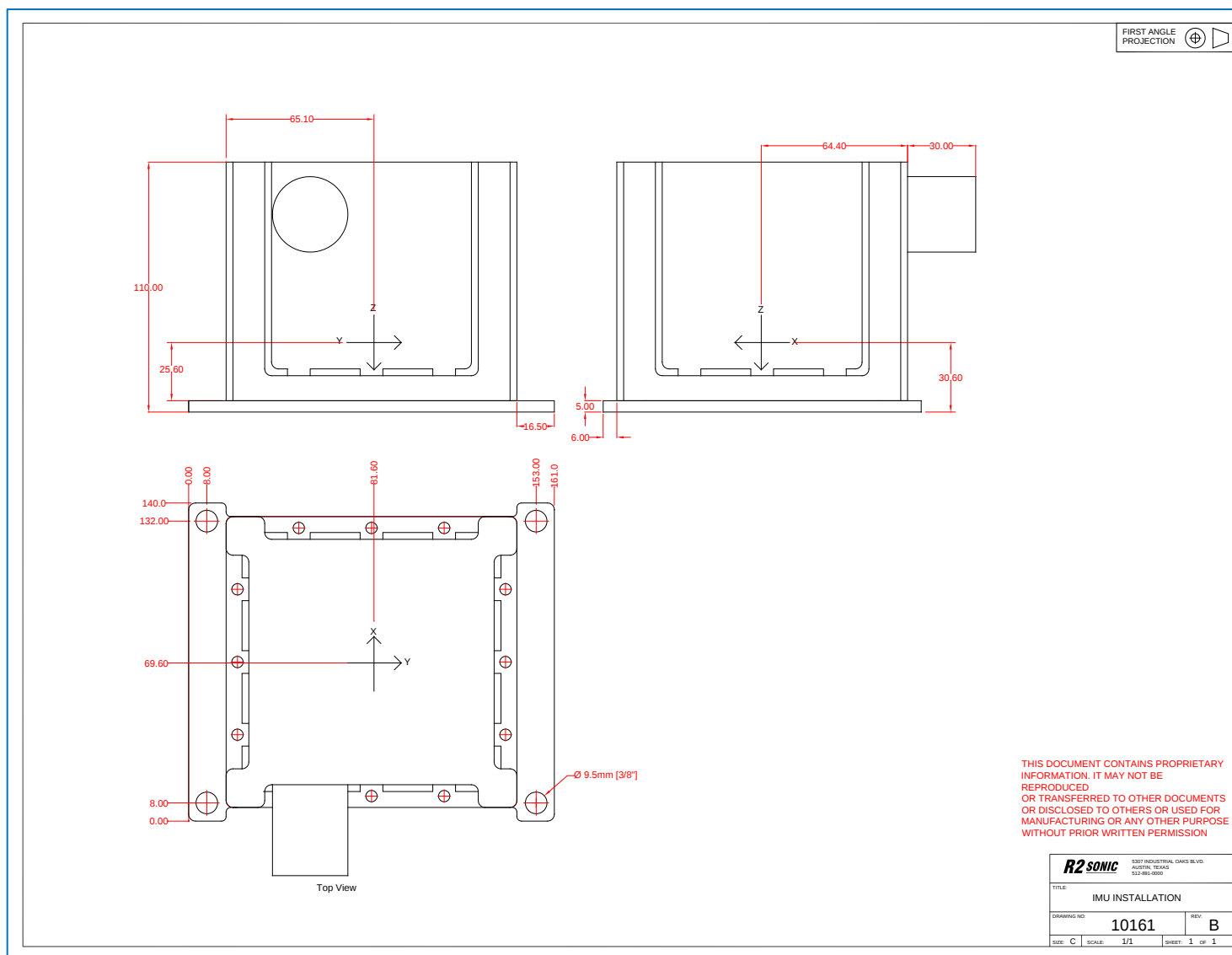
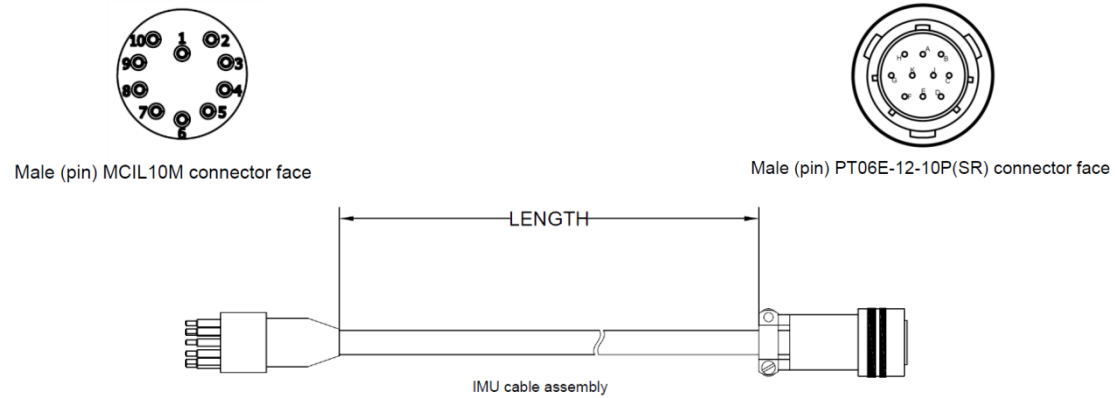


Figure 222: I2NS IMU Dimensions

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |



Pinout:

| Function       | MCIL10M<br>Pin Number | PT06E-12-10P(SR)<br>Pin Number | R2Sonic 10128A Wire Color                             |
|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Data1+         | 2                     | H                              | White / Blue (#24 AWG)                                |
| Data1-         | 3                     | G                              | Blue (#24 AWG)                                        |
| Data2+         | 4                     | B                              | White / Orange (#24 AWG)                              |
| Data2-         | 5                     | C                              | Orange (#24 AWG)                                      |
| Data3+         | 6                     | D                              | White / Green (#24 AWG)                               |
| Data3-         | 7                     | E                              | Green (#24 AWG)                                       |
| Power+         | 9                     | K                              | Orange (3x #22 AWG)<br>Terminate all 3 wires to pin K |
| Power Return   | 10                    | J                              | Black (2x #22 AWG)<br>Terminate both wires to pin J   |
| Chassis Ground | 1                     | A                              | Black (1x #22 AWG)                                    |
| n/c            | 8                     | F                              | none                                                  |

Figure 223: I2NS IMU Cable

Page 247 of 248

|         |            |     |      |
|---------|------------|-----|------|
| Version | 6.3        | Rev | r003 |
| Date    | 28-02-2019 |     |      |

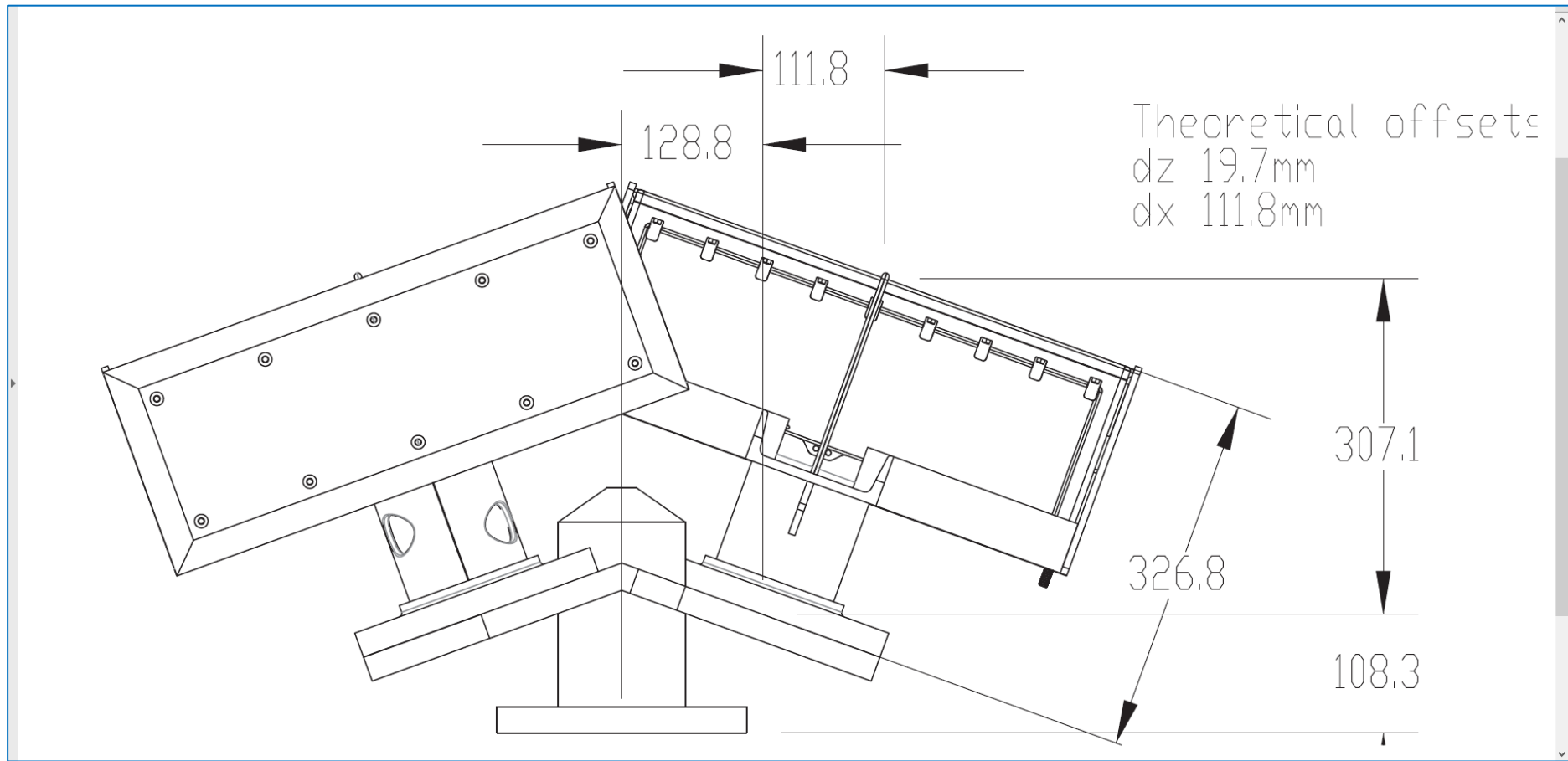


Figure 225: Dual Head Mount Offsets